

2011 Audi Q5

Owner's Manual

Audi

Vorsprung durch Technik

Introduction

Thank you for choosing an Audi Q5 - we value your trust in us.

Your new Audi Q5 incorporates the newest technology as well as numerous features designed for your comfort, convenience and safety. We recommend you read your Owner's Manual thoroughly so that you can quickly become acquainted with your Audi.

In addition to explaining how the different features work, we also give you many useful tips and information concerning your safety and that of your passengers, how to care for your vehicle and maintain your vehicle's value.

We hope you enjoy driving your Audi Q5 and we wish you safe and pleasant motoring.

AUDI AG

Vehicle literature 5

About this Owner's Manual . . . 6

Controls and equipment 8
Instructions and controls 8
General illustration 8

Instruments and warning/ indicator lights 10
Instruments 10
Warning/indicator lights 14

Driver information display 20
Introduction 20
Trip computer 22
Efficiency program 24
On-Board Diagnostic system (OBD) . . . 25
Electronic speed limiter 26
Speed warning system 26
Auto Check Control 28

Opening and closing 37
Keys 37
Power locking system 40
Opening and closing rear lid 44
Automatic rear lid/trunk lid operation 45
Emergency unlocking of the luggage compartment lid 47
Child safety locks 47
Power windows 47
Panoramic sliding sunroof 49

Clear vision 51
Lights 51
Interior lights 55
Vision 56
Wiper and washer system 56
Mirrors 59
Digital compass 62

Seats and storage 64
General recommendations 64
Power front seat adjustment 65
Seat memory 66
Rear seats 67
Head restraints 68
Center armrest 69
Luggage compartment 70
Roof rack 73
Beverage holders 76
Climatized cupholders 77
Cupholders in the door pockets 77
Ashtray 78
Cigarette lighter/outlet 78
Storage 79

Warm and cold 82
Three-zone automatic climate control 82
Basic settings 88
Seat heating 88

On the road 90
Steering 90
Ignition lock and ignition switch 90
Starting and stopping the engine with Convenience key 92
Electromechanical parking brake 94
Cruise control 97

Adaptive cruise control 99
Speed and distance control system . . 99
Driver information 104
System limitations 108
Audi braking guard 110

Audi side assist 113
Lane change assistant 113
Notes 119

Audi drive select 121
Driving settings 121

Automatic transmission 123
tiptronic® 123

Parking system 129
Audi parking system plus with rearview camera 129
Adjusting the display and warning tones 133
Trailer hitch 134
Error messages 134

HomeLink® 135
Universal remote control 135

Safety first 139
Driving Safely 139
General notes 139
Proper occupant seating positions ... 140
Pedal area 144
Stowing luggage 145
Reporting Safety Defects 146

Safety belts 148
General notes 148
Why safety belts? 149
Safety belts 151
Safety belt pretensioners 154

Airbag system 156
Important things to know 156
Front airbags 160
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System 167
Side airbags 172
Side curtain airbags 174

Child Safety 178
Important things to know 178
Child safety seats 183
Installing a child safety seat 187
LATCH Lower anchorages and tethers for children 190
Additional Information 195

Vehicle operation 196
Intelligent technology 196
Notice about data recorded by vehicle control modules 196
Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP) 196
Braking 200
Servotronic® - advanced power steering system 202
Driving with your quattro® 203
Energy management 203

Driving and environment 206
The first 1,000 miles (1,500 km) and afterwards 206
Catalytic converter 207
Avoid damaging the vehicle 207
Operate your vehicle economically and minimize pollution 208

Driving off road 210
Driving in difficult road conditions and offroad 210

Trailer towing 213
Driving with a trailer 213
Trailer towing tips 215

Vehicle care 217
Cleaning and protection 217
General information 217
Care of exterior 217
Care of interior 223

Fuel supply and filling your fuel tank 228
Gasoline 228
Fuel tank 229

Checking and filling 232
Engine hood 232
Engine compartment 234
Engine oil 234
Engine cooling system 239
Brake fluid 241
Battery 242
Windshield/headlight washer container 246

Tires and wheels 247
Tires 247
Tire pressure monitoring system 265

Do-it-yourself service 268
What do I do now? 268
Jack, tools and inflatable spare tire .. 268
Changing a wheel 271

Fuses and bulbs 277
Electrical fuses 277
Bulbs 279

Emergency situations 281
General 281
Starting by pushing or towing 281
Starting with jumper cables 281
Use of jumper cables 282

Emergency towing with commercial tow truck 283
Lifting vehicle 285

Technical data 287
General information 287
Explanation of technical data 287
Vehicle identification 287
Weights 287
Dimensions 288

Data 289
211 hp, 4-cylinder engine, with all wheel drive 289
270 hp, 6-cylinder engine, with all wheel drive 290

Consumer Information 291
Warranty coverages 291
Operating your vehicle outside the U.S.A. or Canada 291
Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature 291
Maintenance 291
Additional accessories, modifications and parts replacement 293
Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunications and Electronic Systems 294

Index 296

In addition to this Owner's Manual, your Audi comes with a Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

Moreover, depending on the model and the equipment, there may be additional instruction booklets delivered with your vehicle (for example, Operating Instructions for your Sound System, Navigation System etc.).

If you are missing one of these publications, or if you believe that the information is not complete, contact your authorized Audi dealer for assistance.

The Warranty & Maintenance booklet

explains how you can keep your Audi in top driving condition by having it serviced regularly and contains detailed information about the warranties covering your Audi. Always have the booklet with you when you take your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer for service. Your Audi Service Adviser will record each scheduled service and can answer any questions you may have regarding how to maintain your vehicle.

In Canada,

the vehicle literature is also available in French. To obtain a copy, contact your dealer or write to:

Au Canada, on peut se procurer un exemplaire en français de ce document auprès du concessionnaire ou de:

Volkswagen Canada, Inc.
Client Assistance
Assistance a la Clientele
777 Bayly Street, West,
Ajax, Ontario L1S 7G7

If you sell your Audi

all literature should be left in the vehicle to make the Warranty terms as well as all operating, safety and maintenance information available to the next owner.

If you change your address or if you bought this Audi used

be sure to send in a "Notice of Address Change" / "Notice of Used Car Purchase" post card. This card can be found in the Warranty & Maintenance booklet or obtained from your authorized Audi dealer.

It is in your own interest that we are able to contact you should the need arise.

This owner's manual contains important information, tips, suggestions, and warnings for the use of your vehicle.

Make sure that this owner's manual is always located in the vehicle. This is especially important if you allow other people to drive the vehicle, or if you sell it.

This owner's manual describes the **equipment range** specified for this model at the editorial deadline date. Some of the equipment described here will only be available at a later date, or only in specific markets.

Some sections in this owner's manual do not apply to all vehicles. In that case, the **range of applicability** is given at the beginning of the section, e. g., “Applies to vehicles: with adaptive light”. In addition, optional equipment is indicated by an asterisk “*”.

The details in the **illustrations** may be different from those in your vehicle, and are intended to be viewed as a basic guide.

You will find a **table of contents** at the beginning of this book, which displays all topics described in this manual in order of appearance. You will find an alphabetical **index** at the end of this book.

All **directions**, such as “left”, “right”, “front”, “back”, are relative to the direction of travel.

* optional equipment

▶ This section continues on the next page.

® Registered trademarks are identified with a ®. If this symbol is missing, it is no guarantee that the terms can be used freely.

⇨ ⚠ Cross-reference to a “WARNING!” within a section. For indication with a page number, the corresponding “WARNING!” can be found outside of the section.

WARNING

Text with this symbol contains important information on safety and how to reduce the risk of personal injury or death.

Note

Text with this symbol draws your attention to potential sources of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Text with this symbol contains information about the environment and how you can help protect it.

Tips

Text with this symbol contains special tips and other information about getting the most out of your vehicle and its features.

Instruments and controls

General illustration

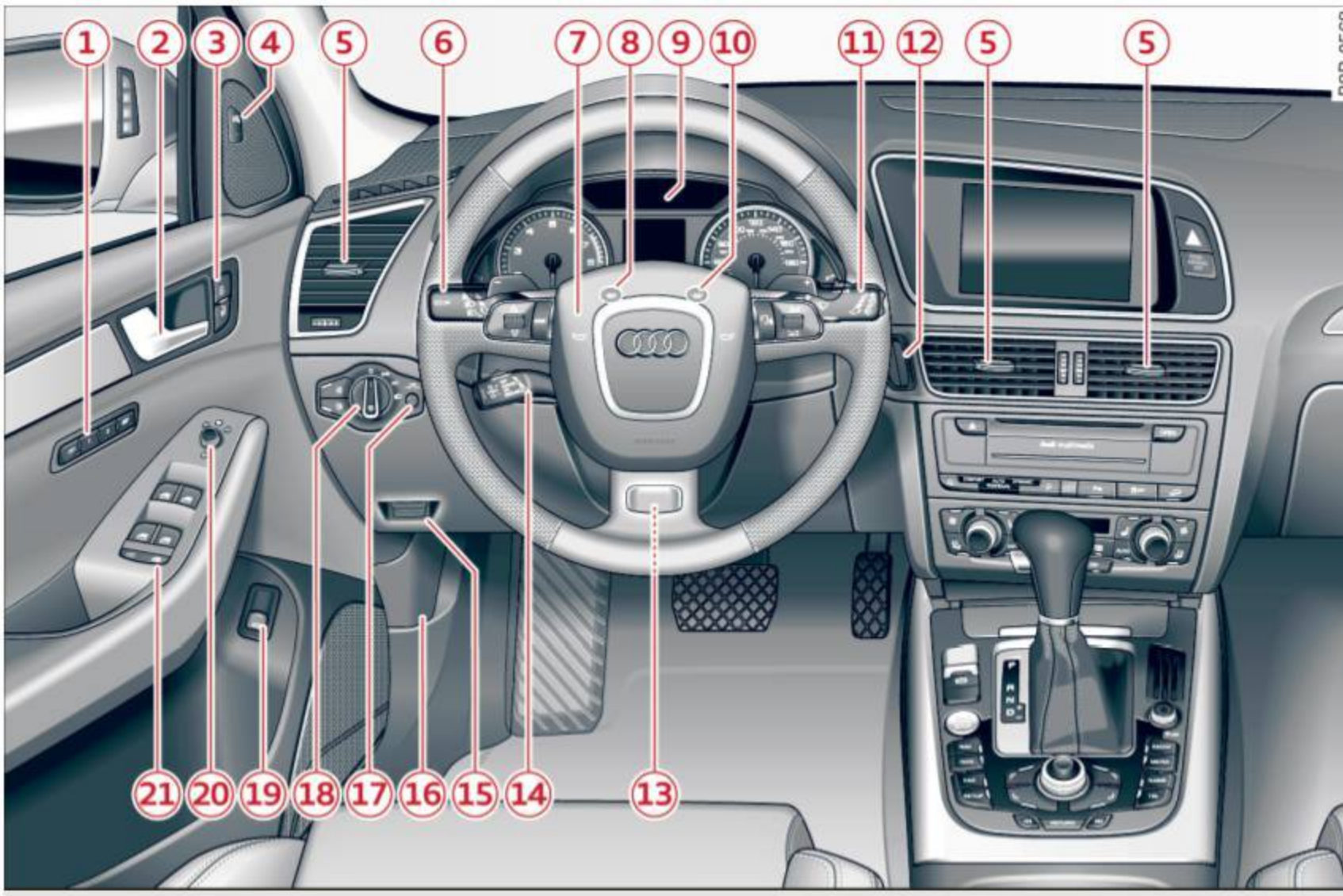


Fig. 1 Cockpit: left section

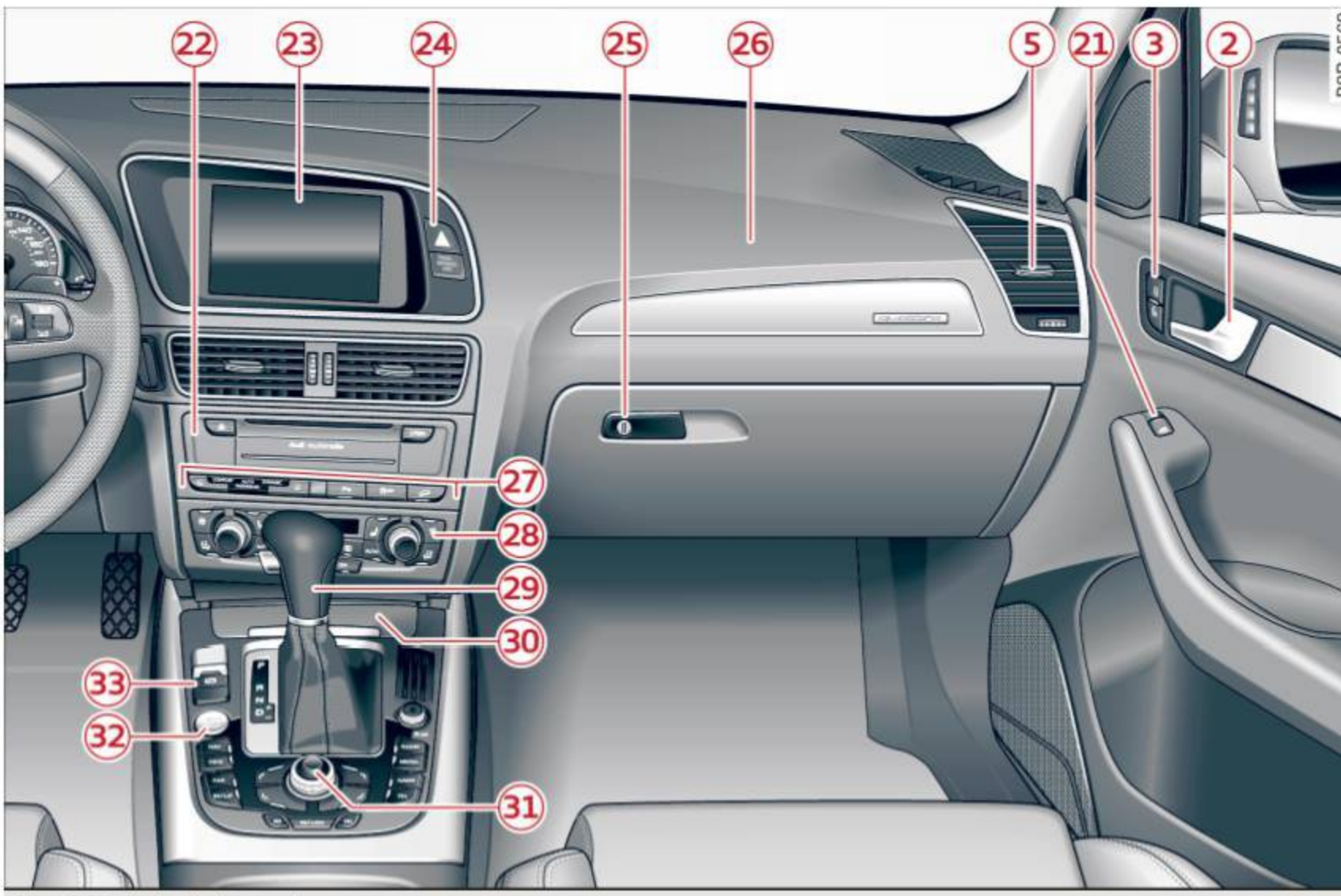


Fig. 2 Cockpit: right section

① Memory buttons (driver's seat) 66
② Door handle
③ Power locking switch 43
④ Side assist button 113
⑤ Air outlets 87
⑥ Turn signal and high beam 54
⑦ Multifunction steering wheel with:
– Horn
– Driver's airbag 160
– Operating buttons for the audio system
– Rocker switches for tiptronic operation 127
⑧ SET button 11
⑨ Instrument cluster 10
⑩ Reset button for trip odometer . 13
⑪ Switches for:
– Windshield wiper/washer 56
– Trip computer 22
⑫ Ignition lock 90
⑬ Adjustable steering column . . . 90
⑭ Control lever for:
– Cruise control 97
– Adaptive cruise control 99
⑮ Data Link Connector for On Board Diagnostics (OBD II) 25
⑯ Release lever for the engine hood 232
⑰ Instrument lighting 53
⑱ Light switch 51
⑲ Switch for unlocking the trunk lid 44
⑳ Adjuster control for outside mirrors 60
㉑ Power window switches 47
㉒ Radio system or Audi multimedia (see separate manual)
㉓ Radio or MMI display (see separate manual)
㉔ Button/Indicator light for:
– Emergency flasher 54
– PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF
㉕ Glove compartment (lockable) . 80
㉖ Front passenger's airbag 160
㉗ Depending on options:
– Control for Audi drive select . 121
– Parking system switch 129
– Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP) switch 196
– Hill descent assist switch 198
㉘ Three-zone automatic climate control 82
㉙ Shift lever for automatic transmission 123
㉚ Ashtray with cigarette lighter . . 78, 78
㉛ Depending on options:
– MMI control console or
– Parking system switch 129
– Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP) switch 196
– Hill descent assist switch 198
– Control for Audi drive select . 121
㉜ Start/Stop button 92
㉝ Electromechanical parking brake . . 94

Tips

Some of the equipment or features shown in the general illustration may be standard equipment on your vehicle or may be optional equipment depending on your model. Always ask your authorized Audi dealer if you have a question about your vehicle.

Instruments and warning/indicator lights

Instruments

Instrument cluster and controls

The instrument cluster is your central source of information.

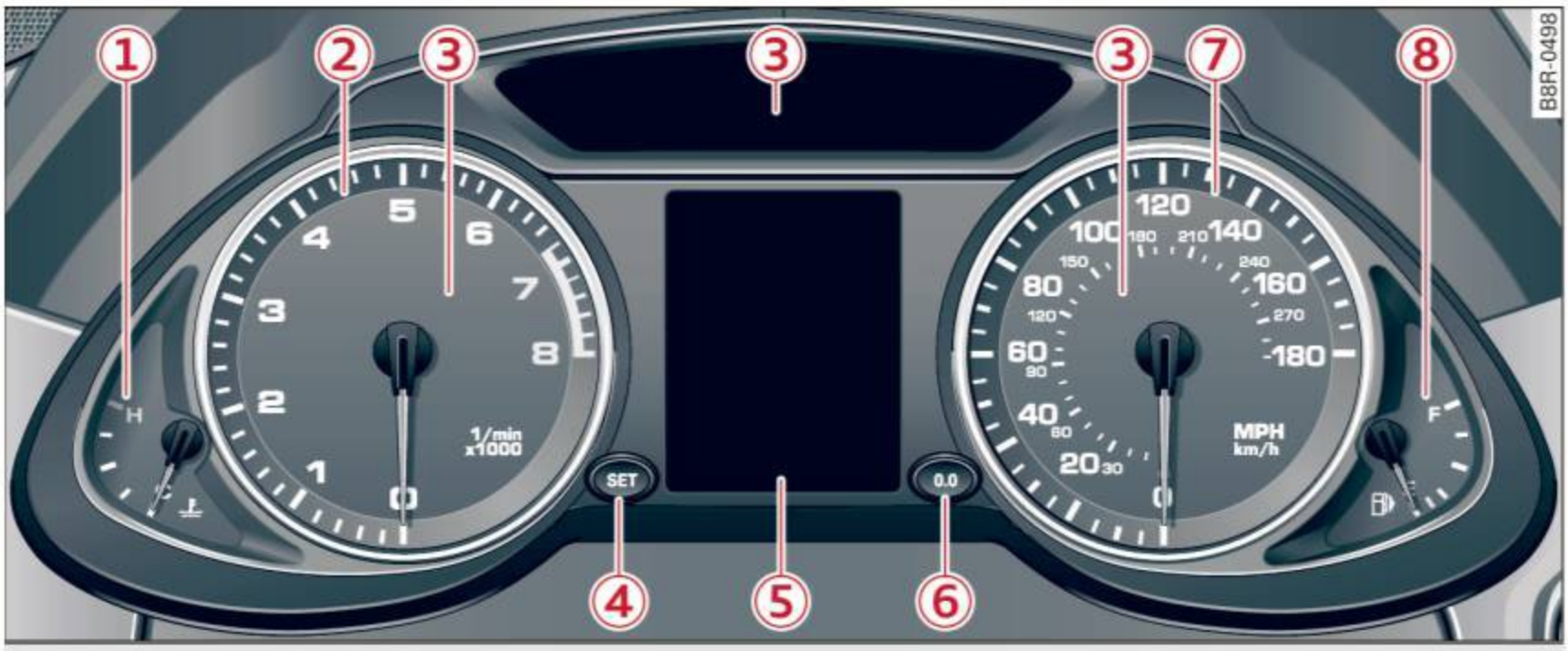


Fig. 3 Overview of the instrument cluster

① Coolant temperature gauge . . . 10
② Tachometer 11
③ Warning/indicator lights 14
④ SET button 11
⑤ Display
– Driver information system . . . 20
– Time and date display 12
– Odometer 13
⑥ Reset button for trip odometer . 13
⑦ Speedometer
⑧ Fuel gauge 12

Tips

The illumination for the instrument cluster lights up whenever you switch on the ignition with the **vehicle headlights off**. As the daylight fades, the instrument cluster illumination likewise dims automatically and will go out completely when the outside light is very low. This feature is meant to remind you to switch on the headlights when outside light conditions become poor.

Engine coolant temperature gauge

The engine coolant gauge ⇨ *page 10, fig. 3* ① only works when the ignition is on. To prevent damage to your engine, please note the following important points:

Engine cold

If the needle is at or close to the bottom of the gauge, the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid high engine speeds, heavy engine loads, and heavy throttle applications.

Normal temperature

When the engine has reached its operating temperature, the needle will move to the middle of the gauge and remain there. If the engine is working hard at high outside temperatures, the needle may move higher on the gauge. This is not a cause for concern as long as the warning light in the instrument cluster display does not illuminate. ▶

Warning light in the instrument cluster display

If the warning light in the instrument cluster display flashes, this can mean one of two things: either the coolant *temperature* is too high, or the coolant *level* is too low ⇨ *page 30*.

If the needle is well in the upper area of the gauge, the coolant temperature is too high. **Stop the vehicle, switch the engine off, and allow it to cool.** If the warning light comes on again after driving a short distance, contact an authorized Audi dealer or other qualified workshop.

WARNING

- Always observe the warning in ⇨ *page 226, Engine compartment*, before opening the hood and checking the engine coolant level.
- Never open the engine hood if you see or hear steam, or if you see engine coolant dripping from the engine compartment. You could burn yourself. Let the engine cool off first so that you cannot hear or see any steam or engine coolant.

Note

- Mounting additional lights or accessories in front of the air inlets reduces the cooling effect of the radiator. At high outside temperatures or high engine load, the engine could overheat.
- The front spoiler has been designed to properly distribute the cooling air when the vehicle is moving. If the spoiler is damaged, this could reduce the cooling effect and the engine could then overheat. Ask your authorized Audi dealer for assistance.

Tachometer (engine rev counter)

The tachometer indicates the engine RPM (revolutions per minutes).

If engine RPM drops below 1,500, you should downshift to the next lower gear. The red area at the end of the scale indicates maximum permissible engine RPM after the break-in period. Before reaching this area, move the selector lever to position “D (Drive)” or ease your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Note

The tachometer needle ② ⇨ *page 10, fig. 3* should only briefly be in the red zone: you could damage your engine! The beginning of the red zone varies depending on the engine.

For the sake of the environment

Upshifting early saves fuel and reduces engine noise.

SET button

You can perform different functions with this button.



Fig. 4 SET button in the instrument cluster

The SET button performs the following functions:

Switching on time, date, temperature display, and odometer

The display appears for approximately 30 seconds when you press the SET button ⇨ *fig. 4* with the ignition off.

Starting the Auto-Check sequence

The Auto-Check system ⇨ *page 28* constantly monitors certain individual functions and components of the vehicle when the ignition is turned on and when the vehicle is moving.

With the ignition turned on, you can start the “Auto-Check sequence” by pressing the SET ▶

button. You can perform an Auto-Check sequence when the vehicle is stationary and the ignition is turned on or when the vehicle is moving slower than 3 mph (5 km/h).

The number of keys programmed to the vehicle is also displayed. The display **L2 3/3** indicates that three keys have been programmed. This allows you to make sure you have received all of the keys when you purchase a used vehicle.

For example, if you only receive two keys, you should take those keys to your authorized Audi dealer to have the missing key deactivated so it cannot be used. You should also report the missing key to your insurance company.

Calling up the driver information

A yellow or red symbol appears in the instrument cluster display, usually with a driver message. The driver message display disappears after about 5 seconds. The driver message can be displayed again by briefly pressing the SET button.

Setting the speed warning

By pressing the SET button briefly, you can set threshold 1 of the speed warning while you are driving ⇨ *page 27*. By maintaining pressure on the SET button, you delete the warning threshold.

Digital clock with date display



Fig. 5 Instrument cluster: time and date

Digital clock

The date, time of day, time and date format can be set in the radio or in the MMI*. You can learn more about this in the MMI manual or in the radio user's manual.

Tips

- The digital clock turns on for about 30 seconds when the driver's door is opened.
- When the ignition is turned off, the odometer reading and the digital clock with date display can be switched on for about 30 seconds by pressing the SET button ⇨ *page 11, fig. 4*.

Fuel gauge

The fuel gauge works only when the ignition is on.

When the needle reaches the reserve mark, the ⇨ *page 34* symbol appears in the instrument cluster display as well as the message **Please refuel**. There are approximately 2.6 gallons (10 liters) of fuel left. This message is meant to remind you to **refuel.**

The total tank capacity of your vehicle is listed in ⇨ *page 289*.

Note

Never run the tank completely dry! An irregular supply of fuel can cause engine misfiring and fuel could enter into the exhaust system. The catalytic converter could then overheat and be damaged.

Odometer

The odometer indicates the distance driven.



Fig. 6 Instrument cluster: odometer



Fig. 7 Instrument cluster: reset button

The display of distance driven is shown in kilometers "km" or in "miles".

– USA models – Miles
– Canada models – Kilometers

You can switch from kilometers to miles or vise versa in the radio or in the MMI* using the SETUP button.

Odometer/trip odometer

The odometer shows the total number of kilometers or miles that have been driven on the vehicle.

The trip odometer shows the distance driven since it was last reset. It can be used to measure short distances. The last digit shows distances of 100 meters or 1/10 of a mile.

The trip odometer can be reset to zero by pressing the reset button O.O ⇨ *fig. 7*.

Malfunction message

If there is a malfunction somewhere in the instrument cluster, **dEF** will appear in the trip odometer and will stay on. Contact your authorized Audi dealer to have the problem corrected.

Tips

– The date, time, and distance continue to show for about 30 seconds after the ignition is switched off.
– The odometer turns on for about 30 seconds when the driver's door is opened.
– The odometer can be turned on for approximately 30 seconds with the ignition off by pressing the SET button ⇨ *page 11, fig. 4*.

Warning/indicator lights

Overview

The warning/indicator lights indicate different functions or a possible malfunction.



Fig. 8 Instrument cluster with warning/indicator lights

Your vehicle is equipped with several important warning and indicator lights to help you monitor the continued reliable operation of your vehicle ⇨ ⚠.

	Dynamic steering* ⇨ *page 15*
EPC	Electronic power control ⇨ *page 15*
	Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP) ⇨ *page 15*
OFF	Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP) ⇨ *page 15*
AIR BAG	**USA models:** Safety systems ⇨ *page 16*
	Canada models: Safety systems ⇨ *page 16*
	Tire pressure monitoring system* ⇨ *page 16*
	Left turn signal ⇨ *page 16*
	Trailer turn signal* ⇨ *page 16*
	Safety belt ⇨ *page 17*
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) ⇨ *page 17*
	High beam ⇨ *page 17*
	Right turn signal ⇨ *page 16*
CRUISE	**USA models:** Cruise control activated ⇨ *page 17*
	Canada models: Cruise control activated ⇨ *page 17*
ABS	**USA models:** Anti-lock brake system (ABS) defective ⇨ *page 17*
ABS	**Canada models:** Anti-lock brake system (ABS) defective ⇨ *page 17*
PARK BRAKE	**USA models:** Parking brake ⇨ *page 18*

▶

	**Canada models:** Parking brake ⇨ *page 18*
	**USA models:** Brake malfunction ⇨ *page 18*
	**Canada models:** Brake malfunction ⇨ *page 18*

In vehicles with adaptive cruise control* additional indicator lights are displayed ⇨ *page 104*.

WARNING

- Failure to heed warning lights and other important vehicle information may result in serious personal injury or vehicle damage.
- Whenever stalled or stopped for repair, move the vehicle a safe distance off the road, stop the engine, and turn on the emergency flasher ⇨ *page 54*.
- The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. Before you check anything in the engine compartment, stop the engine and let it cool down. Always exercise extreme caution when working under the hood ⇨ *page 226, Engine compartment*

Tips

Many functions are monitored by the Auto-Check system ⇨ *page 28*. Malfunctions or faults will be identified either with a red symbol (priority 1 – Danger!) or with a yellow symbol (priority 2 – Warning).

Dynamic steering

Applies to vehicles: with Audi drive select

If the indicator light illuminates when switching on the ignition and goes out when the engine starts, dynamic steering is activated.

If the indicator light illuminates after the engine starts, a system malfunction has occurred. You can continue to drive carefully at a reduced speed to a qualified workshop. Steering can be more difficult or sensitive than usual. The steering wheel may also be at an angle when driving straight.

WARNING

Have the dynamic steering system malfunction repaired as soon as possible by an authorized Audi dealer or any qualified workshop - risk of accident!

Tips

- If the indicator light flashes, dynamic steering is being re-initialized. The driver information system display shows the words **Dynamic steering: initializing** ⇨ *page 33*.
- The dynamic steering stability systems are not available in the event of a system malfunction.

EPC Electronic power control

This warning/indicator light monitors the electronic power control.

The EPC warning/indicator light (Electronic Power Control) illuminates when you turn on the ignition as a function check.

Tips

If this warning/indicator light illuminates while you are driving, then there is a malfunction in the engine electronics. Have the malfunction corrected as soon as possible by your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.

Electronic stabilization program (ESP)

If the indicator lamp blinks while driving, the ESP or ASR (Anti-Slip Regulation) is actively regulating.

If the indicator lamp illuminates, the system has switched the ESP off. In this case, you can switch the ignition off and then on to ▶

switch the ESP on again. The system is functioning completely when the indicator lamp switches off.

If the indicator lamp illuminates, the ESP was switched off with the OFF button.

Stabilisation program and ABS fault! See owner's manual

If the indicator lamp and the ABS indicator lamp illuminate and the driver message appears, the ABS or electronic differential lock is malfunctioning. This also interrupts the ESP. The brakes still function with their normal power, but ABS is not active.

Drive to your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

For more information about the ESP ⇨ *page 196*.

Safety systems

The AIR BAG (USA models) / (Canada models) indicator light monitors the safety systems e.g. airbags, pretensioners and illuminates for a few seconds each time you switch the ignition on.

If the AIR BAG (USA models) / (Canada models) indicator light does not go out, or if it illuminates while you are driving, or if it starts to blink, then there is a malfunction somewhere in the system. If the light does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, this also means there is a malfunction.

WARNING

If you have a malfunction in the safety systems, contact your authorized Audi dealer immediately. Otherwise the safety systems may not work properly in an accident.

Tire pressure monitoring system - telltale indicator lamp

Applies to vehicles: with tire pressure monitoring system

The warning/indicator light appears in the event of a significant loss of tire pressure or if there is a malfunction.

The indicator light illuminates to check the function when you switch on the ignition.

If the symbol remains on or blinks after you switch on the ignition, there is a loss of tire pressure or a system malfunction. If there is a system malfunction, see your authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible.

Detailed information on the tire pressure monitoring system can be found in ⇨ *page 265*.

Turn signals

The indicator light blinks when you use either turn signal.

Whenever you use the left or the right turn signal, the indicator light blinks. When you use the emergency flashers, both indicator lights flash.

If one of the turn signal light bulbs burn out, the turn signal will blink twice as fast as normal.

This does not apply, however, in towing mode. The indicator light does not flash if a turn signal is out on the trailer or the towing vehicle. Additional information on the turn signals ⇨ *page 54*.

Trailer turn signal assembly

Applies to vehicles: with towing hitch

The indicator light also blinks if the turn signal is operated when towing a trailer.

The indicator light blinks when the turn signal is used, if a trailer has been properly connected to the vehicle.

If one of the turn signal bulbs on the trailer is burned out or defective, the indicator light will not blink when you use the turn signals. ▶

Tips

For vehicles with a factory installed towing hitch or a trailer hitch that was installed later according to factory specifications, the trailer turn signal assembly is actuated.

Safety belts

This warning/indicator light reminds you to put on your safety belt.

The warning/indicator light illuminates when the ignition is switched on to remind the driver and (on USA models only) any front passenger to put on the safety belt. Additionally, an audible warning tone will also sound.

For more Information ⇨ *page 148, Safety belt warning light*.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)

The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) is part of the On-Board Diagnostic (OBD II) system. The symbol lights up when the ignition is turned on and will turn off after the engine has started and has settled at a constant idle speed. This indicates that the MIL is working properly.

The warning light illuminates when there is a malfunction in the engine electronic system. Contact your authorized Audi dealer and have the malfunction corrected.

An improperly closed fuel filler cap may also cause the MIL light to illuminate ⇨ *page 230*.

For more information ⇨ *page 25*.

High beam

The warning/indicator light illuminates when the high beams are on or when you use the headlight flasher. For more information about using the high beams, see ⇨ *page 54*.

CRUISE/ Cruise control

The CRUISE (USA models) / (Canada models) warning/indicator light illuminates when the cruise control is activated.

ABS/ Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

This warning/indicator light monitors the ABS and the electronic differential lock (EDL).

The ABS (USA models) / (Canada models) warning/indicator light will come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. The light will go out after an automatic check sequence is completed.

There is a malfunction in the ABS when:

- The warning/indicator light does not illuminate when you switch on the ignition.
- The warning/indicator light does not go out after a few seconds.
- The warning/indicator light illuminates while driving.

The brake system will still respond even without the assistance of the ABS system. See your authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible to restore full braking performance. For more information regarding the ABS ⇨ *page 201*.

The ABS warning light and the brake warning light come on together. The ABS will not work and you will notice a change in braking response and performance.

Malfunction in the brake system

If the brake warning light ⇨ *page 18* and the ABS warning illuminate *together* there may be a malfunction in the ABS, and there may also be a malfunction in the brake system itself ⇨ ⚠.

In the event of a **malfunction in the brake system** the warning/indicator light BRAKE (USA models)/ (Canada models) in the instrument cluster flashes. By pressing the SET button, you can bring up a driver message which explains the malfunction in more detail. Please note ⇨ *page 30*. ▶

Malfunction in the electronic differential lock (EDL)

The EDL works together with the ABS. The ABS warning light will come on if there is a malfunction in the EDL system ⇨ *page 199*. See your authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible.

WARNING

- If the ABS (USA models)/ (Canada models) warning light does not go out, or if it comes on while driving, the ABS system is not working properly. The vehicle can then be stopped only with the standard brakes (without ABS). You will not have the protection ABS provides. Contact your authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible.
- *USA models:* If the BRAKE warning light and the ABS warning light come on together, the rear wheels could lock up first under hard braking. Rear wheel lock-up can cause loss of vehicle control and an accident. Have your vehicle repaired immediately by your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified workshop. Drive slowly and avoid sudden, hard brake applications.
- *Canada models:* If the brake warning light and the ABS warning light come on together, the rear wheels could lock up first under hard braking. Rear wheel lock-up can cause loss of vehicle control and an accident. Have your vehicle repaired immediately by your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified workshop. Drive slowly and avoid sudden, hard brake applications.

PARK BRAKE/(P) Electromechanical parking brake

The warning/indicator light monitors the electromechanical parking brake.

With the parking brake applied and the ignition turned on, the PARK BRAKE (USA models) / (P) (Canada models) warning/indicator light illuminates. After the ignition has been turned off, the warning/indicator light continues to illuminate for about 30 seconds. If the parking brake is applied with the ignition turned off, the warning/indicator light illuminates for about 30 seconds.

The warning/indicator light will go out when the parking brake is released.

If the warning/indicator light flashes continuously **after applying** the parking brake, braking force is not sufficient to prevent the vehicle from rolling unintentionally. Please note the following:

- If the slope of the ground is too steep to park the vehicle, the additional drive message appears **Caution: Vehicle parked too steep**.
- In the event of a parking brake malfunction, the yellow (P) symbol appears in the instrument cluster display and the driver message **Parking brake malfunction!** is displayed. Have the malfunction repaired as soon as possible by an authorized Audi dealer or any other qualified workshop.

BRAKE/(!) Brake system

The warning/indicator light flashes if brake fluid level is low, if there is an ABS system malfunction or a parking brake malfunction.

The BRAKE (USA models) / (!) (Canada models) light illuminates when the ignition is turned on. It goes out after the engine has been started. This indicates that the brake warning light is functioning properly.

If the brake warning light does not light up when the engine is cranking, there may be a malfunction in the electrical system. In this case, contact an authorized Audi dealer.

If the brake system warning/indicator light flashes, there is a brake system malfunction. By pressing the SET button, you can bring up a driver message which explains the malfunction in more detail ⇨ *page 30*.

If the ABS fails, the ABS warning/indicator light ABS (USA models)/ (Canada models) ▶

flashes together with the brake system warning/indicator light ⇨ ⚠.

(USA models): If the warning light BRAKE and the warning light illuminate together, immediately contact your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop to have all brake pads inspected ⇨ *page 34*.

When the light comes on, an audible warning signal is also given.

WARNING

- *USA models:* If the BRAKE warning light and the ABS warning light come on together, the rear wheels could lock up first under hard braking. Rear wheel lock-up can cause loss of vehicle control and an accident. Have your vehicle repaired immediately by your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified workshop. Drive slowly and avoid sudden, hard brake applications.
- *Canada models:* If the brake warning light and the ABS warning light come on together, the rear wheels could lock up first under hard braking. Rear wheel lock-up can cause loss of vehicle control and an accident. Have your vehicle repaired immediately by your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified workshop. Drive slowly and avoid sudden, hard brake applications.
- If the brake warning/indicator light does not go out after a few seconds and the parking brake released, or lights up while you are driving, the fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir is too low. If you believe that it is safe to do so, proceed immediately at low speed to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or qualified repair facility and have the brake system inspected.
- Always keep in mind that after several brake applications, you will need greater pressure on the brake pedal to stop your vehicle. Do not rely on strained brakes to respond with maximum stopping power in critical situations. You must allow for increased braking distances. The extra distance used up by fading brakes could lead to an accident.

Driver information display

Introduction

General notes

The driver information display inside the instrument cluster provides you, the driver, with much useful information.



Fig. 9 Instrument cluster: center display

Information from the driver information system is shown in the display in the center of the instrument cluster.

When you turn on the ignition and while you are driving, some functions and vehicle components are scanned for their operating status. Malfunctions or required service procedures are signaled audibly and shown by red and yellow lighted symbols and reminders to the driver in the display.

The driver is also shown information about radio and CD operation and directions for the navigation system*. You can find additional information on these subjects in the radio or MMI* manual.

The illustrations in the instrument panel display differ in some of the vehicles.

The driver information system provides the following functions:

Sound system display	⇨ *page 20*
Outside air temperature	⇨ *page 21*
Digital speedometer	⇨ *page 21*
Open door- and luggage compartment warning	⇨ *page 21*
Service interval display	⇨ *page 22*
Auto Check system	⇨ *page 28*
Driver information	⇨ *page 28*
Speed warning	⇨ *page 26*
Trip computer	⇨ *page 22*
Tire pressure monitoring system*	⇨ *page 265*
Digital clock with date display	⇨ *page 12*
Odometer and trip odometer	⇨ *page 13*
Selector lever position	⇨ *page 124*
Cruise control	⇨ *page 97*
Adaptive cruise control*	⇨ *page 99*

Tips

In the event of a malfunction either a red or yellow icon appears in the display. Red symbols indicate **Danger** ⇨ *page 29*. Yellow symbols indicate a **Warning** ⇨ *page 32*.

Sound system display



Fig. 10 Display: sound system

If priority 1 or priority 2 faults are not shown by the Auto Check Control, the name of the radio station you are tuned to or the frequency and the reception range are shown in the upper area of the display.

When the CD is in use, the title of the track being played is shown. The CD changer displays the number of the current CD (CD1 to CD6).

Outside temperature display



Fig. 11 Display: outside temperature

At temperatures below 39 °F (+4 °C), a snowflake symbol appears in front of the temperature display. It is intended to remind the driver to pay special attention to **ice on the road**.

If the vehicle is stationary, or if you are driving at a very low speed, the temperature shown in the display might be slightly higher than the actual outside temperature. This is caused by the heat being radiated from the engine.

The unit of measurement for the temperature can be set in either °F or in °C on the MMI* or on the radio control unit. The outside temperature display automatically shows the unit of measurement that has been set. For additional information, see the MMI* or the radio instruction manual.

WARNING

- Never use the outside temperature display to determine if a road surface is icy or not. Keep in mind that road surfaces, especially bridges and overpasses, could be ice covered and slippery even at an outside temperature above 39 °F (+4 °C).
- Always remember, even if the "snowflake" symbol (ice warning) does not appear in the display, black ice could be on the road.
- Always reduce your speed and drive with special care in cold weather conditions when the chance of encountering icy road surfaces increases.

Digital speedometer



Fig. 12 Display: Digital speedometer

Current speed appears in the display. Speed is shown in 1 mph increments (USA models) or 1 km/h increments (Canada models).

You can switch the display from miles to kilometers and vice versa via the radio or MMI*.

Open door or trunk lid warning

The pictogram alerts you when doors or the trunk lid have been left open.



Fig. 13 Display: Open door- and trunk lid warning

The Open Door/Trunk Lid warning displays if even *one* door, the hood or the trunk lid is open. This symbol also shows *which* door or lid has not been closed ⇨ *fig. 13*.

As soon as the door, the hood and the trunk lid are closed properly, the door and trunk lid warning turns off and the selected driver information system functions are displayed again.

Service interval display

The service interval display reminds you when your next service is due.



Fig. 14 Instrument cluster: Service interval display

The schedule for the next oil change or inspection is calculated automatically and displayed accordingly. The display works in two stages:

Service reminder

30 days before the next service is due, a service reminder appears in the display when you turn on the ignition ⇨ *fig. 14*.

After about 5 seconds the display switches back to normal. The distance and time remaining are updated each time the ignition is turned on until the date due for service is reached.

Service due

When the due date for service is reached, the message **Service due !** appears in the instrument cluster immediately after you turn on the ignition. Additionally, a warning tone sounds. After about 5 seconds the display switches back to normal.

Calling up the service schedules

If or when an oil change or inspection is due, can be shown in the radio or MMI* display by selecting the service interval display in the car menu. Select function button CAR > **Service interval display**.

Resetting the service interval display

Your authorized Audi dealer will reset the corresponding service schedule after performing the appropriate service on your vehicle. You also have the possibility to reset the oil change schedule after having performed an oil change according to Audi specifications. Select function button CAR > **Service interval display** > **Reset oil change interval**.

Note

If you disconnect the battery terminals, no calculations can be made for the service interval display during this time and no service reminder will appear. Remember that observing the proper service intervals is vitally important to extending the life of your vehicle, particularly the engine, and maintaining its value. Even if the mileage driven is low, the maximum period of one year from one service to the next must not be exceeded.

Tips

- Do not reset the display between oil changes, otherwise the display will be incorrect.
- The information in the Service Reminder remains stored even when the vehicle battery is disconnected.

Trip computer

Introduction

The trip computer gives you information on current and average fuel mileage, average speed, fuel range and driving time.



Fig. 15 Trip computer display: Average fuel mileage

The following information is continuously evaluated by the trip computer and can be displayed sequentially in the instrument cluster display: ▶

Fuel range

The estimated cruising range in miles (km) appears in the display. This tells you how far your vehicle will be able to travel on the current tank of fuel and with the same driving style. The display changes in increments of 6 miles (10 km).

Average fuel mileage

The average fuel economy in MPG (l/100 km) since you last cleared the memory appears in this display. You can use this display to adjust your driving technique to achieve a desired mileage.

Current fuel mileage

The instantaneous fuel consumption in miles per gallon (l/100 km) is shown in this display. You can use this display to adjust your driving technique to achieve a desired mileage.

Fuel consumption is recalculated at intervals of 33 yards (30 meters). This display switches to gallons/hour (liters/hour) when the vehicle is not moving.

Average speed

The average speed in mph (km/h) since the last time the display was reset appears in the display.

Elapsed time

The length of time that you have been driving since you last reset the memory appears in this display.

Distance

The distance that has been covered since the last time the memory was cleared appears in the display.

Tips

- Fuel consumptions (average and current), range and speed are displayed in metric units on Canadian models.
- All stored values will be lost if the vehicle battery is disconnected.

Memories

The trip computer is equipped with two fully automatic memories as well as an efficiency program.*



Fig. 16 Trip computer display: memory level 1

You can switch between the trip computer 1 and 2 and the efficiency program* by pressing the RESET button (B) ⇨ *page 24, fig. 17*.

You can tell which memory level is currently active by the number or the sign in the display ⇨ *fig. 16*. The data from the single-trip memory (memory level 1) is being displayed if a 1 appears in the display. If a 2 is shown, then the data from the total-trip memory is being displayed (memory level 2). The fuel pump nozzle indicates the efficiency program* ⇨ *page 24*.

Single-trip memory (Trip computer 1)

The single-trip memory stores the trip information from the time the ignition is turned on until it is turned off. If the trip is continued **within 2 hours** from the time the ignition was turned off, the new data will be included in the calculation of the current trip information. If the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours** the memory is reset automatically.

Total-trip memory (Trip computer 2)

Unlike the single-trip memory, the total-trip memory is not reset automatically. This permits you to evaluate your driving data for the entire period between manual resets.

Efficiency program*

The efficiency program can help you to use less fuel ⇨ *page 24*.

Operation

The trip computer is controlled by two switches on the windshield wiper lever.

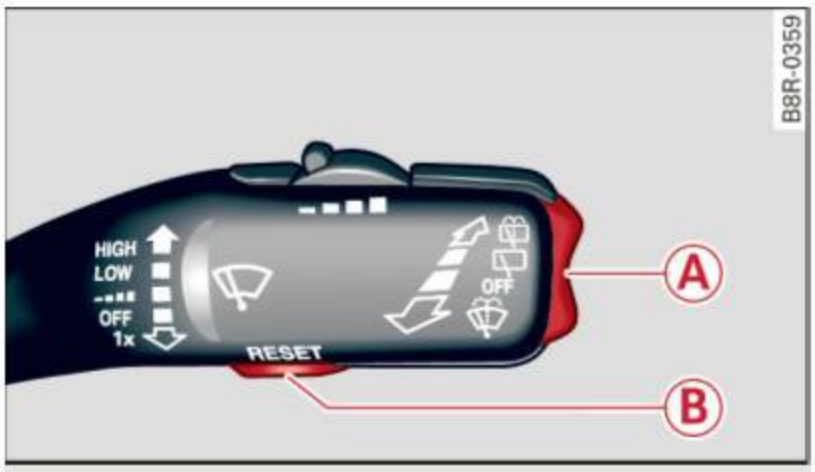


Fig. 17 Windshield wiper lever: controls for the trip computer

- To display the trip computer memory levels, press the RESET button (B) ⇨ *fig. 17* repeatedly until the desired memory level is shown in the display.
- To display trip information within a memory level, press the top or bottom part of the function selection switch (A).

The trip computer will not operate unless the ignition is on. When you turn on the ignition, the function that was in use when you last turned the ignition off will be displayed.

In addition to information on the trip computer (trip computer 1, 2 and efficiency program*, the digital speedometer and information regarding the navigation system* can also be displayed. To switch the display between the different information, tap the RESET button (B) briefly.

Setting values to zero

To delete **one** current value from the trip computer, select the desired function and press the RESET button (B) for at least one second. The following values can be set to zero **individually**:

– Average fuel mileage
– Average speed
– Elapsed time
– Distance

All currently displayed values are deleted in the efficiency program*.

In addition, **all** the values in the single-trip or the total-trip memory can be deleted simultaneously ⇨ *page 24*.

Tips

All stored values will be lost if the vehicle battery is disconnected.

Basic Settings for the trip computer

The MMI or the radio operating unit is used for setting the trip computer's basic settings.*

- Select: Function button CAR > **Instrument cluster** > **On-board computer 1** or **On-board computer 2**.

The values in the single-trip or the total-trip memory can all be reset to zero at the same time under **Reset** in the menu.

In addition, you can determine what information from the trip computer should be shown in the instrument cluster display. If one of the pieces of driver information is turned **Off**, that driver information will not be shown in the display. The information will continue to be calculated by the trip computer and can be turned back **On** at any time.

Tips

The driving information in the efficiency program* is also reset to zero with the single-trip memory.

Efficiency program

Description

Applies to vehicles: with efficiency program



Fig. 18 Display: efficiency program ▶

▸ Press the RESET button Ⓑ ⇨ *page 24, fig. 17* repeatedly until the efficiency program appears in the display.

The efficiency program can help you to use less fuel. It evaluates driving information in reference to fuel consumption and shows other equipment influencing consumption. Fuel economy messages ⇨ *page 25* provide tips for efficient driving.

The efficiency program uses distance and consumption data from trip computer 1. If the data are deleted in the efficiency program, those values are also reset in trip computer 1.

Other equipment

Applies to vehicles: with efficiency program

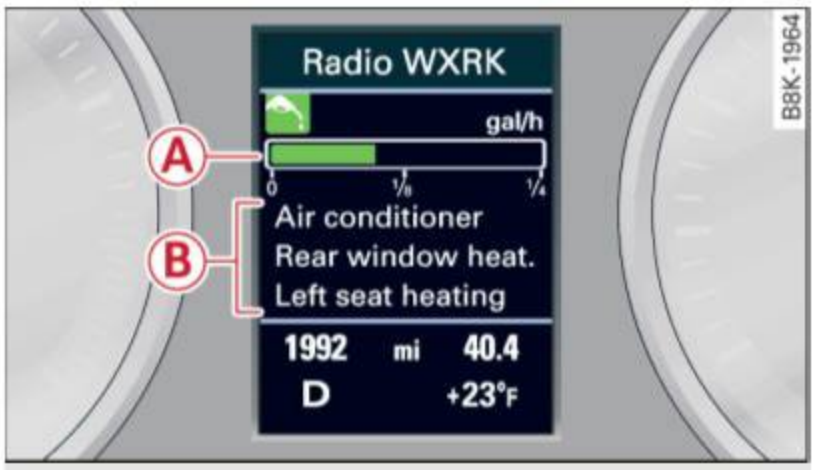


Fig. 19 Display: other equipment

▸ In the efficiency program, press the function selection switch ⇨ *page 24, fig. 17* Ⓐ repeatedly until the other equipment appears in the display.

Other equipment that is currently affecting fuel consumption is listed in the efficiency program. The display shows up to three other items of equipment Ⓑ. The equipment using the most fuel is listed first. If more than three items using fuel are switched on, the equipment that is currently using the most fuel is displayed.

A scale Ⓐ also shows the current total consumption of all other equipment.

Fuel economy messages

Applies to vehicles: with efficiency program

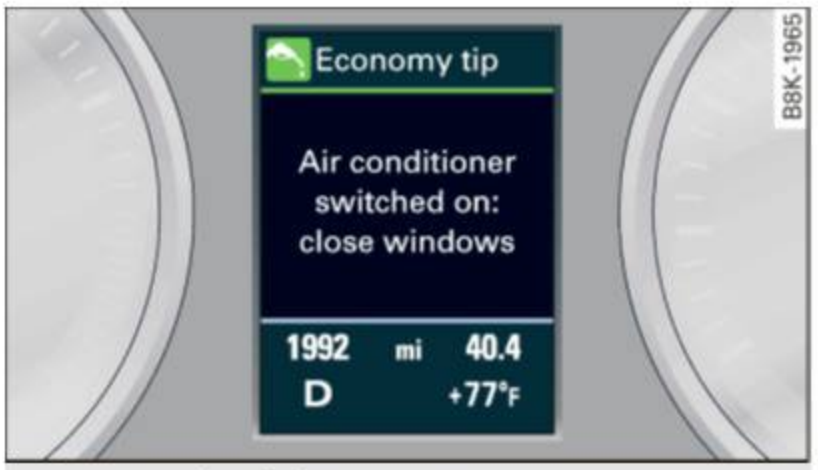


Fig. 20 Display: fuel economy message

Fuel economy messages are displayed when fuel consumption is increased by certain conditions. If you follow these fuel economy messages, you can reduce your vehicle's consumption of fuel. The messages appear automatically and are only displayed in the efficiency program. The fuel economy messages turn off automatically after a certain period of time.

▸ To turn a fuel economy message off immediately after it appears, press the RESET button ⇨ *page 24, fig. 17* Ⓑ, or
▸ Press the function selection switch ⇨ *page 24, fig. 17* Ⓐ.

Tips

– Once you have turned a fuel economy message off, it will only appear again after you turn the ignition on again.
– The fuel economy messages are not displayed in every instance, but rather in intervals over a period of time.

On-Board Diagnostic system (OBD)

Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)

The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) in the instrument cluster ⇨ *page 14, fig. 8* is part of the On-Board Diagnostic (OBD II) system.

The warning/indicator light illuminates when the ignition is switched on and goes out after the engine starts and the idle has stabilized. ▶

This indicates that the MIL is working properly.

If the light does not go out after the engine is started, or illuminates while you are driving, a malfunction may exist in the engine system. If the light illuminates, the catalytic converter could be damaged.

Continue driving **with reduced power** (avoiding sustained high speeds and/or rapid accelerations) and have the condition corrected. Contact your authorized Audi dealer.

If the light illuminates, the electronic speed limiter may also be malfunctioning. For more information ⇨ *page 26, Electronic speed limiter*.

An improperly closed fuel filler cap may also cause the MIL light to illuminate ⇨ *page 230*.

On-Board Diagnostics

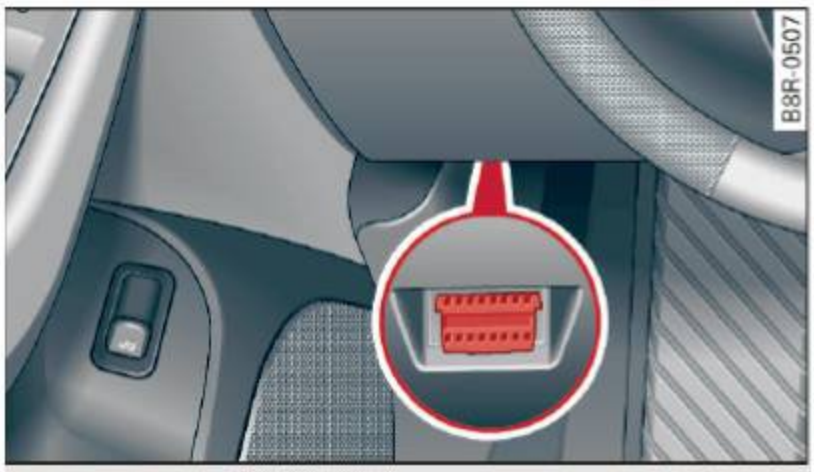


Fig. 21 Location of Data Link Connector (DLC)

On-Board Diagnostics monitors the components of your emission control system. Each monitored component in your engine system has been assigned a code. In case of a malfunction, the component will be identified and the fault stored as a code in the control module memory.

The MIL light may also illuminate if there is a leak in the on-board fuel vapor recovery system. If the light illuminates after a refueling, stop the vehicle and make sure the fuel filler cap is properly closed ⇨ *page 230*.

In order to make an accurate diagnosis, the stored data can only be displayed using special diagnostic equipment (generic scan tool for OBD).

In order to connect the special diagnostic equipment, push the plug into the Data Link Connector (DLC). The DLC is located to the right of the hood release ⇨ *fig. 21*.

Your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop can interpret the code and perform the necessary repair.

Electronic speed limiter

Your vehicle may be factory equipped with tires that are rated for a maximum speed of 130 mph (210 km/h). This is less than the maximum speed of your vehicle. To reduce the risk of sudden tire failure and loss of control if the vehicle is operated at excessive speeds, your vehicle also has an electronic speed limiter. The electronic speed limiter prevents your vehicle from going faster than the tire speed rating. For more information ⇨ *page 258*.

If the engine control unit receives faulty vehicle road speed signals, the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) will illuminate. If this occurs, contact the nearest authorized Audi dealer for assistance.

WARNING

Always observe the posted speed limits and adjust your speed to suit prevailing road, traffic and weather conditions. Never drive your vehicle faster than the maximum speed rating of the tires installed.

Speed warning system

Overview

The speed warning system helps you to keep your driving speed below a set speed limit.

The speed warning system warns if the driver exceeds a previously stored maximum speed. A warning tone will sound as soon as the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed by about 3 mph (3 km/h). At the same time, a warning ▶

symbol appears in the display. The symbol's appearance might be different in some models.

The speed warning system has **two warning thresholds** that function independently of each other and that have somewhat different purposes:

Speed warning 1

You can use speed warning 1 to set the maximum speed while you are driving. This setting will remain in effect until you turn off the ignition, assuming that you have not changed or reset the setting.

The speed warning symbol (USA models)/ (Canada models) in the warning 1 display appears when you exceed the maximum speed. It goes out when the speed falls below the stored maximum speed.

The speed warning symbol will also go out if the speed *exceeds* the stored maximum speed by more than about 25 mph (40 km/h) for at least 10 seconds. The stored maximum speed is deleted.

Setting speed warning 1 ⇨ *page 27*.

Speed warning 2

Storing warning 2 is recommended if you *always* want to be reminded of a certain speed, for example when you are traveling in a country that has a general maximum speed limit, or if you do not want to exceed a specified speed for winter tires.

The speed warning 2 symbol, (USA models)/ (Canada models) appears in the display when you exceed the stored speed limit. Unlike warning 1, it will not go out until the vehicle speed drops below the stored speed limit.

Setting speed warning 2 ⇨ *page 27*.

Tips

Even though your vehicle is equipped with a speed warning system, you should still watch the speedometer to make sure you are not driving faster than the speed limit.

Speed warning 1: setting a speed limit

Warning threshold 1 is set by the SET button.



Fig. 22 SET button in the instrument cluster

Storing the maximum speed

- ▸ Drive at the desired maximum speed.
- ▸ Press the SET button in the instrument panel display ⇨ *fig. 22* for 1 second.

Resetting the maximum speed

- ▸ Drive the vehicle at a speed of at least 3 mph (5 km/h)
- ▸ Press the SET button for more than 2 seconds.

The speed warning symbol (USA models)/ (Canada models) will appear briefly in the display when you release the SET button to indicate that the maximum speed has been stored successfully.

The maximum speed remains stored until it is changed by pressing the SET button again briefly or until it is deleted by a lengthy push on the button.

Speed warning 2: setting a speed limit

The MMI or the radio control unit is used to set, change or delete warning threshold 2.*

- ▸ Select: Function button CAR > **Instrument cluster** > **Speed warning**.

Warning threshold 2 can be set in the speed range starting from 20 mph to 150 mph (30 km/h to 240 km/h). Settings can each be adjusted in intervals of 5 mph (10 km/h).

Auto Check Control

Introduction

The Auto-Check control monitors the function of certain vehicle features and components. It simply makes sure these features and components are working properly. The Auto-Check control works as long as the ignition is on, as well as whenever the vehicle is driven.

If a component is malfunctioning or if the need for an urgent repair has been detected, this will appear in the instrument cluster display. You will also hear an audible warning tone. The displays are color coded in either red or yellow depending on their level of priority.

A red symbol means **Danger**, a yellow symbol indicates **Warning**. In certain situations, information message for the driver appear in addition to the red and yellow symbols.

Note about automatic transmission

The Auto-Check Control will automatically perform a test each time you switch on the ignition. With the selector lever in **P** or **N**, the following message appears in the display:

When stationary apply foot brake while selecting gear.

When you a select a different gear (for example: **R**, **D**, etc.), the message will disappear and the Auto-Check function is displayed.

If there is a malfunction, then the malfunction message will appear about 15 seconds after you start the vehicle. At the same time you will hear a warning tone.

Driver information messages

Driver information messages are shown in the instrument cluster display in addition to symbols.



Fig. 23 Instrument cluster: SET button

For example, if the transmission selector lever is not in the P position when the engine is turned off, the following message appears:

Shift to P otherwise vehicle can roll away. Doors do not lock if lever is not in P.

The ignition key can only be removed with the selector in this position. This and other messages are brought up if a function cannot be carried out.

Driver messages and red symbols

If a red symbol appears in the display, a driver message is also displayed automatically.

For example, the symbol for a problem with engine oil pressure appears in the display. The following message appears:

Switch off engine ! Oil pressure too low

The driver message in the display goes out after about 5 seconds. The driver message can be displayed again by briefly pressing the SET button ⇨ *fig. 23*.

Driver messages and yellow symbols

If a yellow symbol appears in the display, a driver message is also displayed automatically.

For example, the symbol appears in the display, indicating low windshield washer fluid level. The following message also appears:

Please refill washer fluid ▶

The driver message disappears after a few seconds. The driver message can be displayed again by briefly pressing the SET button.

Red symbols

A red symbol means DANGER.



Fig. 24 Display: Danger symbol

- ▸ Pull off the road.
- ▸ Stop the vehicle.
- ▸ Turn off the engine.
- ▸ Check the malfunctioning system. Contact your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

Red symbols indicate a priority 1 malfunction - Danger!

With a priority 1 malfunction, a red symbol appears in the upper center area of the display ⇨ *fig. 24*. A driver message appears as well to explain the malfunction in more detail. When this symbol appears, *three* warning tones sound in succession. The symbol continues to flash until the fault has been corrected.

If *several* priority 1 malfunctions are present, the symbols appear in succession and remain for about 2 seconds.

The driver warning goes out after about 5 seconds, but it can be brought up again at any time by pressing the SET button ⇨ *page 28*.

	Alternator failure ⇨ *page 29*
BRAKE	**USA models:** Brake system malfunction ⇨ *page 30*
	Canada models: Brake system malfunction ⇨ *page 30*
	Engine coolant level too low/engine coolant temperature too high ⇨ *page 30*
	Engine oil pressure too low ⇨ *page 31*
	Refill engine oil now ⇨ *page 31*
	Steering malfunction ⇨ *page 32*
	Ignition lock malfunction ⇨ *page 32*

Alternator malfunction

If the symbol in the instrument panel display flashes, then there is a malfunction in the alternator or the vehicle electronics. A warning to the driver will appear, too. The driver warning goes out after about 5 seconds, but it can be brought up at any time by pressing the SET button again.

Usually, you can still drive to the next dealership. Turn off all but the most necessary electrical consumers, since these drain the vehicle's battery.

Note

If the warning symbol (coolant system malfunction) also lights up on the instrument panel during the trip ⇨ *page 30*, then you have to stop immediately and turn off the engine. The coolant pump is not working anymore - danger of damage to the engine!

BRAKE/(!) Brake system malfunction

A malfunction in the brake system must be repaired as soon as possible.

If the **warning/indicator light** BRAKE (USA models)/(!) (Canada models) in the instrument cluster flashes, there is a brake system malfunction. A driver message appears as well to explain the malfunction in more detail. The driver warning goes out after about 5 seconds, but it can be brought up at any time by pressing the SET button again.

Stop vehicle and check brake fluid level

- ▸ Stop the vehicle.
- ▸ Check the brake fluid level ⇨ *page 241*.
- ▸ Seek professional assistance if necessary.

Warning! Fault in brake system. Contact workshop

- ▸ Drive carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or other qualified workshop and have the malfunction corrected ⇨ ⚠.

Parking brake system fault! See owner's manual

- ▸ If this symbol appears when the vehicle is stationary or after the ignition is turned on, check to see if the parking brake can be released. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or other qualified workshop as soon as possible and have the malfunction corrected. If the parking brake cannot be opened, then take it to an expert at an authorized Audi dealer.
- ▸ If the symbol appears while you are driving, it is possible that the traction control or the emergency brake has malfunctioned. It is possible that the parking brake cannot be applied. It is also possible that the parking brake cannot be released after it has been applied. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or other qualified workshop to have the malfunction corrected.

If the ABS system malfunctions, the ABS warning/indicator light illuminates together with the brake system malfunction warning/indicator light ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

- – Always observe the warnings in ⇨ *page 226, Engine compartment*, before opening the hood and checking the brake fluid.
- – Driving with low brake fluid is a safety hazard. Stop the car and get professional assistance.
- – *USA models:* If the BRAKE warning light and the ABS warning light come on together, the rear wheels could lock up first under hard braking. Rear wheel lock-up can cause loss of vehicle control and an accident. Have your vehicle repaired immediately by your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified workshop. Drive slowly and avoid sudden, hard brake applications.
- – *Canada models:* If the brake warning light (!) and the ABS warning light (ABS) come on together, the rear wheels could lock up first under hard braking. Rear wheel lock-up can cause loss of vehicle control and an accident. Have your vehicle repaired immediately by your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified workshop. Drive slowly and avoid sudden, hard brake applications.

Engine cooling system malfunction

A malfunction in the engine cooling system must be repaired as soon as possible.

If the symbol flashes in the display, either the engine coolant *temperature* is too high or the engine coolant *level* is too low. A driver message appears as well to explain the malfunction in more detail. The driver warning goes out after about 5 seconds, but it can be brought up at any time by pressing the SET button again.

Switch off engine and check coolant level

- ▸ Pull off the road.
- ▸ Stop the vehicle.
- ▸ Turn off the engine.
- ▸ Check coolant level ⇨ *page 239*. ▶

- ▸ Add coolant if necessary ⇨ *page 240*.
- ▸ Continue driving only after the engine coolant warning/indicator light goes out.
- ▸ Contact your authorized Audi dealer for assistance if necessary.

If the engine coolant level is correct, then the radiator fan may be the cause of the malfunction.

WARNING

- If your vehicle should break down for mechanical or other reasons, park at a safe distance from moving traffic, turn off the engine and turn on the hazard warning lights ⇨ *page 54, Emergency flashers*.
- Never open the hood if you see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment - you risk being scalded. Wait until you can no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping.
- The engine compartment of any vehicle is a dangerous area. Before you perform any work in the engine compartment, turn of the engine and allow it to cool. Follow the warning stickers ⇨ *page 226, Engine compartment*.

Note

Do not continue driving if the symbol illuminates. There is a malfunction in the engine cooling system – you could damage your engine.

Engine oil pressure malfunction

The red engine oil pressure warning symbol requires immediate service or repair. Driving with a low oil pressure indication is likely to cause severe engine damage.

If the symbol on the display flashes, the engine oil pressure is too low. A driver message appears as well to explain the malfunction in more detail. The driver warning goes out after about 5 seconds, but it can be brought up at any time by pressing the SET button again.

Switch off engine ! Oil pressure too low

- ▸ Stop the vehicle.
- ▸ Turn the engine off.
- ▸ Check the engine oil level ⇨ *page 237*.
- ▸ Contact your authorized Audi dealer for assistance if necessary.

Engine oil level too low

If the engine oil level is too low, add engine oil ⇨ *page 237*.

Engine oil level correct

If the symbol flashes even though the engine oil level is correct, please contact your nearest authorized Audi Dealer for assistance. Do not continue driving. Do not leave the engine running **idle, either**.

Tips

- **The engine oil pressure symbol is not an indicator for a low engine oil level. Do not rely on it. Instead, check the oil level in your engine at regular intervals, preferably each time you refuel, and always before going on a long trip.**
- **The yellow oil level warning indication requires oil refill or workshop service without delay. Do not wait until the red oil pressure warning starts to flash before you respond to the low oil level warning. By then, your engine may already have suffered serious damage.**

Fill engine oil now

WARNING: Please add oil immediately

If the symbol lights up, then the oil has to be replenished right now ⇨ *page 237*.

Steering malfunction

If there is a malfunction in the electronic steering column lock, the steering cannot be unlocked.

If the symbol in the display blinks, there is a malfunction in the electronic steering column lock. A driver message appears as well to explain the malfunction in more detail. The driver warning goes out after about 5 seconds, but it can be brought up at any time by pressing the SET button again.

Do not drive vehicle: steering defective

- ▸ Contact your nearest authorized Audi dealer.
- ▸ Do **not** tow your vehicle.

WARNING

Your vehicle must not be towed in the event of a malfunction in the electronic steering column lock because it cannot be steered due to the locked steering. If it is towed with the steering locked, there is the risk of an accident.

Ignition lock malfunction

A malfunction in the ignition lock must be repaired immediately.

If the symbol in the display blinks, there is a malfunction in the electronic ignition lock. A driver message appears as well to explain the malfunction in more detail. The driver warning goes out after about 5 seconds, but it can be brought up at any time by pressing the SET button again.

Ignition lock defective. Contact workshop !

- ▸ Do **not** turn the engine off.
- ▸ Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer to have the malfunction corrected.

If there is a malfunction in the electronic ignition lock, the ignition cannot be turned off. Drive immediately to an authorized service facility to have the cause of the malfunction corrected.

On vehicles with Convenience key*, the engine should not be switched off using the Start/Stop button because the engine cannot be started again after the ignition has been switched off.

Yellow symbols

A yellow symbol means WARNING.



Fig. 25 Display: Yellow warning symbol

Yellow symbols indicate a priority 2 malfunction - Warning!

When a yellow warning symbol appears, *one* warning tone sounds. A driver message appears as well to explain the malfunction in more detail. The driver warning goes out after about 5 seconds, but it can be brought up at any time by pressing the SET button again.

Check the function displayed as soon as possible. The yellow symbol will not go out again until the reason for the malfunction has been corrected.

If several priority 2 malfunctions are present, the symbols appear in succession and remain for about 2 seconds.

	Dynamic steering* ⇨ *page 33*
	Worn brake pads ⇨ *page 34*
	Battery voltage ⇨ *page 35*
	Defective light bulb ⇨ *page 34*

▸

	Check engine oil level ⇨ *page 35*
	Engine oil sensor malfunction ⇨ *page 35*
	Low fuel level ⇨ *page 34*
	Windshield washer fluid level low ⇨ *page 34*
	Convenience key* Key not in vehicle ⇨ *page 33*
	Light/rain sensor defective ⇨ *page 34*
	Dynamic headlight range control defective ⇨ *page 35*
	Battery in remote control key ⇨ *page 38*
	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 96*
	Engine speed limitation* ⇨ *page 35*
	Adaptive light defective* ⇨ *page 35*
	Ignition lock malfunction ⇨ *page 35*
	Adaptive dampers* ⇨ *page 36*
	Windshield wiper defective ⇨ *page 36*
	Tire pressure monitoring system* Loss of tire pressure ⇨ *page 266*
	Tire pressure monitoring system* System not available ⇨ *page 266*
	Automatic transmission malfunction ⇨ *page 128*

Tips

The speed warnings warning threshold 1 and warning threshold 2 are also yellow symbols in some models. The warning is always shown as a small symbol in the upper area of the display ⇨ *page 26*.

Dynamic steering

Applies to vehicles: Audi drive select

Dynamic steering: system fault

This driver message and the symbol appear when a system malfunction occurs during travel. You can continue to drive carefully at a reduced speed to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or a qualified workshop. Steering can be more difficult or sensitive than usual. The steering wheel can also be at an angle when driving straight.

Dynamic steering: initializing

If this driver message appears and the indicator light is flashing on the instrument panel, dynamic steering is being reinitialized. Once you start the engine after this is finished, the steering wheel will be easy to move. Re-initialization might be necessary if the steering wheel was moved hard to the left and right while the vehicle was not moving. The display goes out as soon as initialization is complete.

WARNING

Have the dynamic steering system malfunction repaired as soon as possible by an authorized Audi dealer or any qualified workshop - risk of accident!

Tips

The dynamic steering stability systems are not available in the event of a system malfunction.

Key not in vehicle

Applies to vehicles: with Convenience key

Key not in vehicle ▶

This reminder appears along with the symbol if the master key is removed from the vehicle with the engine running. It is intended to remind you (e.g. when changing drivers) not to continue the journey without the master key.

If the master key is no longer in the vehicle, you cannot switch off the ignition after stopping the engine and you also cannot start the engine again. You also cannot lock the vehicle from the outside.

Light/rain sensor defective

Automatic headlights / automatic wipers defective

If the symbol illuminates, the light sensor has failed. For safety reasons the low beams are turned on permanently with the switch in **AUTO**. However, you can continue to turn the lights on and off using the light switch. In the case of a defect in the rain sensor, the windshield wiper lever functions are still available. Have the light/rain sensor checked as soon as possible by an authorized Audi dealer.

Worn brake pads

Brake pads !

If the warning light illuminates, immediately contact your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop to have all brake pads inspected. On USA models the warning light comes on together with the warning light BRAKE. Both sets of brake pads on an axle must always be replaced at the same time.

WARNING

Driving with bad brakes can cause a collision and serious personal injury.

– If the warning light and the warning light BRAKE[1] with the message **Brake pads!** comes on in the instrument cluster display, immediately contact your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop to have all brake pads checked or replaced if necessary.

Defective light bulb warning

The defective light bulb warning monitors the function of the light bulbs in the vehicle.

The defective light bulb warning monitors the function of the light bulbs. If a defective light bulb is detected, or if a light bulb has burned out, a yellow symbol appears as well as a notification that shows which light bulb is defective.

WARNING

– Light bulbs are under pressure and can explode when bulbs are replaced - risk of injury.
– With gas-discharge lamps* (xenon headlights), the high-voltage component must be handled appropriately. Doing otherwise poses a risk of death!

Tips

Have an authorized Audi dealer or other qualified workshop perform the replacement or the repair.

Windshield washer fluid level too low

Please refill washer fluid

If the symbol illuminates, add windshield washer fluid to the washer system and also to the headlight washer system ⇨ *page 246*.

Fuel supply too low

When the symbol illuminates, this means there are about 2.6 gallons (10 liters) of fuel left in the fuel tank. Time to refuel! ⇨ *page 229*. ▶

1) BRAKE: USA models only

If the symbol lights up, even when there is ample fuel in the tank, and the text **Tank system malfunction ! Contact workshop** appears in the display, there is a fault in the system. Contact an authorized Audi dealer to have the fault rectified.

Battery voltage

If battery power drops into the range where it can limit the ability of the engine to start, this the symbol appears in the instrument cluster display with the following driver message **Low battery charge: battery will be charged while driving**.

While this driver notification is displayed, you have to be prepared for limited starting capability.

Driver message appears and goes out again

If this driver message appears after the ignition is turned on or while driving and it goes out again after a while, the battery has been adequately recharged.

Driver message appears and does not go out again

If this driver notification appears after the ignition is turned on or while driving and does not go out again, the battery's state of charge is not in the optimal range. Starting capability is restricted. Have the battery checked at an authorized Audi dealer or other qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Check engine oil

Add oil, max x qt (l). You may continue driving

When the symbol and driver message appear, add the amount of oil appearing in the display at the next opportunity ⇨ *page 237*.

Engine oil sensor defective

Oil level! Sensor defective

If the symbol illuminates, contact your authorized Audi dealer and have the oil sensor inspected. Until you have this done, check the oil level each time you refuel just to be on the safe side ⇨ *page 237*.

Engine speed limitation

Applies to vehicles: with engine speed limitation

Do not exceed max. engine speed of XXXX rpm

The symbol illuminates when there is an engine control malfunction. The indicator light EPC in the instrument cluster also illuminates. The engine speed is limited to the speed displayed in the driver information system. Keep in mind that the engine speed will not exceed the value displayed in the driver information system, for example when downshifting.

Please go to an authorized Audi dealer or other qualified workshop to have the malfunction repaired.

Headlight range control defective

Headlight range control defective !

If the symbol illuminates, the dynamic headlight range control is no longer working properly. Have the system checked and repaired at your authorized Audi dealer.

Adaptive light defective

Applies to vehicles: with adaptive light

adaptive light defective

When this symbol illuminates, it means that adaptive light is defective. Go to an authorized Audi dealer to have the headlights or the control unit for the adaptive light repaired.

Ignition lock malfunction

Ignition lock defective

If the symbol in the display comes on, there is a malfunction in the electronic ignition lock. Please go to an authorized Audi dealer or other qualified workshop to have the malfunction repaired.

Adaptive dampers

Applies to vehicles: with Audi drive select

Suspension: system fault

If the symbol in the display comes on, there is a malfunction in the adaptive dampers. Please go to an authorized Audi dealer or other qualified workshop to have the malfunction repaired.

Windshield wipers faulty

Windshield wiper defective

When this symbol illuminates, it means that the electronics for the windshield wipers are defective. Please go to an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop to have the windshield wiper system repaired.

Opening and closing

Keys

Key set

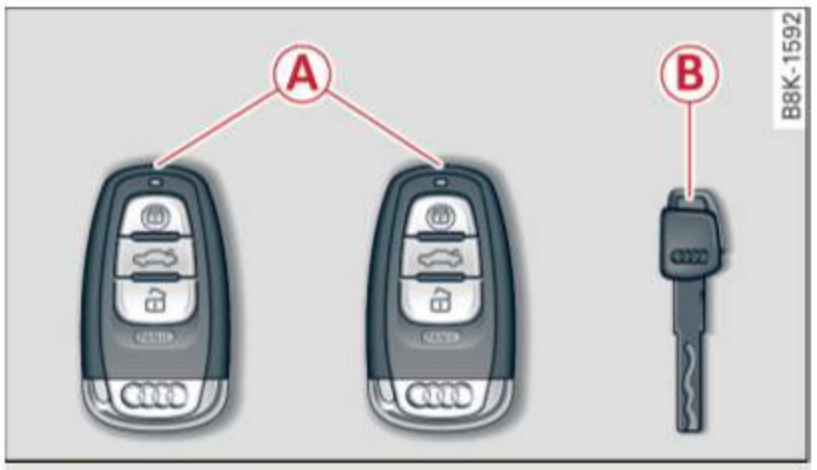


Fig. 26 Key set

Ⓐ Master key with remote control and integrated mechanical key

You can centrally lock and unlock your vehicle and start the engine with the master key with remote control. A mechanical key is integrated in the master key ⇨ *page 39*.

Ⓑ Emergency key

The emergency key is not intended for constant use. It should only be used in an emergency. Keep it in a safe place and do not carry it on your key ring.

Key replacement

If you lose a key, contact your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the *lost* key disabled. Be sure to bring all your keys with you.

Number of keys

You can inquire about the number of assigned keys to your vehicle ⇨ *page 11*. This allows you to make sure you have received all of the keys when you purchase a used vehicle.

Data in the master key

During driving, service and maintenance-relevant data is continuously stored on your master key. Your Audi service adviser can read out this data and tell you about the work your vehicle needs. This applies also to vehicles with Convenience key*.

Personal comfort settings

If two people use one vehicle, it is recommended that each person always uses "their own" master key. When the ignition is turned off or when the vehicle is locked, personal convenience settings for the following systems are stored and assigned to the remote master key.

– Climate control
– Central locking system
– Seat memory*
– Parking system*
– Adaptive cruise control*
– Audi side assist*
– Audi drive select*

The stored settings are automatically recalled when you unlock the vehicle, when you open the doors or when you turn on the ignition.

WARNING

– Do not leave your vehicle unattended with the key in the ignition lock. Entry by unauthorized persons could endanger you or result in theft or damage the vehicle. Always lock all doors and take the key.
– Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle, especially with access to vehicle keys. Unguarded access to the keys provides children the opportunity to start the engine and/or activate vehicle systems such as the power windows etc. Unsupervised operation of any vehicle system by children can result in serious injury.
– Do not remove the key from the ignition lock until the vehicle has come to a complete stop. Otherwise the steering column lock could suddenly engage - causing the risk of an accident.

Tips

– The operation of the remote control key can be temporarily disrupted by interference from transmitters in the vicinity of ▶

the vehicle working in the same frequency range (e.g. a cell phone, radio equipment).
– If you open the driver's door with the key left in the ignition lock, a chime will sound. This is your reminder to remove the key and lock the door.
– For security reasons, replacement keys are only available from Audi dealers.
– For Declaration of Compliance to United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations ⇨ *page 294*.

Check light in the master key

The check light in the master key provides information about different conditions.

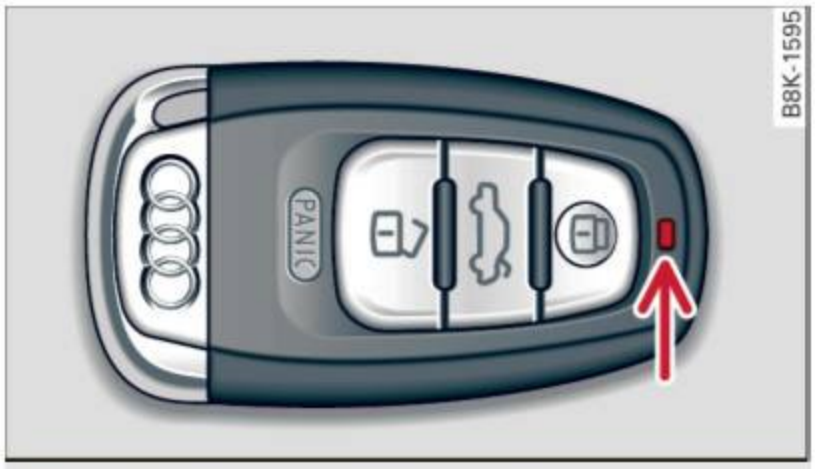


Fig. 27 Check light in the master key

The check light comes on briefly once when a button is pressed.

If the check light does not come on, the battery is dead and has to be replaced. In addition, when the battery is dead the symbol appears in the instrument cluster display as well as the message:

Please change key battery

Battery replacement ⇨ *page 38*.

Master key battery replacement

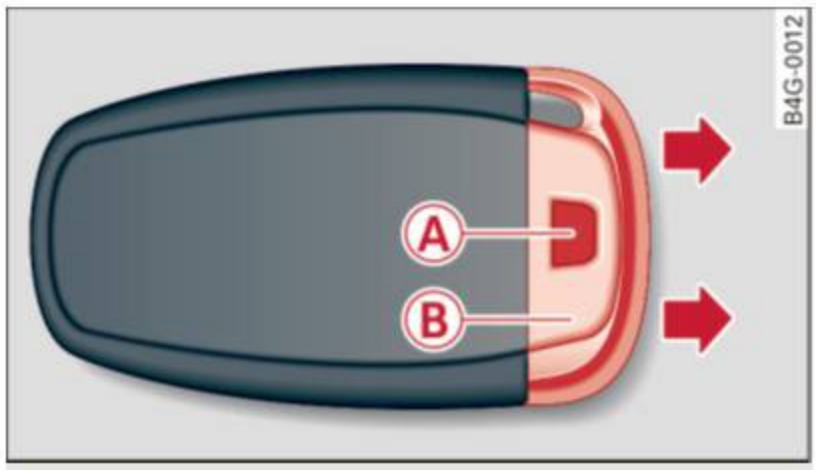


Fig. 28 Remote master key: Removing the mechanical key



Fig. 29 Remote master key: Removing the battery holder

We recommend having the battery changed by an authorized Audi dealer. However, if you wish to replace the dead battery yourself, proceed as follows:

- ▸ Press the release button Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 28*.
- ▸ Pull the mechanical key Ⓑ out of the master key.
- ▸ Press the release button Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 29* on the battery holder and at the same time pull the battery holder out of the master key in the direction of the arrow.
- ▸ Install the new battery CR 2032 with the "+" sign facing down.
- ▸ Push the battery holder carefully into the master key.
- ▸ Install the mechanical key.

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of dead batteries properly so as not to pollute the environment.

Tips

The replacement battery must be the same specification as the original.

Removing the mechanical key

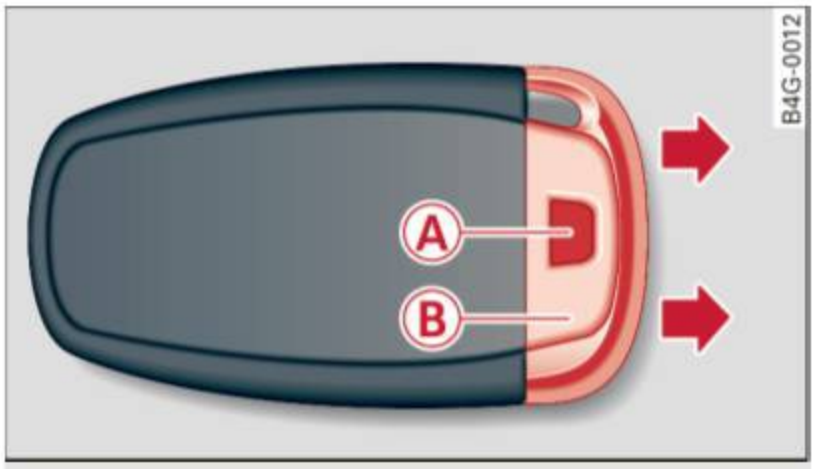


Fig. 30 Remote master key: Removing the mechanical key

- ▸ Press the release button Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 30*.
- ▸ Pull the mechanical key Ⓑ out of the master key.

Using the mechanical key, you can:

– lock and unlock the glove compartment ⇨ *page 80*.
– lock and unlock the vehicle manually ⇨ *page 43* if this should not be possible with the master key.

Emergency unlocking of the ignition key

In the event of malfunctions in the electrical system, it may happen that you cannot remove the ignition key.

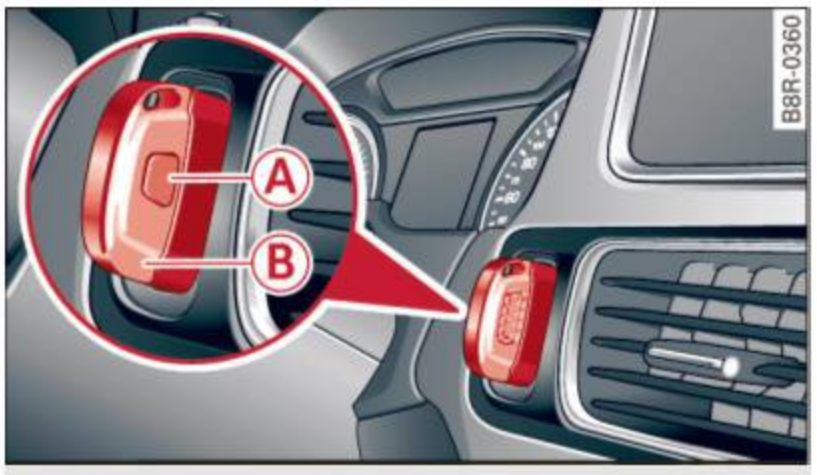


Fig. 31 Ignition switch with ignition key

If you are unable to remove the ignition key, for example because the vehicle battery is discharged, proceed as follows:

- ▸ Press the release button Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 31* and pull the mechanical key Ⓑ out of the master key.
- ▸ Lock the vehicle using the mechanical key ⇨ *page 43*.
- ▸ Have the electrical system inspected by an authorized Audi dealership.

Starting the vehicle with the emergency key

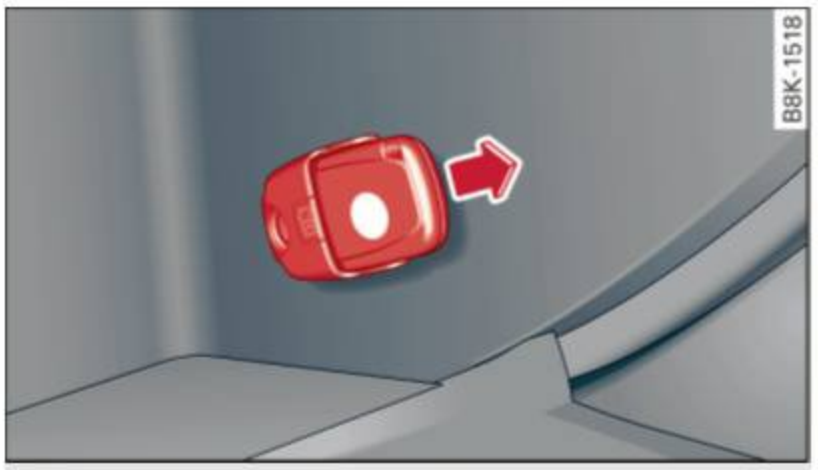


Fig. 32 Glove compartment: Adapter for emergency key

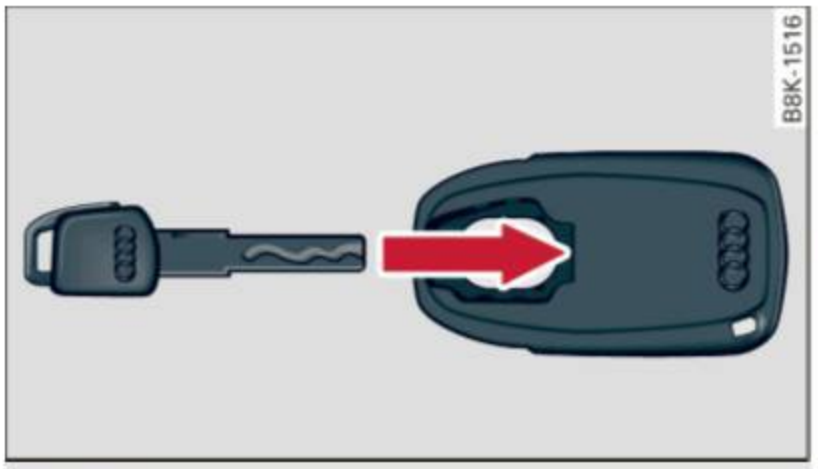


Fig. 33 Insert emergency key into the adapter

- ▸ Take the adapter for the emergency key out of the glove box ⇨ *fig. 32*.
- ▸ Push the emergency key ⇨ *fig. 33* fully into the adapter. Make sure that the Audi rings are facing up.
- ▸ Press the emergency key in the adapter down until it latches audibly.
- ▸ Insert the adapter with the emergency key forward into the ignition switch. The engine can now be started as usual.

Electronic immobilizer

The immobilizer helps to prevent unauthorized use of your vehicle.

Inside the key there is a computer chip. This chip automatically deactivates the electronic immobilizer when you insert the key in the ignition lock. When you remove the key from the ignition lock, the electronic immobilizer is automatically activated once again. ▸

Tips

- The vehicle cannot be started if an unauthorized key is used. The vehicle may not start if another radio device such as a key for another vehicle or a transponder is located on the key ring.
- For Declaration of Compliance to United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations ⇨ *page 294*.

Power locking system

General description

The power locking system locks or unlocks all doors and the rear lid simultaneously.

You can lock and unlock the vehicle centrally. You have the following choices:

- Remote master key ⇨ *page 41*
- Door handles with Convenience key* ⇨ *page 42*,
- Lock cylinder at the driver's door ⇨ *page 43*, or
- Power locking switch inside ⇨ *page 43*.

Selective unlocking

When they are closed, the door and rear lid are locked. When unlocking, you can set in the radio or in the MMI* whether *only* the driver's door or the entire vehicle should be unlocked ⇨ *page 41*.

Automatic locking

The automatic locking feature locks all the vehicle doors and the rear lid when you drive faster than 9 mph (15 km/h).

The car is unlocked again once the ignition key is removed. In addition, the vehicle can be unlocked if the opening function in the power locking system switch or at one of the door levers is actuated. The Auto locking function can be turned on and off in the radio or in the MMI* ⇨ *page 41*.

Additionally, in the event of a crash with airbag deployment the doors are automatically unlocked to allow access to the vehicle.

Anti-theft alarm warning system

If the anti-theft alarm warning system detects a break-in into the vehicle, acoustic and visual warning signals are triggered.

The anti-theft warning system is activated automatically when you lock the vehicle. It is deactivated when unlocking using the **remote key**, with the **mechanical key**, and when you switch on the ignition.

The alarm also turns off when the alarm cycle has expired.

Turn signals

When you unlock the vehicle, the turn signals flash twice. When you lock the vehicle, the turn signals flash once. If they do not flash, one of the doors, the rear lid or the hood is not locked.

Unintentionally locking yourself out

In the following cases there safeguards to prevent you locking your remote master key in the vehicle:

- If a door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked using the central locking system switch ⇨ *page 43*.
- On vehicles with Convenience key*, if the most recently used master key is in the luggage compartment, the rear lid is automatically unlocked again after it is closed ⇨ *page 44*.

Do not lock your vehicle with the **remote master key** until all doors and the rear lid are closed. In this way you avoid locking yourself out accidentally.

WARNING

- When you leave the vehicle, always remove the ignition key and take it with you. This will prevent passengers (children, for example) from accidentally being locked in the vehicle should they accidentally press the power locking switch in the front doors.
- Do not leave children inside the vehicle unsupervised. In an emergency it would ▶

be impossible to open the doors from the outside without the key.

Tips

- In the event of a crash with airbag deployment all locked doors will be automatically unlocked to give access to the vehicle occupants from the outside.
- If the power locking system should malfunction, you can lock the driver's door using the mechanical key ⇨ *page 44*.
- If the power locking system should fail, you can still open the fuel tank flap in an emergency ⇨ *page 231*.
- You are well advised not to keep valuables inside an unattended vehicle, visible or not. Even a properly locked vehicle cannot provide the security of a safe.
- If the LED in the upper edge of the driver's door panel comes on for about 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked, there is a malfunction in the power locking or the anti-theft warning system. Have the malfunction corrected by an authorized Audi dealership or qualified repair facility.

Setting power locking

The driver can determine the functions for power locking in the radio or in the MMI.*

In the **Central locking** menu you can decide which doors should be unlocked when opening the vehicle.

▸ Select: Function button CAR > **Central locking**.

For example, if you switch the item **Unlocking single door On**, the passenger's door and the rear doors are no longer included in the power locking system, and will not be unlocked by pressing the unlock button on the master key remote control.

You can continue to unlock all the doors and the rear lid as before. Press the opening button on the master key twice.

In addition to this, the **Auto locking** can be switched on and off.

When locking the vehicle, all doors and the trunk lid are locked automatically.

If you switch **Trunk lid/tailgate On**, then the handle on the rear lid ⇨ *page 44, fig. 40* is locked. In this case the rear lid can be opened with the button on the master key ⇨ *page 41, fig. 34* or with the unlocking button in the driver's door ⇨ *page 44, fig. 39*. If the vehicle has the Convenience key* feature, then the handle will continue to work even if an valid key is near the proximity sensor.

If you select **Fold mirrors* On**, the automatic outside mirror fold function is activated - the outside mirrors fold when the locking button on the remote master key is operated ⇨ *page 60*.

When you select **Confirmation tone On**, a confirmation tone sounds when you lock the vehicle.

Unlocking and locking the vehicle with the remote control

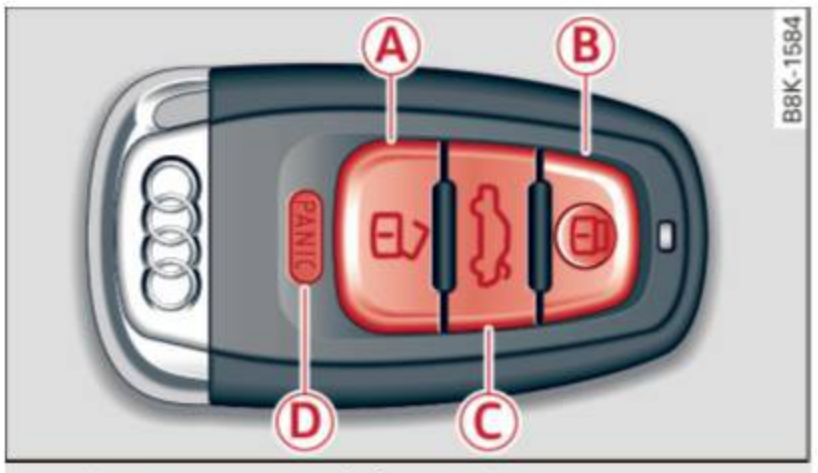


Fig. 34 Remote control: function buttons

Either the driver's door only or the entire vehicle will unlock when the unlock button (A) is pressed once, depending on the settings in the radio or MMI* **Central locking** menu ⇨ *page 41*.

▸ Press button (A) to unlock the vehicle ⇨ *fig. 34*.

▸ Press button (B) to lock the vehicle ⇨ ⚠ *in General description on page 40*. ▶

- ▸ Press the button (Ⓒ) for at least one second to open the rear lid.
- ▸ Push the red PANIC button (Ⓓ) to activate the panic function. The horn sounds and the turn signals flash. Push the red PANIC button again to deactivate the panic function.

If the vehicle is unlocked and no door, the rear lid or the hood is opened within 60 seconds, the vehicle locks itself again automatically. This feature prevents the vehicle from being accidentally left unlocked over a long period of time.

It depends on the settings in the radio or in the MMI* whether the entire vehicle is unlocked or only certain doors ⇨ *page 41*.

On vehicles with Convenience key*, the selector lever must be in the P position, otherwise the vehicle cannot be locked.

WARNING

Read and follow all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in General description on page 40*.

Tips

- – In order to make sure the locking function is working, you should always keep your eye on the vehicle to make sure it is properly locked.
- – Do not use the remote control if you are inside the car, otherwise you may unintentionally lock the vehicle, and then you would set off the anti-theft alarm when you try to start the engine or open a door. In case this happens anyhow, push the unlock button.
- – Use the panic function only if you are in an emergency situation.

Locking and unlocking with Convenience key

Applies to vehicles: with Convenience key

The doors and the rear lid can be unlocked and locked without operating the master key.

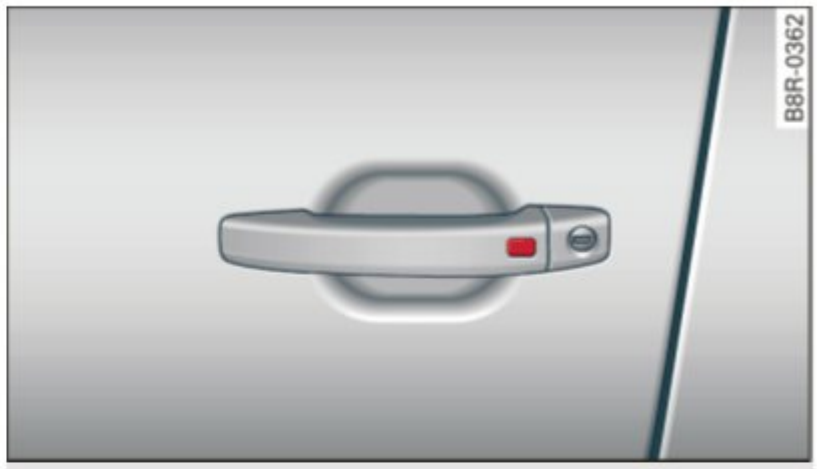


Fig. 35 Door handle: Locking the vehicle

Unlocking vehicle

- ▸ Take hold of the door handle. The door is unlocked automatically.
- ▸ Pull the handle to open the door.

Locking vehicle

- ▸ Move the selector lever to the P position (automatic transmission), otherwise the vehicle cannot be locked.
- ▸ Touch the sensor at the door handle ⇨ *fig. 35* to lock the vehicle ⇨ ⚠ *in General description on page 40*.

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked at any door. It depends on the settings in the radio or in the MMI* whether the entire vehicle is unlocked or one of the doors ⇨ *page 41*. The master key must be within a range of about 5 feet (1.5 meters) from the appropriate door or the rear lid. It makes no difference whether the master key is in your jacket pocket or in your brief case.

If you grip the door handle while locking, this can adversely affect the locking function.

It is not possible to re-open the door for a brief period directly after closing it. This allows you to ensure that the doors are properly locked. ▶

WARNING

Read and follow all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in General description on page 40*.

Tips

If your vehicle has been standing for an extended period, please note the following:

– The proximity sensors are deactivated after a few days to save power. You then have to pull on the door handle once to unlock the vehicle and a second time to open the vehicle.
– To prevent the battery from being discharged and to preserve your vehicle's ability to start for as long as possible, the energy management system gradually switches off unnecessary convenience functions. It is possible that you will not be able to unlock your vehicle using these convenience functions.
– For Declaration of Compliance to United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations ⇨ *page 294*.

Operating locks with the mechanical key

In the event of a failure of the power locking system, the driver's door can locked and unlocked with the mechanical key at the lock cylinder.



Fig. 36 Key turns for opening and closing

To unlock the vehicle

- ▸ Insert the mechanical key into the lock of the driver's door.
- ▸ Turn the mechanical key to position Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 36*.

To lock the vehicle

- ▸ Move the selector lever to the P position (automatic transmission).
- ▸ Close all windows and doors properly.
- ▸ Turn the mechanical key in the lock of the driver's door to the lock position Ⓑ ⇨ ⚠ *in General description on page 40*.

If the power locking system fails, there is emergency locking for the passenger's door and the rear doors ⇨ *page 44*.

WARNING

Read and follow all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in General description on page 40*.

Tips

– After the ignition is switched on, the power locking system switch and the unlocking button for the rear lid in the door are enabled.

Locking and unlocking the vehicle from inside



Fig. 37 Driver's door: power locking switch

- ▸ Press the button to unlock the vehicle ⇨ *fig. 37*.
- ▸ Press the button to lock the vehicle ⇨ ⚠.

You will find a power locking switch in each door. You can **lock** and **unlock** the vehicle using the switches in the driver's or passenger's door ⇨ *fig. 37*. You can only **lock** the vehicle using the switches in the rear doors. If you lock the vehicle using the **power locking switch**, please note the following: ▸

– You cannot open the doors or the rear lid from the *outside* (increased security, for example when you are stopped at a red light).
– The diodes in the power locking switch illuminate when all the doors are closed and locked.
– You can unlock and open the doors from the inside by pulling on the door handle.
– If you have a crash and the airbag is activated, the doors automatically unlock.

WARNING

– The power locking switch works with the ignition off and automatically locks the entire vehicle when it is actuated.
– On a vehicle locked from the outside the power locking system switch is inoperative.
– Locking doors from the inside can help prevent inadvertent door opening during an accident and can also prevent unwanted entry from the outside. Locked doors can, however, delay assistance to vehicle occupants and hold up rescue efforts from the outside in an accident or other emergency.

Tips

Your vehicle is locked automatically at a speed of 9 mph (15 km/h) (Auto locking) ⇨ *page 40*. You can unlock the vehicle again using the opening function in the power locking system switch.

Emergency locking of the doors

Each door must be locked separately if the power locking system fails.

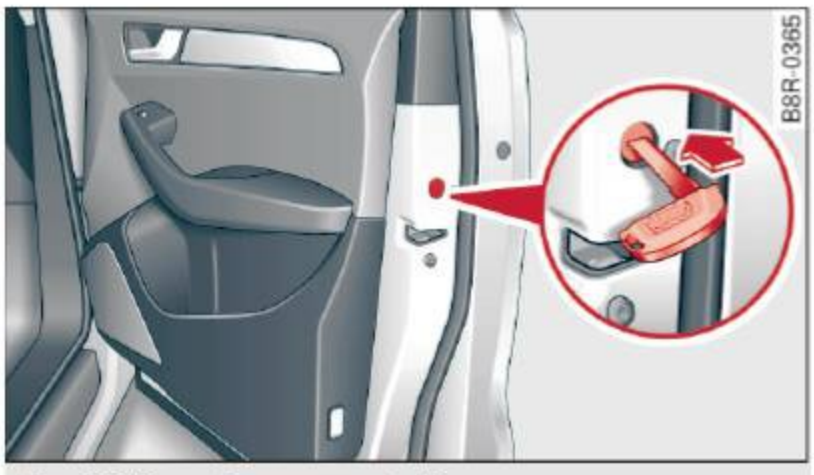


Fig. 38 Door: Emergency locking

An emergency lock is located on the front end of the passenger's door and the rear doors (only visible when door is open).

▸ Take the mechanical key out of the master key ⇨ *page 39*.
▸ Pull the cover cap out of the opening ⇨ *fig. 38*.
▸ Insert the key in the inside slot and turn it all the way to the right (right door) or left (left door).

Once the door has been closed, it can no longer be opened from the outside. The door can be opened from the inside by pulling the door handle. If the child safety lock in a rear door is activated, you must first pull the door handle on the inside. Then you can open the door from the outside.

Opening and closing rear lid



Fig. 39 Driver's door: remote rear lid release



Fig. 40 Position of handle in the rear lid

Opening the luggage compartment lid

▸ Press the button on the master key for at least one second, or
▸ Pull the release button in the driver's door ⇨ *fig. 39*, or ▶

- ▸ Press the handle in the luggage compartment lid ⇨ *fig. 40*.
- ▸ The luggage compartment lid unlocks.

Closing the luggage compartment lid

- ▸ Use the inside grip to pull the rear lid down and allow it to drop gently to close it ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

- – After closing the rear lid, always pull up on it to make sure that it is properly closed. Otherwise it could open suddenly when the vehicle is moving.
- – To help prevent poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle, always keep the rear lid closed while driving. Never transport objects larger than those which fit completely into the luggage area, because then the rear lid cannot be fully closed.
- – Never leave your vehicle unattended especially with the rear lid left open. A child could crawl into the car through the luggage compartment and pull the lid shut, becoming trapped and unable to get out. To reduce the risk of personal injury, never let children play in or around your vehicle. Always keep the rear lid as well as the vehicle doors closed when not in use.
- – Always ensure that no one is within range of the rear lid when it is moving, in particular close to the hinges - fingers or hands can be pinched.

Tips

When the vehicle is locked, the luggage compartment lid can be unlocked separately by pressing the button on the master key. When the luggage compartment lid is closed again, it locks automatically.

Automatic rear lid/ trunk lid operation

Applies to vehicles: with automatic rear lid/trunk lid operation

The trunk lid can be opened and closed automatically.



Fig. 41 Driver's door: Unlocking the rear lid



Fig. 42 Locking switch in the rear lid

Opening the luggage compartment lid

- ▸ Press the button on the master key for at least one second, or
- ▸ Pull the release button in the driver's door ⇨ *fig. 41*, or
- ▸ Press the handle in the luggage compartment lid ⇨ *page 44, fig. 40*.

Closing the luggage compartment lid

- ▸ Press the button in the luggage compartment lid ⇨ *fig. 42*. The lid will automatically close and lock ⇨ ⚠.

Setting the luggage compartment lid open position

- ▸ Bring the luggage compartment lid into the desired open position. The position can be stored at only one specific height.
- ▸ Press and hold the ⇨ *fig. 42* button for at least four seconds until the lights blink to store the desired open position. ▶

▸ Push the luggage compartment lid by hand against the resistance if you want to set a higher open position.
▸ Press and hold the ⇨ *fig. 42* button again for at least four seconds and this will store the new open position.

Opening will be stopped immediately when:

– You press the button on the remote key for at least of one second, or
– press the unlock button in the driver door, or
– press the lock button the in the luggage compartment lid, or
– push the handle in the luggage compartment lid, or
– when something blocks the rear lid or makes it difficult for the lid to move.

By pressing one of the button repeatedly, you can stop or continue the opening process. The pressing the lock button or the handle repeatedly, you can open/stop the lid ⇨ ⚠.

Opening will be stopped immediately when:

– press the lock button the in the luggage compartment lid, or
– push the handle in the luggage compartment lid, or
– when something blocks the rear lid or makes it difficult for the lid to move.

The pressing the lock button or the handle repeatedly, you can open/stop the lid ⇨ ⚠.

You can manually stop the automatic opening/closing of the luggage compartment lid. In this situation, the lid can be manually opened. Press down on the lid and the automatic closing will resume once again.

WARNING

– Never close the rear lid inattentively or without checking first. Although the closing force of the rear lid is limited, you can still seriously injure yourself or others.
– Always ensure that no one is within range of the rear lid when it is moving, in particular close to the hinges and the upper and lower edges - fingers or hands can be pinched.
– To help prevent poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle, always keep the rear lid closed while driving. Never transport objects larger than those which fit completely into the luggage area, because then the rear lid cannot be fully closed.
– Never leave your vehicle unattended especially with the rear lid left open. A child could crawl into the car through the luggage compartment and pull the lid shut, becoming trapped and unable to get out. To reduce the risk of personal injury, never let children play in or around your vehicle. Always keep the rear lid as well as the vehicle doors closed when not in use.
– If there is a luggage rack or bicycle rack mounted on the rear lid, it may not be able to open completely or an opened rear lid may close by itself because of the added weight. So the open rear lid must be supported or the weight must be removed from the luggage rack first.

Tips

– As soon as the electrical connection to the trailer socket is completed on vehicles with a factory installed towing hitch, or a trailer hitch that was installed later according to factory specifications, the automatic rear lid function can only be operated via the handle in the rear lid.
– If the vehicle battery charge drops below a certain level, you can still open or close the rear lid manually, however, you will need to apply more force to close it.
– If the rear lid on a locked vehicle is unlocked with the middle button on the remote key, the rear lid is automatically locked again immediately after closing. This is indicated by the turn signals blinking.

▶

– The following applies to vehicles equipped with the Convenience key* feature: if the remote control key is left in the luggage compartment, luggage compartment will automatically unlock itself after you lock the vehicle. This prevents you from unintentionally locking your key in the luggage compartment.

Emergency unlocking of the luggage compartment lid

The luggage compartment lid can be released in an emergency from the inside.

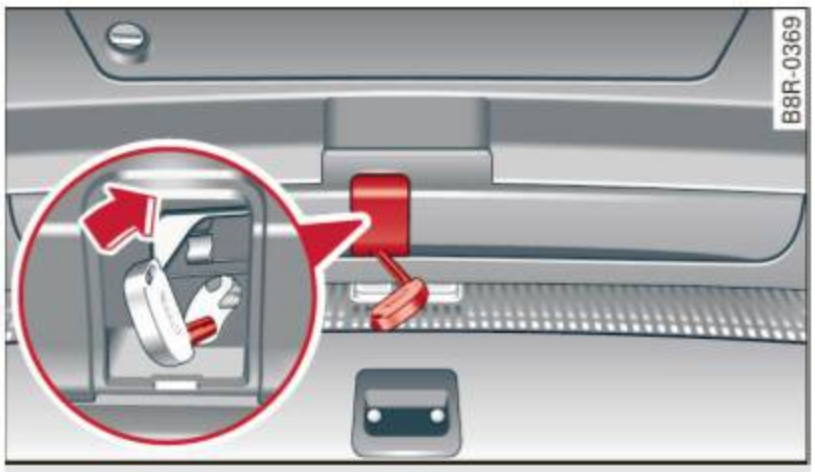


Fig. 43 Luggage compartment lid interior

The luggage compartment lid can be released in an emergency from inside the luggage compartment.

- ▸ Remove the cover from the luggage compartment lid.
- ▸ Press the lever in the direction of the arrow until the luggage compartment lid releases.

Child safety locks

Child safety locks in the rear doors

The child safety locks prevent the rear doors from opening from the inside.



Fig. 44 Child safety locks on the rear doors

The rear doors are equipped with child safety locks. The lock is only visible when the door is open. Take the mechanical key out of the master key ⇨ *page 39*.

Switching the child safety locks on

- ▸ Turn the key in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 44*.

Switching the child safety locks off

- ▸ Turn the key in the opposite direction of the arrow .

When the child safety locks are activated, the inside door handles do not work and the doors can only be opened from the outside.

Power windows

Controls

The driver can control all power windows.

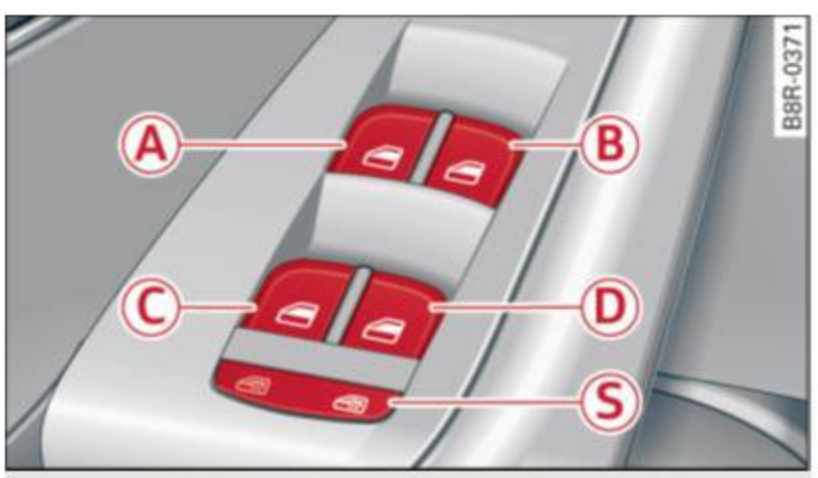


Fig. 45 Section of the driver's door: Controls ▸

All power window switches are provided with a **two-position function**:

Opening the windows

- ▸ Press the switch to the **first stop** and hold it until the window reaches the desired position.
- ▸ Press the switch briefly to the **second stop** to automatically open the window.

Closing the windows

- ▸ Pull the switch to the **first stop** and hold it until the window reaches the desired position.
- ▸ Pull the switch briefly to the **second stop** to automatically close the window.

Power window switches

Ⓐ Driver's door
Ⓑ Passenger's door
Ⓒ Left rear door
Ⓓ Right rear door
Ⓢ Safety button

Child safety locks

When the safety button Ⓢ ⇨ *fig. 45* is pressed, the symbol in the button lights up. The power window switches in the rear doors are switched off.

WARNING

- When you leave your vehicle - even if only briefly - always remove the ignition key. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise the children could start the engine or operate electrical equipment (e.g. power windows). The power windows are functional until the driver's door or passenger's door has been opened.
- Pay close attention when closing the windows to prevent pinching of hands or limbs.
- When locking the vehicle from outside, the vehicle must be unoccupied since the windows can no longer be opened in an emergency.

Tips

After the ignition has been switched off, the windows can still be opened or closed for about 10 minutes. The power windows are not switched off until the driver's door or passenger's door has been opened.

Convenience opening/closing

The windows and the Panoramic sliding sunroof can be opened and closed with the mechanical key or the emergency key.*

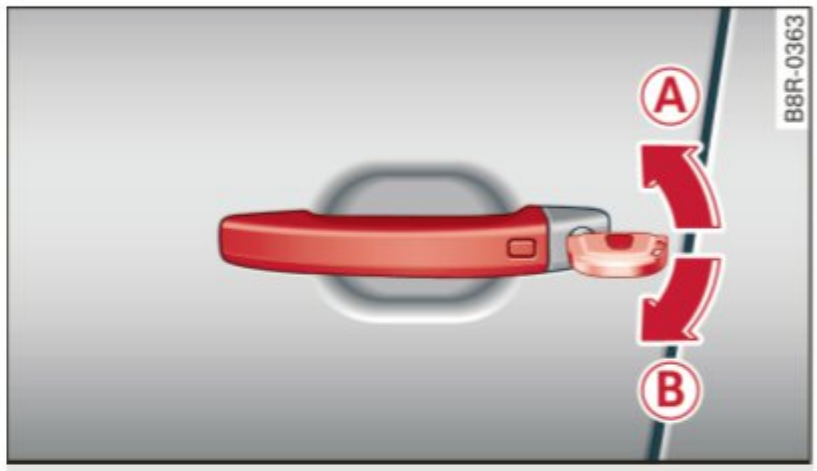


Fig. 46 Key turns for opening and closing

Convenience opening feature

- ▸ Use the emergency key or pull the mechanical key out of the master key ⇨ *page 39*.
- ▸ Insert the key into the lock of the driver's door.
- ▸ Turn the key to position ⇨ *fig. 46* Ⓐ until all the windows have reached the desired position and the Panoramic sliding sunroof* is tilted.

Convenience closing feature

- ▸ Use the emergency key or pull the mechanical key out of the master key ⇨ *page 39*.
- ▸ Turn the key in the lock of the driver's door to the lock position Ⓑ until the windows and the Panoramic sliding sunroof* are closed ⇨ ⚠.

When you open or close the Panoramic sliding sunroof*, the power sunshade will also open or close. ▶

WARNING

- Never close the windows and the Panoramic sliding sunroof* inattentively and without checking - there is risk of injury.
- You must always watch when the windows are being raised so that no one can be trapped. If you release the key, the closing action is immediately canceled.
- Always read and heed WARNING ⇨ ⚠ *in General description on page 40*.

Correcting window regulator malfunction

After disconnecting the vehicle battery, the one-touch up and down feature must be activated again.

- ▸ Pull and hold the power window switch until the window is completely closed.
- ▸ Release the switch.
- ▸ Pull the switch again for one second. The automatic closing/opening is now reactivated.

Panoramic sliding sunroof

Operation

Applies to vehicles: with Panoramic sliding sunroof



Fig. 47 Section from headliner: Knob for Panoramic sliding sunroof

Tilting

- ▸ The sunroof can be tilted or closed only in switch position ⓪ ⇨ *fig. 47*
- ▸ To tilt it, briefly press the switch ⇨ *fig. 47*.
- ▸ To close it, briefly pull the switch ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ To set an intermediate position, press/pull the switch until the sunroof reaches the desired position.

Opening

- ▸ To move the sunroof to the position for reduced wind noise, turn the switch to position ① until resistance can be felt.
- ▸ To open the sunroof completely, turn and hold the switch against the resistance in position ②.
- ▸ To close the sunroof, turn the switch to position ⓪ ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Turn the switch to the desired position to select an intermediate position.

Opening and closing the sunshade

- ▸ To automatically open the sunshade completely, briefly press the switch ③ in the desired arrow direction.
- ▸ To stop the sunshade in an intermediate position, press the switch again, or
- ▸ Press and hold the switch in the desired arrow direction.
- ▸ Release the switch when sunshade is at desired position.

After the ignition is switched off, you can still operate the Panoramic sliding sunroof for about 10 minutes. As soon as the driver's or passenger's door is opened, the switch is inoperative.

The power sunshade can also be closed when the Panoramic sliding sunroof is open.

WARNING

Pay careful attention when closing the Panoramic sliding sunroof - otherwise serious injury could result! For this reason, always remove the ignition key when leaving the vehicle.

Note

Always close your Panoramic sliding sunroof when leaving your vehicle. Sudden rain can cause damage to the interior equipment of your vehicle, particularly the electronic equipment. ▸

Tips

Information regarding convenience opening/closing ⇨ *page 48*.

Emergency closing of the Panoramic sliding sunroof

Applies to vehicles: with Panoramic sliding sunroof

If the Panoramic sliding sunroof detects an object in its path when it is closing, it will open again automatically. In this case, you can close the roof with the power emergency closing function.

- Within five seconds after the sunroof opens automatically, pull the switch until the roof closes.

Clear vision

Lights

Switching the lights on and off



Fig. 48 Instrument panel: light switch

Switching on AUTO - Automatic headlight controls

▸ Turn the light switch to **AUTO** ⇨ *fig. 48*.

Switching on the side marker lights

▸ Turn the light switch to ≡D.

Switching on low beams

▸ Turn the light switch to ≡D.

Switching off the lights

▸ Turn the light switch to **O**.

The low beams only illuminate with the ignition turned on.

With the side marker lights or headlights switched on, the symbol next to the light switch illuminates ≡D.

AUTO - Automatic headlight control

With the switch in the **AUTO** position, the low beams are switched on automatically depending on the ambient light, for example in a tunnel, at dusk and when it is raining or snowing. When the low beams are switched on, the ≡D symbol comes on. The low beams remain switched on regardless of the ambient light when you turn on the fog lights.

When you turn off the ignition, the low beams are automatically switched off.

With automatic headlight control, you also have the high-beam function available. However, if you have not switched high beams back to low beams while driving with automatic headlight control, only the low beams come on the next time you turn on automatic headlight control. In order to return to high beams again, you first have to pull the high beam lever back to the normal position and then push the lever forward.

Light sensor malfunction

In the event of a light sensor malfunction, the driver is notified in the instrument cluster display:

Automatic headlights / automatic wipers defective

For safety reasons, the low beams are turned on permanently with the switch in **AUTO**. However, you can continue to turn the lights on and off using the light switch. Have the light sensor checked as soon as possible at an authorized Audi dealer or other qualified workshop.

WARNING

– Automatic headlights are only intended to assist the driver. They do not relieve the driver of his responsibility to check the headlights and to turn them on manually according to the current light and visibility conditions. For example, fog cannot be detected by the light sensors. So always switch on the headlights under these weather conditions and when driving in the dark ≡D.
– Crashes can happen when you cannot see the road ahead and when you cannot be seen by other motorists.
  – Always turn on the headlights so that you can see ahead and so that others can see your car from the back.

Tips

– The light sensor for headlight control is located in the rear view mirror mount. You should therefore not apply any stickers to the windshield in this area in order to prevent malfunctions or failures. ▸

– The sensitivity level for the light sensor set at the factory can be changed in the radio or in the MMI* ⇨ *page 52*.
– When you remove your key from the ignition while the vehicle's lights are turned on, a buzzer sounds as long as the driver's door is open.
– Please obey all laws when using the lighting systems described here.
– The coming home/leaving home function is available only with the switch in the AUTO position.

Fog lights

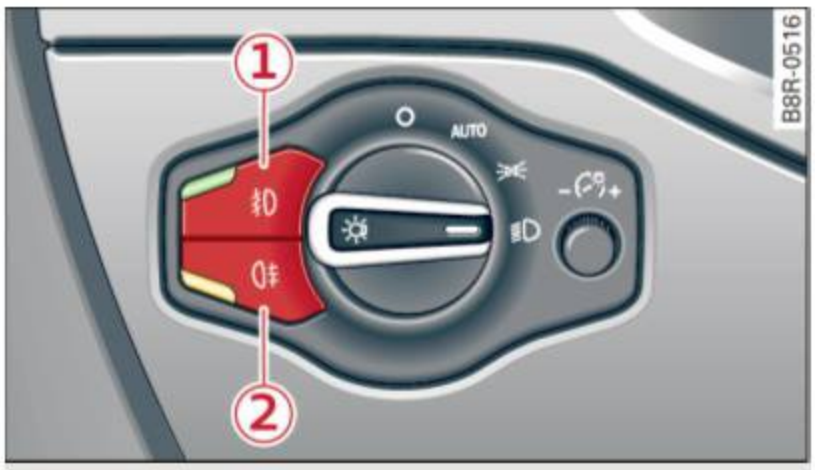


Fig. 49 Fog light switch

► To turn on the fog lights, press button ① ⇨ *fig. 49*.
► To turn on the rear fog lights, press button ②.

Fog lights

The side marker lights or low beams must be switched on. When the fog lights are switched on, the green check light at the edge of the switch comes on.

If automatic driving light control AUTO is activated, the low beams are switched on when the fog lights are turned on.

Rear fog lights

Low beams or side marker lights with fog lights must be turned on.

When the rear fog lights are turned on, the yellow check light at the edge of the switch comes on.

Note

The rear fog lights should only be turned on in accordance with traffic regulation, as the lights are bright for following traffic.

Adjusting exterior lighting

The functions are selected in the radio or in the MMI.*

► Select: Function button CAR > **Exterior lighting**.

Coming home

The **Coming home** function ensures that after **turning off the ignition and opening the driver's door** the vehicle periphery is illuminated in the dark. In addition, the front fog lights, the tail lights and the license plate light are turned on. On-time can be set for a period from 0 (off) to 60 seconds.

Leaving home

The **Leaving home** function ensures that **when unlocking** the vehicle periphery is illuminated in the dark. In addition, the front fog lights, the tail lights and the license plate light are turned on. This function can be turned on and off.

Auto headlights

When the light switch is in the AUTO ⇨ *page 51* position, the switch-on point of the lights can be changed in the automatic driving light function.

Daytime running lights*

The daytime running lights can be turned on or off using this function. If the function is active, the daytime running lights are turned on automatically when the ignition is switched on.

Tips

The Coming home/Leaving home function is available only with the switch in the AUTO position.

Daytime running lights

When you turn on the ignition the daytime running lights will come on automatically.

USA models

The daytime running lights are activated when the light switch ⇨ *page 51, fig. 48* is in the **O** position or the **AUTO** position (only in daylight conditions). The daytime running lights function can be turned on and off in the radio or MMI* menu **Exterior lighting** ⇨ *page 52*.

Canada models

The daytime running lights are activated when the light switch ⇨ *page 51, fig. 48* is in the **O** position, position or the **AUTO** position (only in daylight conditions). The daytime running lights function cannot be turned off.

WARNING

Never use daytime running lights to see where you are going. They are not bright enough and will not let you see far enough ahead for safety, especially at dusk or when it is dark. Be aware of changes in outside light conditions when you are driving and respond by switching on your low beams.

Note

Always be aware of changes in outside light conditions while you are driving. Respond in time to fading daylight by turning the light switch to position (or "AUTO") **to turn on your headlights.**

Instrument lighting

The basic brightness of the illumination for the instruments, the center console and the display can be adjusted.



Fig. 50 Instrument lighting

- Press the knob to release it.
- Rotating the knob to the right "+" will increase the basic brightness when it is dark.
- Rotating the knob to the left "-" will decrease the basic brightness when it is dark.
- Pressing the knob will prevent unintentional changes.

Tips

The illumination for the instrument cluster lights up whenever you switch on the ignition with the vehicle headlights off. As the daylight fades, the instrument cluster illumination likewise dims automatically and will go out completely when the outside light is very low. This feature is meant to remind you to switch on the headlights when outside light conditions become poor.

Adaptive light

Applies to vehicles: with adaptive light

When driving around bends, the relevant area of the road is better illuminated.

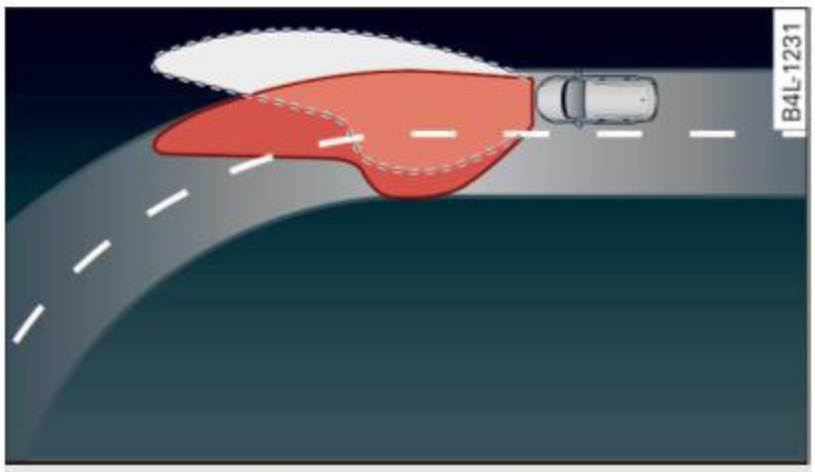


Fig. 51 Adaptive light when driving

The benefit of adaptive light is that the curve and the edge of the road are better illuminated ⇨ *fig. 51*. Dynamic adaptive light is controlled automatically, depending on vehicle speed and steering wheel angle.

When driving around bends, the headlights are controlled according to steering wheel angle. So that there is no black hole ahead of the vehicle, the two main beams pivot at different angles.

Tips

The system works above a speed of about 6 mph (10 km/h).

Emergency flashers

The emergency flashers makes other motorists aware that you or your vehicle are in an emergency situation.



Fig. 52 Emergency flasher switch

▸ Press the switch ⚠ ⇨ *fig. 52* to turn the emergency flashers on or off.

When the emergency flashers are on, all four turn signals blink at the same time. The turn signal indicator lights ⇦ ⇨ in the instrument cluster, as well as the light in the emergency flasher switch ⚠ blink likewise. The emergency flashers also work when the ignition is turned off.

The emergency flashers will turn on automatically if you are in an accident where the airbag has deployed.

Tips

You should turn on the emergency flashers when:

– you are the last vehicle standing in a traffic jam so that any other vehicles coming can see you, or when
– your vehicle has broken down or you are in an emergency situation, or when
– your vehicle is being towed by a tow truck or if you are towing another vehicle behind you.

Turn signal and high beam lever

The lever on the left side of the steering column is used to operate the turn signals and the high beam as well as the headlight flasher.

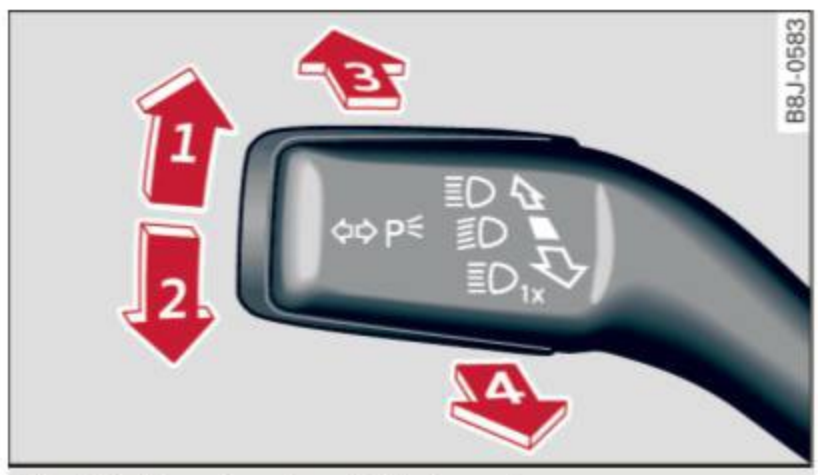


Fig. 53 Turn signal and high beam lever

The turn signal and high beam lever has the following functions:

Turn signals ⇦ ⇨

▸ Lift the lever up all the way ⇨ *fig. 53* ① to use the right turn signals, or push the lever down all the way ② to use the left turn signals.

Auto-blink

- ▸ Move the lever (up or down) just to the point of resistance to use the turn signals for as long as you need them, for example when changing lanes.
- ▸ Move the lever (up or down) just to the point of resistance and then release it right away to make the turn signals blink *three times*. You can use this feature for example when changing lanes on highways.

High beam

- ▸ Push the lever forward (3) to switch on the high beam.
- ▸ Pull the lever back towards you to switch off the high beam.

Headlight flasher

- ▸ Pull the lever toward the steering wheel (4) to use the headlight flasher.

Notes on these features

– The *turn signals* only work with the ignition turned on. The indicator lights or in the instrument cluster ⇨ *page 14* also blink.
– After you have turned a corner, the turn signal switches off automatically.
– The *high beam* works only when the headlights are on. The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates when the high beams are on.
– The *headlight flasher* works only as long as you hold the lever - even if there are no lights turned on. The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates when you use the headlight flasher.

Note

Do not use the high beam or headlight flasher if you know that these could blind oncoming traffic.

Interior lights

Front interior lights

The front interior lights also contain reading lights for the driver and passenger.



Fig. 54 Headliner: Front interior/reading lights

The rocker switch (A) ⇨ *fig. 54* for operating the interior lighting has the following functions:

Door contact switch

- ▸ Place the switch (A) in the middle position.

Interior light switched on

- ▸ Place the switch (A) in position I.

Interior light switched off

- ▸ Place the switch (A) in position 0.

Front reading lights

- ▸ Press one of the switches (B) to turn the right or left reading light on or off.

With the door contact switch turned on, the interior lights turn on as soon as you unlock the vehicle or open the doors. The lighting is also turned on when the ignition key is removed. The lights go out about 30 seconds after the doors are closed. When the vehicle is locked or when the ignition is turned on, the interior lights are turned off.

When a door is open, the interior lights are turned off after about 10 minutes to prevent draining of the battery.

The brightness of the lights is controlled automatically by a dimmer when they are switched on and off.

Rear interior lights

There are reading lights in the rear for the passengers.

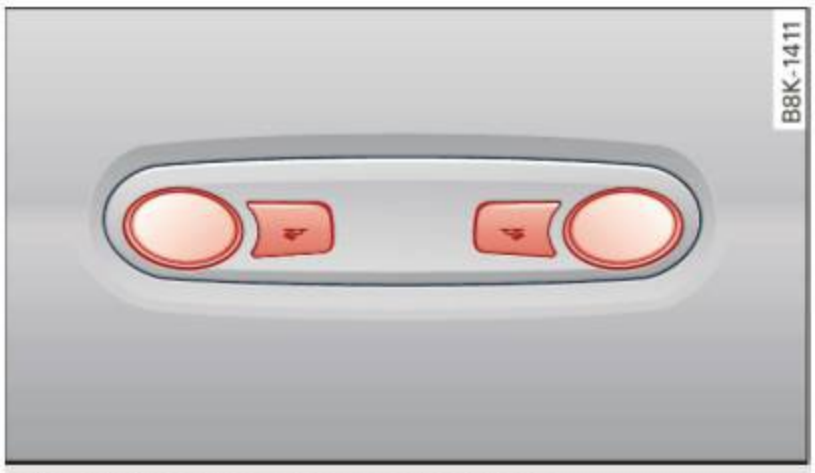


Fig. 55 Headliner: Rear reading lights

The reading lights are switched on and off using the buttons ☜.

Depending on your model, the appearance and the location of the reading lights may be different.

Vision

Sun visors

Using the sun visors makes driving safer.

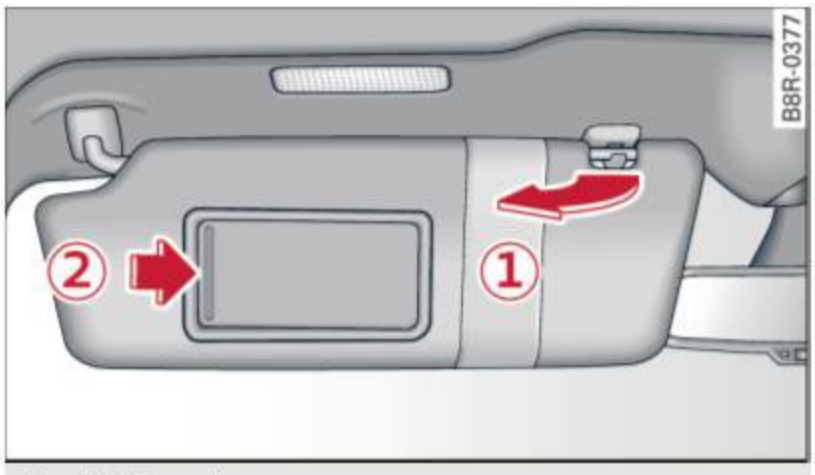


Fig. 56 Sun visor

The sun visors for the driver and passenger can be pulled out of their brackets in the center of the vehicle and turned towards the doors ⇨ *fig. 56* ①. After the sun visor has been turned to the door, it can be extended* lengthwise.

Vanity mirror

The vanity mirrors on the sun visors are covered. When the lid is opened ②, the mirror light in the headliner turns on automatically. It turns off when the lid is closed and the visor is folded up again.

Wiper and washer system

Switching the windshield wipers on

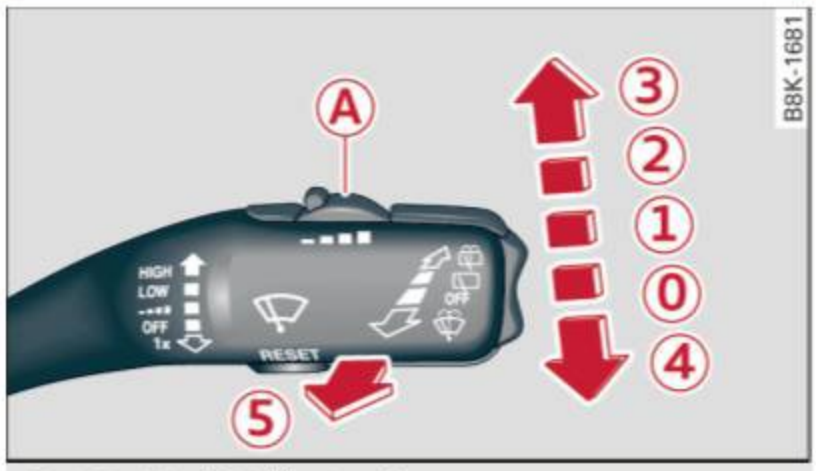


Fig. 57 Windshield wiper lever

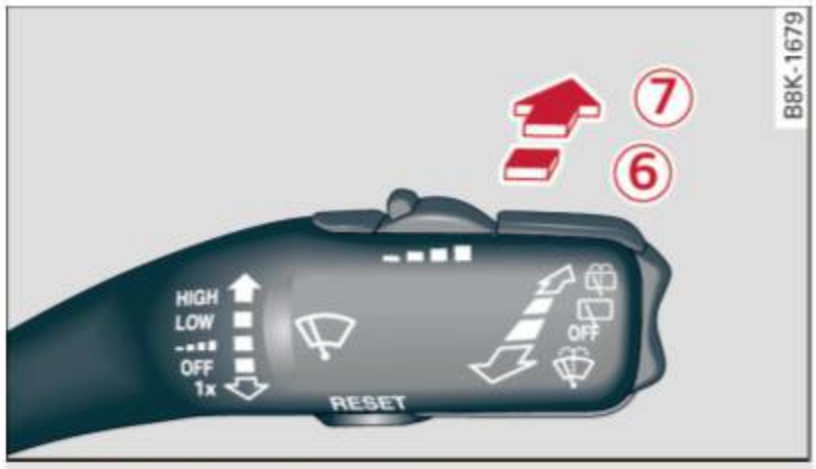


Fig. 58 Rear wiper actuation

Move the windshield wiper lever to the corresponding position:

⓪ - Windshield wiper off

① - Interval mode. The windshield wiper automatically activates when you drive 2 mph (4 km/h). The higher the sensitivity of the rain sensor is set to be (switch Ⓐ to the top), the earlier the windshield wipers react to moisture on the windshield.

② - Slow wiping

③ - Fast wiping

④ - Single wipe

⑤ - Clean the windshield. To eliminate water droplets, the windshield wiper performs one afterwipe operation after several seconds while driving. You can switch this function off by moving the lever to position ⑤ within 10 seconds of the afterwipe operation. The ▶

afterwipe function is reactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

The rear wiper automatically switches on when the reverse gear is engaged and the front windshield wipers are on and in operation.

Cleaning the headlights*. The headlight washer system* only functions when the light is switched on. The headlights are automatically cleaned the first time and every fifth time the lever is moved to position (5). They are also cleaned every time you hold the lever in position (5) for longer than 2 seconds.

(6) - Wipe the rear window. The rear wiper moves about every 4 seconds.

(7) - Clean the rear window. The number of wiping operations depends on how long the lever is held in position 7.

WARNING

- The rain sensor is only intended to assist the driver. The driver is still responsible for manually switching the wipers on according to the visibility conditions.
- The windshield may not be treated with water-repelling windshield coating agents. Unfavorable conditions, such as wetness, darkness, low sun, can result in increased glare. Wiper blade chatter is also possible.
- Properly functioning windshield wiper blades are required for a clear view and safe driving.

Note

- In the case of frost, check whether the windshield wiper blades are frozen to the windshield. Switching on the windshield wipers can damage the wiper blades!
- Prior to using a car wash, the windshield wiper system must be switched off (lever in position 0). This helps to prevent unintentional switching on and damage to the windshield wiper system.

Tips

- The windshield wipers are switched off when the ignition is turned off. Activate the windshield wipers after the ignition is switched back on by moving the windshield wiper lever to any position.
- Worn or dirty windshield wiper blades result in streaking. This can affect the rain sensor function. Check your windshield wiper blades regularly.
- The washer fluid nozzles of the windshield washer system are heated at low temperatures when the ignition is on.
- When stopping temporarily, e.g. at a traffic light, the set speed of the windshield wipers is automatically reduced by one speed.

Service position

The windshield wiper blades are replaced in the service position.

▸ If the wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield, bring the windshield wiper lever to the basic position (0) ⇨ *page 56, fig. 57*.
▸ Select: Function button CAR > **Windshield wipers** > **Service position**.

- **On** - changing the windshield wiper blades can only be done if you bring the wiper arms to the service position. You will also avoid paint damage to the hood when working on the wipers in this position.
- **Off** - the windshield wipers are moved to their initial position again.

Note

Never maneuver your vehicle with the front windshield wiper arms raised since they will automatically be moved back to their basic position above a speed of 3 mph (6 km/h) and can scratch the hood.

Tips

- You can also use the service position, for example, if you want to protect the windshield from icing by using a cover. ▶

– The service position automatically switches to **Off** when you operate the windshield wiper lever, or speed exceeds 3 mph (6 km/h).

Replacing windshield wiper blades

Wiper blades in good condition help keep the windshield clear.

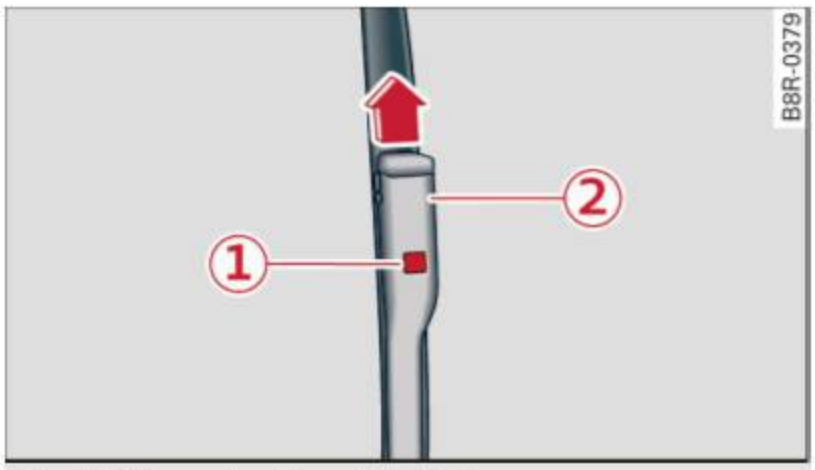


Fig. 59 Removing the wiper blade

Removing the wiper blade

- ▸ Bring the windshield wipers to the service position ⇨ *page 57*.
- ▸ Fold the windshield wiper arm away from the windshield.
- ▸ Press the locking knob ① ⇨ *fig. 59* on the wiper blade. Hold the wiper blade firmly.
- ▸ Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow.

Attaching the wiper blade

- ▸ Insert the new wiper blade into the mount on the wiper arm ② until you hear it latch into place.
- ▸ Place the wiper arm back on the windshield.

WARNING

– Clean your wiper blades regularly with a windshield washer solution to prevent streaking. If the wiper blades are very dirty, for example with insects, carefully clean the wiper blades with a sponge or a soft brush.
– For your safety, you should replace the wiper blades once or twice a year. See your authorized Audi dealer for replacement blades.

Note

– The windshield wiper blades must only be replaced when in the service position ⇨ *page 57*! Otherwise, you risk damaging the paint on the hood or the windshield wiper motor.
– To help prevent damage to the wiper system, always loosen blades which are frozen to the windshield before operating wipers.
– To help prevent damage to wiper blades, do not use gasoline, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near the wiper blades.
– To help prevent damage to the wiper arms or other components, do not attempt to move the wipers by hand.

Tips

Commercial hot waxes applied by automatic car washes affect the how easily the glass surface can be cleaned.

Replacing the rear wiper blade



Fig. 60 Rear wiper: Removing the wiper blade

Removing the wiper blade

- ▸ Fold the windshield wiper arm away from the windshield.
- ▸ Pull the wiper blade and holder out of the mount.

Attaching the wiper blade

- ▸ Press the wiper blade holder in the arrow direction ⇨ *fig. 60* into the mount.
- ▸ Fold the windshield wiper arm back onto the windshield.

▶

WARNING

- To prevent streaking, clean the wiper blades regularly with a glass cleaner. In the case of significant contamination, e.g. from insect remains, the wiper blades can be cleaned with a sponge or cloth.
- For safety reasons, the windshield wiper blades should be replaced once or twice each year.

Mirrors

Manual glare-dimming

Standard setting

▸ Move the small lever (located on the bottom edge of the mirror) to the front.

Anti-glare setting

▸ Move the small lever (located on the bottom edge of the mirror) to the rear.

Automatically dimming inside mirror

Applies to vehicles: with automatically dimming inside mirror

The automatic dimming function can be turned on and off if required.

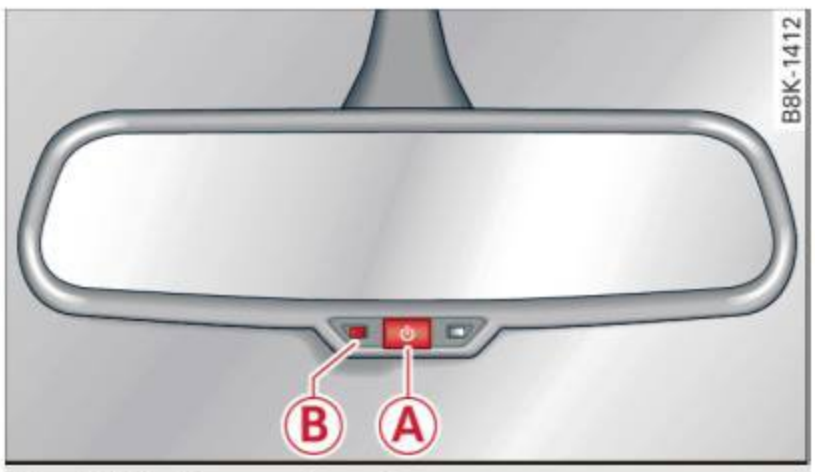


Fig. 61 Inside rear view mirror

Disabling auto dimming

▸ Press button Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 61 briefly*, - the indicator light Ⓑ goes out.

Activating/reactivating auto dimming

▸ Press button Ⓐ *briefly*, - the indicator light Ⓑ goes on.

Automatic dimming function

The automatic dimming function is activated every time the ignition is turned on. The green indicator light is lit to indicate auto dimming is active.

When dimming is activated, the inside mirror will darken *automatically* in response to the amount of light striking the mirror (such as headlights from rearward approaching vehicles). Even in dimming mode, the mirror surface turns bright when:

- the interior light is switched on
- reverse gear is engaged.

WARNING

Broken glass of automatic dimming mirror can cause electrolyte fluid leakage. Electrolyte fluid can irritate skin, eyes, and respiratory system.

- Repeated or prolonged exposure to electrolyte can cause irritation to the respiratory system, especially among people with asthma or other respiratory conditions. Get fresh air immediately by leaving the vehicle or, if that is not possible, open windows and doors all the way.
- If electrolyte gets into the eyes, flush them thoroughly with large amounts of clean water for at least 15 minutes; medical attention is recommended.
- If electrolyte contacts skin, flush affected area with clean water for at least 15 minutes and then wash affected area with soap and water; medical attention is recommended. Thoroughly wash affected clothing and shoes before reuse.
- If swallowed and person is conscious, rinse mouth with water for at least 15 minutes. Do not induce vomiting unless instructed to do so by medical professional. Get medical attention immediately. ▶

Note

Liquid electrolyte leaked from a broken mirror glass will damage any plastic surfaces it comes in contact with. Clean up spilled electrolyte immediately with clear water and a sponge.

Tips

- **If you switch off the automatic dimming function on the inside mirror, automatic dimming of the outside mirrors* will likewise be disabled.**
- Check to make sure there are no objects preventing light from reaching the inside mirror.
- Do not attach any stickers to the windshield in front of the light sensor, as this would interfere with both the automatic operation of the headlights and the automatic dimming of the inside mirror.

Outside mirrors

The outside mirrors are electrically adjusted (power mirrors)

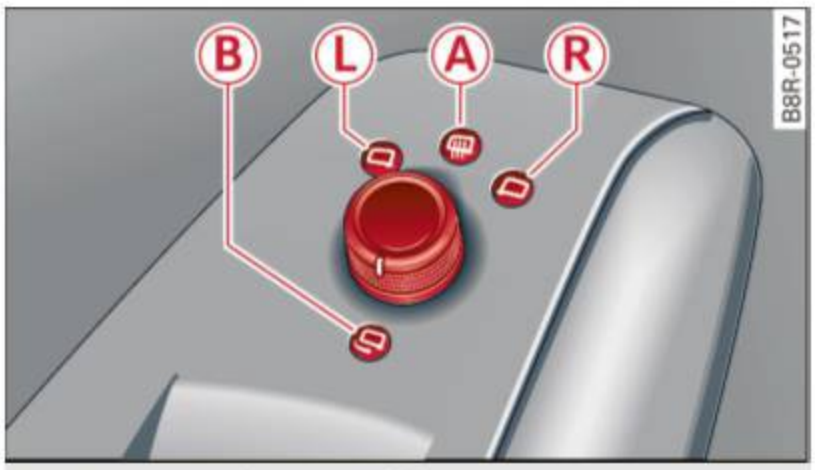


Fig. 62 Forward section of driver's armrest: power mirror controls

Adjusting exterior mirrors

- ▸ Rotate the knob to the Ⓛ position (driver's exterior mirror) or to the Ⓡ position (passenger's exterior mirror) ⇨ *fig. 62*.
- ▸ Rotate the knob and the mirror so that you have a clear view to the rear.

Heated mirrors

- ▸ Rotate the knob to position Ⓐ.

Folding both outside mirrors*

- ▸ Turn the knob to Ⓑ.

Depending on the outside temperature, the mirror surfaces are heated until the ignition is switched off - even if the knob is no longer in position Ⓐ.

You are well-advised to fold the outside mirrors in when maneuvering in tight spaces or when leaving the car parked close to other vehicles.

Memory for exterior mirrors*

On vehicles with memory for the driver's seat, the current setting for the exterior mirrors is automatically stored along with the seat position ⇨ *page 66*.

Tilt function for the passenger's mirror* (only with memory for exterior mirrors)

When the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror surface tilts downward slightly if the setting is for the passenger's mirror (knob in position Ⓡ ⇨ *fig. 62*). This allows you to see the curb during parallel parking.

The mirror returns to its initial position as soon as reverse gear is disengaged and vehicle speed is above about 9 mph (15 km/h). The mirror also returns to its initial position if the switch is moved to the driver's outside mirror Ⓛ or the ignition is switched off.

If the position of the mirror surface is changed on a tilted mirror, this new position will be automatically assigned to the remote key when the vehicle is taken out of reverse gear.

Note

- Curved mirror surfaces (convex or spherical*) increase your field of view. Remember that vehicles or other objects will appear smaller and farther away than when seen in a flat mirror. If you use this mirror to estimate distances of following vehicles when changing lanes, you could estimate incorrectly and cause an accident.

▸

– If the mirror housing is moved unintentionally (for example, while parking your vehicle), then you must first fold the mirror electrically. Do not readjust the mirror housing manually. You could damage the motor which controls the mirror.
– If you take the vehicle to an automatic car wash, you must fold the exterior mirrors flat to prevent damaging them. Power folding exterior mirrors* must not be folded in or out by hand. Use the power function!

Tips

If there should be a malfunction in the electrical system, you can still adjust the outside mirrors by pressing the edge of the mirror.

Automatic dimming for the outside mirrors

Applies to vehicles: with automatically adjusting outside mirrors

The outside mirrors dim at the same time as the inside mirror. When the ignition is switched on, the mirrors automatically dim depending on the amount of light striking the mirrors (such as headlights shining into the vehicle from the rear).

When the interior lighting is switched on and when reverse gear is engaged, the mirrors are switched back to their original brightness (not dimmed).

WARNING

Broken glass of automatic dimming mirror can cause electrolyte fluid leakage. Electrolyte fluid can irritate skin, eyes, and respiratory system.
– Repeated or prolonged exposure to electrolyte can cause irritation to the respiratory system, especially among people with asthma or other respiratory conditions. Get fresh air immediately by leaving the vehicle or, if that is not possible, open windows and doors all the way.
– If electrolyte gets into the eyes, flush them thoroughly with large amounts of clean water for at least 15 minutes; medical attention is recommended.
– If electrolyte contacts skin, flush affected area with clean water for at least 15 minutes and then wash affected area with soap and water; medical attention is recommended. Thoroughly wash affected clothing and shoes before reuse.
– If swallowed and person is conscious, rinse mouth with water for at least 15 minutes. Do not induce vomiting unless instructed to do so by medical professional. Get medical attention immediately.

Note

Liquid electrolyte leaked from a broken mirror glass will damage any plastic surfaces it comes in contact with. Clean up spilled electrolyte immediately with clear water and a sponge.

Tips

– **Switching off the dimming function of the inside rearview mirror also deactivates the automatic dimming function of the exterior mirrors.**
– Automatic dimming for the mirror only operates properly if the light striking the inside mirror is not hindered by other objects.

Digital compass

Activating or deactivating the compass

Applies to vehicles: with digital compass

The direction is displayed on the interior rear view mirror.



Fig. 63 Inside rear view mirror: digital compass activated

- ▸ To activate or deactivate, hold the Ⓐ button down until the red display appears or disappears.

The digital compass only works with the ignition turned on. The directions are displayed as initials: **N** (North), **NE** (Northeast), **E** (East), **SE** (Southeast), **S** (South), **SW** (Southwest), **W** (West), **NW** (Northwest).

Tips

To avoid inaccurate directions, do not allow any remote controls, electrical systems, or metal parts close to the mirror.

Setting the magnetic deflection zone

Applies to vehicles: with digital compass

The correct magnetic deflection zone must be set in order to display the directions correctly.

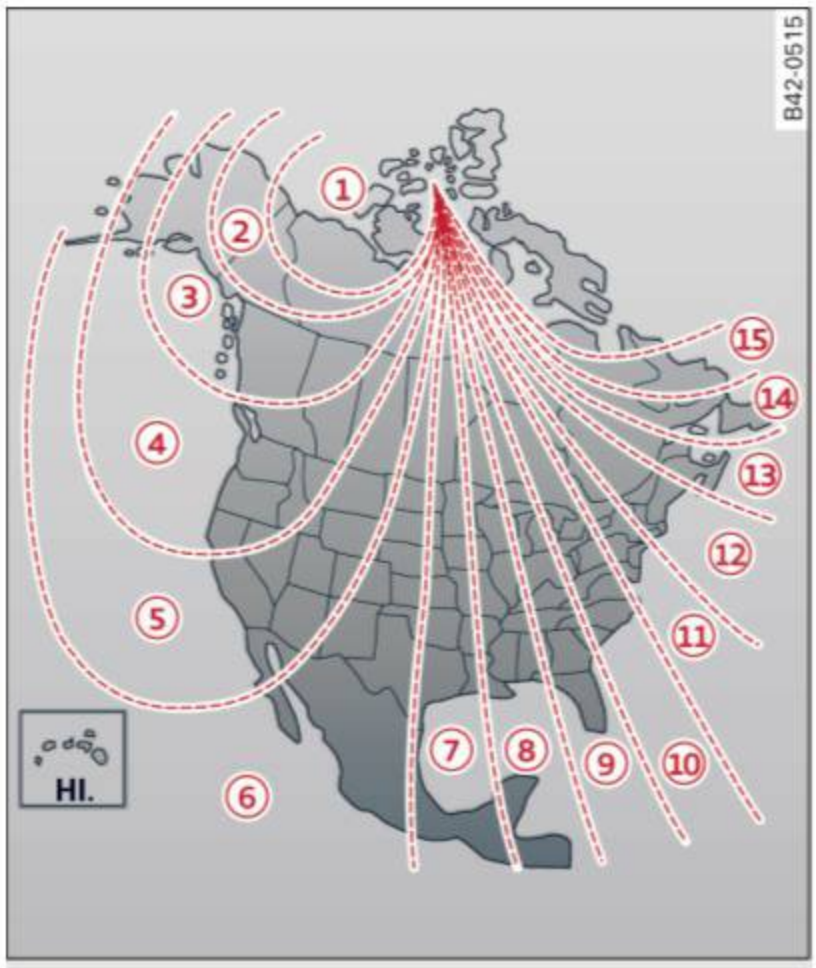


Fig. 64 North America: magnetic deflection zone boundaries

- ▸ Hold the Ⓐ ⇨ *page 62, fig. 63* button down until the number of the set magnetic deflection zone appears on the interior rear view mirror.
- ▸ Adjust the magnetic deflection zone by repeatedly pressing on the Ⓐ button. The set mode automatically deactivates after a few seconds.

Calibrating the compass

Applies to vehicles: with digital compass

The compass has to be recalibrated if the display is wrong or inaccurate.

- ▸ Hold the Ⓐ button down until the letter **C** is displayed on the interior rear view mirror.
- ▸ Drive in a circle at a speed of about 5 mph (10 km/h) until a direction is shown on the interior rear view mirror.

▶

WARNING

The digital compass is to be used as a directional aid only. Even though you may want to look at it while you are driving, you must still pay attention to traffic, road and weather conditions as well as other possible hazards.

Seats and storage

General recommendations

Why is your seat adjustment so important?

The safety belts and the airbag system can only provide maximum protection if the front seats are correctly adjusted.

There are various ways of adjusting the front seats to provide safe and comfortable support for the driver and the front passenger. Adjust your seat properly so that:

– you can easily and quickly reach all the switches and controls in the instrument panel
– your body is properly supported thus reducing physical stress and fatigue
– the safety belts and airbag system can offer maximum protection ⇨ *page 156*.

In the following sections, you will see exactly how you can best adjust your seats.

There are special regulations and instructions for installing a child safety seat on the front passenger's seat. Always follow the information regarding child safety provided in ⇨ *page 178, Child Safety*.

WARNING

Incorrect seating position of the driver and all other passengers can result in serious personal injury.

– Always keep your feet on the floor when the vehicle is in motion — never put your feet on top of the instrument panel, out of the window or on top of the seat cushion. This applies especially to the passengers. If your seating position is incorrect, you increase the risk of injury in the case of sudden braking or an accident. If the airbag inflates and the seating position is incorrect, this could result in personal injury or even death.
– It is important for both the driver and front passenger to keep a distance of at least 10 inches (25 cm) between themselves and the steering wheel and/or instrument panel. If you're sitting any closer than this, the airbag system cannot protect you properly. In addition, the front seats and head restraints must be adjusted to your body height so that they can give you maximum protection.
– Always try to keep as much distance as possible between yourself and the steering wheel or instrument panel.
– Do not adjust the driver's or front passenger's seat while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly, causing sudden loss of vehicle control and personal injury. If you adjust your seat while the vehicle is moving, you are out of position.

Driver's seat

The correct seat position is important for safe and relaxed driving.

We recommend that you adjust the driver's seat in the following manner:

▸ Adjust the seat in fore and aft direction so that you can easily push the pedals to the floor while keeping your knees slightly bent ⇨ ⚠ *in Why is your seat adjustment so important? on page 64*.
▸ Adjust the seatback so that when you sit with your back against the seatback, you can still grasp the top of the steering wheel.
▸ Adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible ⇨ *page 68*.

WARNING

Never place any objects in the driver's footwell. An object could get into the pedal area and interfere with pedal function. In case of sudden braking or an accident, you would not be able to brake or accelerate.

Front passenger's seat

Always move the front passenger seat into the rearmost position.

To avoid contact with the airbag while it is deploying, do not sit any closer to the instrument panel than necessary and always wear the three-point safety belt provided adjusted correctly. We recommend that you adjust the passenger's seat in the following manner:

- ▸ Move the front passenger seat into the rearmost position of the fore and aft adjustment range ⇨ ⚠ *in Why is your seat adjustment so important? on page 64*.
- ▸ Bring the backrest up to an (almost) upright position. **Do not** ride with the seat reclined.
- ▸ Adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible ⇨ *page 68*.
- ▸ Place your feet on the floor in front of the passenger's seat.

Power front seat adjustment

Seat adjustment controls

The operating logic for the switches corresponds to the construction and function of the seat.

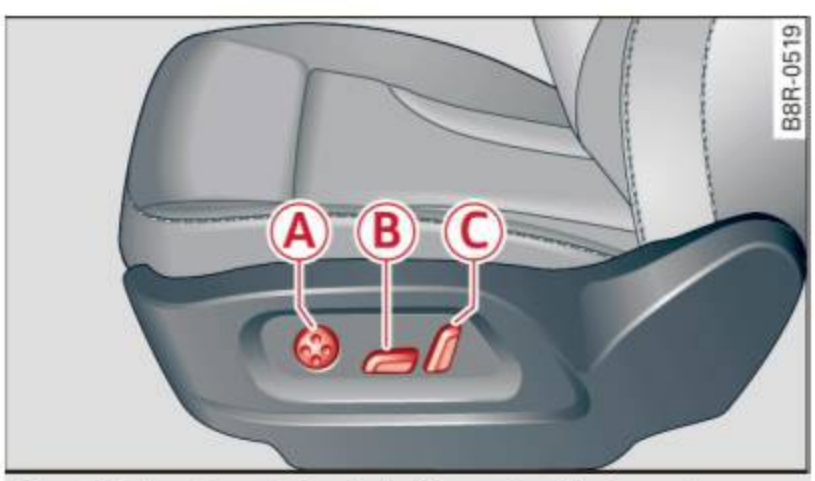


Fig. 65 Front seat: Controls for seat adjustment

The switches to adjust the seat cushion and the seatback correspond to the layout, the design and the function of the seat. The seats are adjusted by moving the switches following this logic.

Controls

Ⓐ Lumbar support
Ⓑ Seat adjustment
Ⓒ Seatback adjustment

Adjusting the seat

Position, angle and shape of the seat can be adjusted electrically to ensure safe and comfortable seating.

Read and follow the warning notices ⇨ ⚠ before you adjust your seat.

Adjusting the curvature of the lumbar support

- ▸ Push the switch plate Ⓐ forward or backward to increase or reduce the curvature.

Adjusting the height of the lumbar support

- ▸ Push the switch plate Ⓐ up or down to position the curvature higher or lower.

Fore-and-aft adjustment

- ▸ Push the switch Ⓑ forward or backward ⇨ *page 65, fig. 65*.

Adjusting seat height

- ▸ Pull or push the switch Ⓑ up or down.

Front seat cushion up / down

- ▸ Press the switch Ⓑ at the front up or down.

Rear seat cushion up / down

- ▸ Press the switch Ⓑ at the rear up or down.

Adjusting seatback angle

- ▸ Push the switch Ⓒ forward or backward.

⚠ WARNING

– Adjust the driver's seat only when the vehicle is stationary. You risk an accident otherwise.
– The power adjustment for the front seats also works with the ignition switched off or with the ignition key removed. For this reason, children should never be left ▶

unattended in the vehicle - they could be injured!
- Exercise caution when adjusting the seat height. Unsupervised or careless seat adjustment can pinch fingers or hands causing injuries.
- While the vehicle is moving, the seatbacks of the front seats must not be inclined too far to the rear because the effectiveness of the safety belts and the airbag system is severely compromised - there is a risk of injury.
- To reduce the risk of injury in the case of sudden braking or accident, front passengers must never ride in a moving vehicle with the seatback reclined. Safety belts and the airbag system only offer maximum protection when the seatback is upright and the safety belts are properly positioned on the body. The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the risk of personal injury from an incorrect seating position and improperly positioned safety belts.

Seat memory

Memory for driver's seat

Applies to vehicles: with seat memory

The seat adjustment settings for two drivers can be stored using the memory buttons in the driver's door.



Fig. 66 Driver's door: Seat memory

In addition to the setting for the driver's seat, the exterior rear view mirror setting can be stored and recalled through seat memory if the vehicle is properly equipped.

Storing and recalling settings

With the help of the memory buttons 1 and 2 ⇨ *fig. 66* the settings for two different drivers can be stored and recalled ⇨ *page 66*.

The current settings are also automatically assigned to the remote control key being used when the vehicle is locked. When the vehicle is unlocked, the settings assigned to the remote control key being used are automatically recalled.

Turning seat memory on and off

If the OFF switch is depressed, the seat memory is inoperative. When the Memory function is off, the LED in the button lights up.

All the stored settings are retained. We recommend using the OFF switch and deactivating the seat memory if the vehicle is only going to be used *temporarily* by a driver whose settings are not going to be stored.

Storing and recalling settings

Applies to vehicles: with seat memory

Storing settings

- ▸ Adjust the driver's seat.
- ▸ Adjust the two exterior mirrors.
- ▸ Press the SET button. The light in the button will come on.
- ▸ Now press a memory button (1 or 2). If the storing procedure is correct, a confirmation tone will sound.

Recalling settings

- ▸ If the driver's door is open, tap the corresponding memory button briefly.
- ▸ If the driver's door is closed, press the appropriate memory button until the stored position is reached.

Successful storage is confirmed audibly and by the light in the SET button illuminating ⇨ *page 66, fig. 66*.

When the vehicle is **locked**, the current settings are stored and assigned to the remote control key. But the settings stored on memory buttons 1 to 2 are not deleted. They can be ▶

recalled at any time. When the vehicle is **unlocked**, the settings assigned to the remote control key are restored.

If your vehicle is driven by other persons using your remote control key, you should save your individual seat position on one of the memory buttons. You can recall your settings again simply and conveniently by pressing the corresponding memory button. When the vehicle is locked, these settings are automatically re-assigned to the remote control key and stored.

WARNING

- For safety reasons, the seat setting can only be recalled when the vehicle is stationary - otherwise you risk having an accident.
- In an emergency the recall procedure can be cancelled by pressing the OFF switch or by tapping of the memory buttons.

Activating remote control key memory

Applies to vehicles: with seat memory

To assign the driver's seat settings to the remote control key when locking the vehicle, the function must be activated in the radio or MMI*.

▸ Select: Function button CAR > **Seat adjustment** > **Driver's seat** > **Key mem. profile** > **On**.

Tips

If you do not want another driver's settings to be assigned to the remote control key, switch off the memory function using the radio or MMI* or the OFF button ⇨ *page 66*.

Rear seats

General information

Safe transportation of passengers on the rear seats requires proper safety precautions.

All passengers on the rear seats must be seated in compliance with the safety guidelines explained in ⇨ *page 148* and ⇨ *page 156*. The correct seating position is critical for the safety of front *and* rear seat passengers alike ⇨ *page 142*.

WARNING

- Occupants in the front *and* rear seats must always be properly restrained.
- Do not let anyone ride in the vehicle without the head restraints provided. Head restraints help to reduce injuries.
- Loose items inside the passenger compartment, can fly forward in a crash or sudden maneuver and injure occupants. Always store articles in the luggage compartment and use the fastening eyes, especially when the rear seatbacks have been folded down.
- Read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 142, Proper seating positions for passengers in rear seats*.

Adjusting seat

The fore-and-aft adjustment of the seat cushion and the seatback angle can be adjusted.

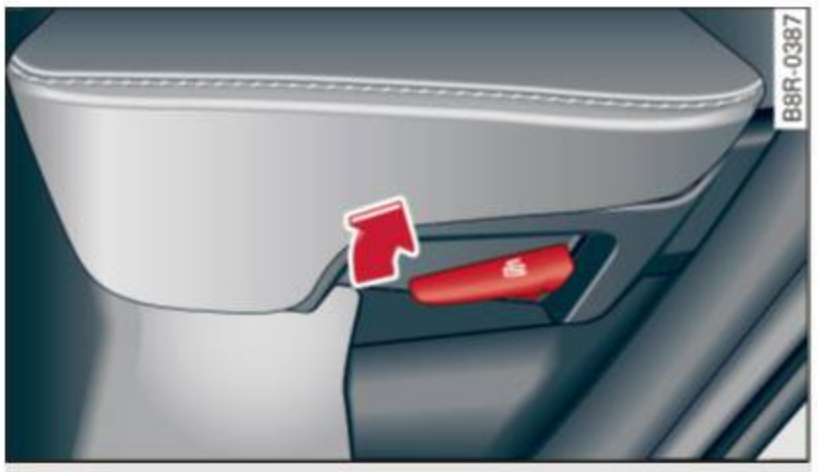


Fig. 67 Adjusting seatback angle

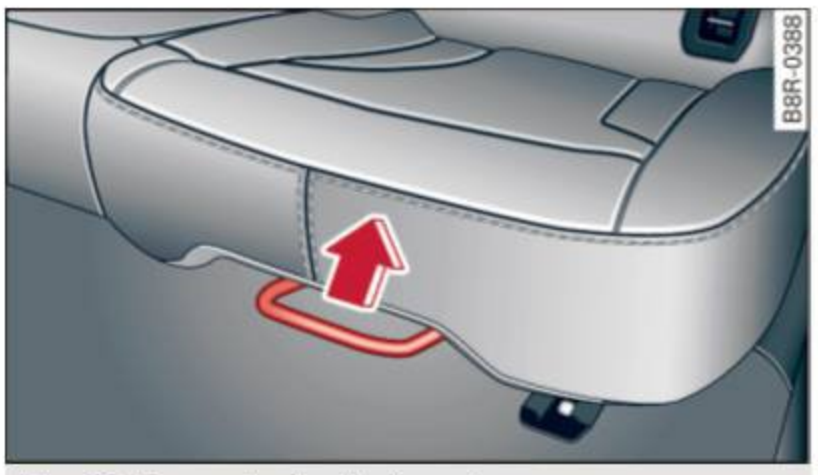


Fig. 68 Fore-and-aft adjustment ▶

Adjusting seatback angle

- ▸ Pull the lever up and push the seatback toward the rear to the desired position ⇨ *fig. 67*. Release the lever.
- ▸ Pull the lever up so that the seatback pivots forward. Release the lever and push the seatback to the rear to return the seatback to the normal position.

Fore-and-aft adjustment

- ▸ Pull the handle up and push the seat forward or back ⇨ *fig. 68*.
- ▸ Release the handle and continue to push the seat until the seat latch engages.

⚠ WARNING

– For safety reasons, the seat must only be adjusted when the vehicle is stationary - danger of accident!

– Exercise caution when adjusting the seat. Adjusting the seat without checking or paying attention can pinch fingers or limbs - danger of injury!

Head restraints

Front head restraints

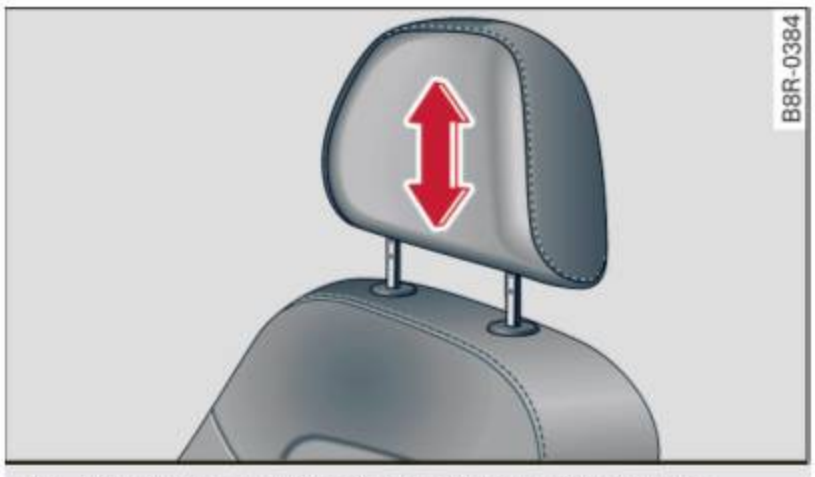


Fig. 69 Front seats head restraints: adjusting the height

The head restraints on the *front* seats can be adjusted to provide safe support to head and neck at the optimum height. When optimally adjusted, the top of the restraint should be level with the top of the head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible ⇨ *page 142, Proper adjustment of head restraints*.

- ▸ Grasp the sides of the head restraint with both hands and slide it upward/downward until you feel it click into place ⇨ *fig. 69*.

Refer to ⇨ *page 142, Proper adjustment of head restraints* for guidelines on how to adjust the height of the front head restraints to suit the occupant's body size.

⚠ WARNING

– Driving without head restraints or with head restraints that are not properly adjusted increases the risk of serious or fatal neck injury dramatically.

– Read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 142*.

ⓘ Tips

Correctly adjusted head restraints and safety belts are an extremely effective combination of safety features.

Rear head restraints

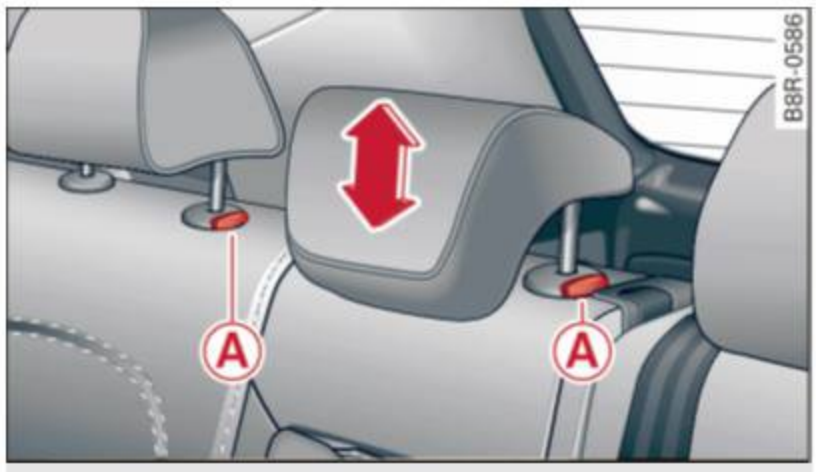


Fig. 70 Rear seat: head restraints

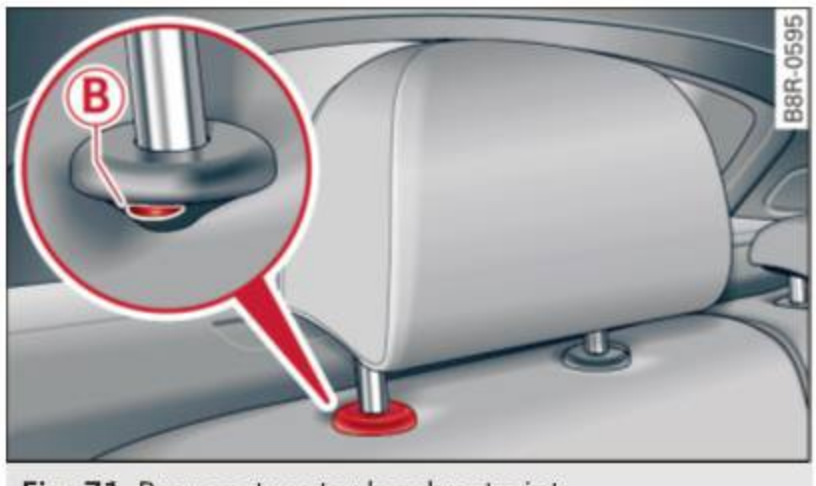


Fig. 71 Rear seat: outer head restraint

If there is a passenger on the rear center seating position, slide the center head restraint upward at least to the next notch. ▸

Adjusting the head restraints

- ▸ To move the head restraint up, hold it at the sides with both hands and slide it upward until you feel it click into place.
- ▸ To move the head restraint down, press the button Ⓐ and slide the head restraint downward.

Removing the outer head restraints

- ▸ Fold the backrest forward ⇨ *page 70*.
- ▸ Move the head restraint upward as far as it can go.
- ▸ Press the release Ⓑ ⇨ *fig. 71* with the mechanical key ⇨ *page 39* and the button Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 70*. Pull the head restraint out of the backrest at the same time ⇨ ⚠.

Installing the outer head restraints

- ▸ Slide the posts on the head restraint down into the guides until you feel the posts click into place.
- ▸ Press the button Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 70* and slide the head restraint all the way down. You should not be able to pull the head restraint out of the backrest.

Removing the center head restraint

- ▸ Move the head restraint upward as far as it can go.
- ▸ Press the button Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 70* and pull the head restraint out of the backrest ⇨ ⚠.

Installing the center head restraint

- ▸ Slide the posts on the head restraint down into the guides until you feel the posts click into place.
- ▸ Press the button Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 70* and slide the head restraint all the way down. You should not be able to pull the head restraint out of the backrest.

So that the driver can have a better view to the rear, the head restraints should be pushed down completely when the rear seats are not occupied.

⚠ WARNING

- – Only remove the rear seat head restraints when necessary in order to install a child seat. Install the head restraint again immediately once the child seat is removed. Driving without head restraints or with head restraints that are not properly adjusted increases the risk of serious or fatal neck injury dramatically.
- – Read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 142*.

ⓘ Tips

Correctly adjusted head restraints and safety belts are an extremely effective combination of safety features.

Center armrest

The armrest is adjustable in several stages and can be moved forward and back.

Fig. 72 Armrest between driver's and passenger's seat

Adjusting the armrest

- ▸ To adjust the armrest angle, pivot the armrest fully down.
- ▸ Lift the armrest detent by detent until the desired position is reached.

Moving the armrest

- ▸ You can move the armrest forward or back ⇨ *fig. 72*.

There is a storage compartment under the armrest.

Luggage compartment

Expanding the passenger compartment

The rear seat backrests can be folded forward separately or together.

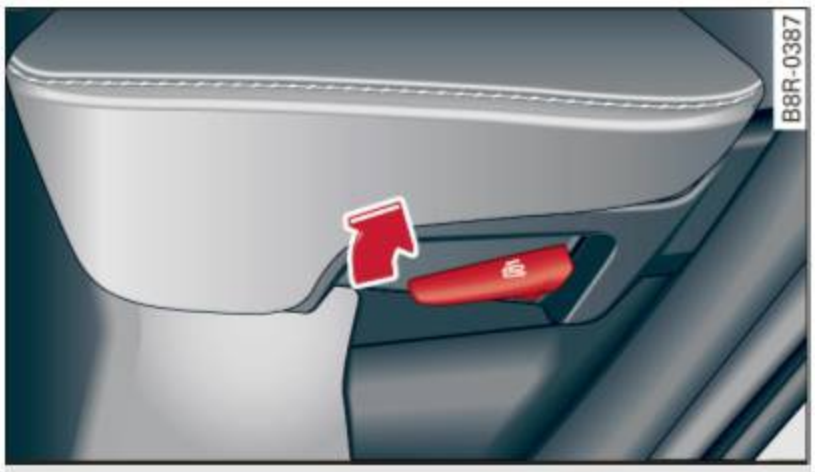


Fig. 73 Release lever for the outer backrest

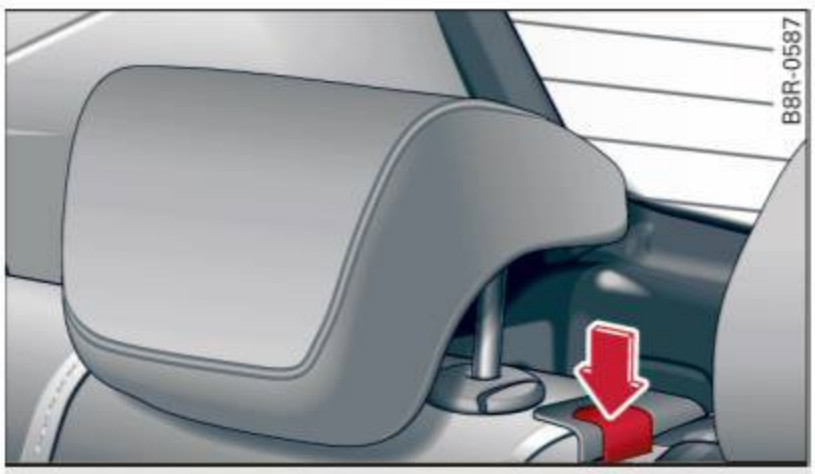


Fig. 74 Release button for the center backrest

Folding the backrest forward

- ▸ Pull the lever up ⇨ *fig. 73*. The backrest will swing forward.
- ▸ Let the backrest latch into the lowest position.

Raising the backrest

- ▸ Pull the lever up ⇨ *fig. 73* and fold the backrest back up again until it latches secure ⇨ ⚠.

Folding the center backrest forward

- ▸ Press the release button ⇨ *fig. 74*. The red marking on the release button will be visible.
- ▸ Fold the backrest forward.

Folding the center backrest up

- ▸ Fold the backrest back up again until it securely latches and the red marking is no longer visible ⇨ ⚠.

The center backrest can be folded down separately. This makes is possible to transport long objects (for example, skis) inside the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

- The backrest must always be securely latched so that the safety belt of the center seating position can work properly to help protect the occupant.
- The backrest must be securely latched in position so that no items contained in the luggage compartment can slide forward upon sudden braking.
- Always check whether the latch is fully engaged by pulling the seatback forward.
- Never allow safety belts to become damaged by being caught in door or seat hardware.
- Torn or frayed safety belts can tear and damaged belt hardware can break in a crash. Inspect the belts periodically. Belts showing damage to webbing, bindings, buckles, or retractors must be replaced.

⚠ WARNING

Always read and heed WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in Loading the luggage compartment on page 145*.

Note

- If you move the front seat back when the rear seat backrest is folded forward, you could damage the head restraints on the rear seat.
- Slide the belt guide on the outside safety belt all the way up before folding the backrest back forward. Make sure the seat belt is not pinched or damaged when the rear seat backrest if folded back.

Expanding the luggage compartment

The rear seat backrests can be folded forward separately or together.

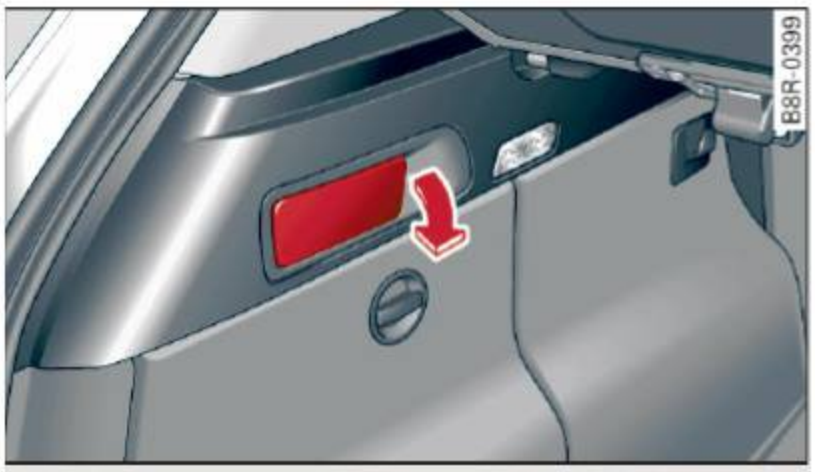


Fig. 75 Luggage compartment: release lever

Folding the backrest forward

- ▸ Pull the release lever ⇨ *fig. 75* in direction of the arrow. The backrest will swing forward.
- ▸ Let the backrest latch into the lowest position.

Folding the backrest up

- ▸ Pull the lever up ⇨ *page 70, fig. 73* and fold the backrest back up again until it securely latches ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

- The backrest must always be securely latched so that the safety belt of the center seating position can work properly to help protect the occupant.
- The backrest must be securely latched in position so that no items contained in the luggage compartment can slide forward upon sudden braking.
- Always check whether the latch is fully engaged by pulling the seatback forward.
- Never allow safety belts to become damaged by being caught in door or seat hardware.
- Torn or frayed safety belts can tear and damaged belt hardware can break in a crash. Inspect the belts periodically. Belts showing damage to webbing, bindings, buckles, or retractors must be replaced.

Note

- If you move the front seat back when the rear seat backrest is folded forward, you could damage the head restraints on the rear seat.
- Slide the belt guide on the outside safety belt all the way up before folding the backrest back forward. Make sure the seat belt is not pinched or damaged when the rear seat backrest if folded back. Other objects should be removed from the rear seat bench to protect the seatback from damage.

Tie-down rings

There are four tie-down rings in the luggage compartment for securing luggage items.

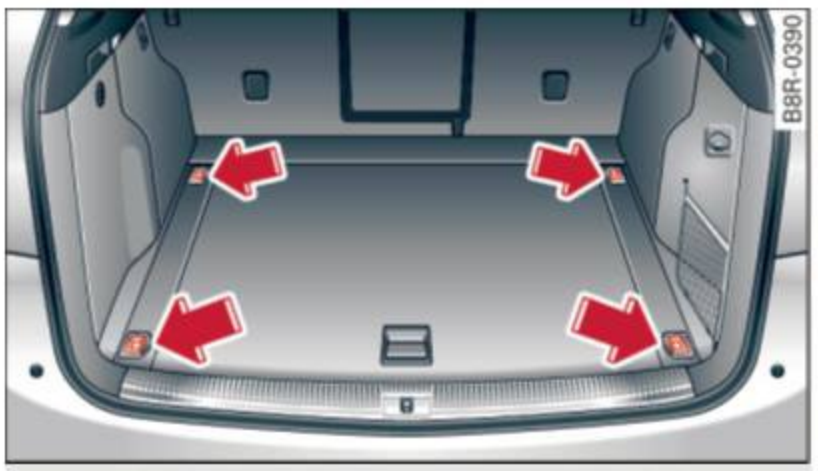


Fig. 76 Location of the tie-down rings in the luggage compartment

- ▸ Secure the cargo to the tie-down rings ⇨ *fig. 76*.
- ▸ Observe the safety notes ⇨ *page 146*.

In a collision, the laws of physics mean that even smaller items that are loose in the vehicle will turn into heavy missiles that can cause serious injury. Items in the vehicle pick up kinetic energy which varies with the vehicle and the weight of the item. Vehicle speed is the most significant factor.

For example, in a frontal collision at a speed of 30 mph (48 km/h), the forces acting on a 10-lb (4.5 kg) object are about *20 times* the normal weight of the item. This means that the weight of the item would suddenly be the equivalent of about 200 lbs (90 kg). One can easily imagine the injuries that an item of that ▸

weight flying freely through the passenger compartment can cause in a collision at a speed considered relatively low.

WARNING

Weak, damaged or improper straps used to secure items to tie-downs can fail during hard braking or in a collision and cause serious personal injury.

– Always use suitable retaining straps and properly secure items to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment to help prevent items from shifting or flying forward.
– When the rear seat backrest is folded down, always use suitable retaining straps and properly secure items to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment to help prevent items from flying forward into the passenger compartment.
– Never attach a child safety seat tether strap to a tie-down.

Luggage compartment cover

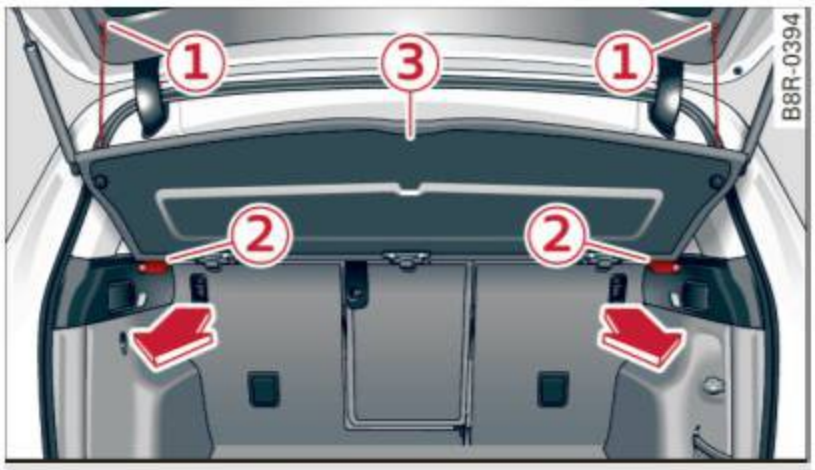


Fig. 77 Luggage compartment: cover attached



Fig. 78 Luggage compartment: storing the cover

Removing

▸ Unhook the straps ① ⇨ *fig. 77*.
▸ Pull the cover ③ out of the retainers ② in the direction of the arrow.

Installing

▸ Slide the cover into the retainers ②.
▸ Attach the straps ① ⇨ ⚠.

Storing

▸ Slide the rear seat forward ⇨ *page 67*.
▸ Fold the cover together and store it behind the rear seat ⇨ *fig. 78*.

WARNING

– To prevent accidents, never install the luggage compartment cover unsecured.
– Whenever driving, never place any hard or heavy objects on the luggage compartment or allow pets to sit on the luggage compartment cover. They could become a hazard to vehicle occupants in the event of sudden braking or in an accident.

Note

You could damaged a stored luggage compartment cover when you move the rear seat or rear seat backrest.

Tips

– You can use the luggage compartment cover to store light weight clothing or articles but do not leave any heavy or sharp objects in the pockets of the clothing.
– Remember that placing clothing or articles on the luggage compartment cover can block the driver's vision in the rear view mirror. This also applies especially when you have to transport large objects.
– So that stale air can escape from the vehicle be sure not to cover the ventilation slot between the rear lid and the luggage compartment cover.

Double cargo floor

You can store dirty or wet objects under the cargo floor.

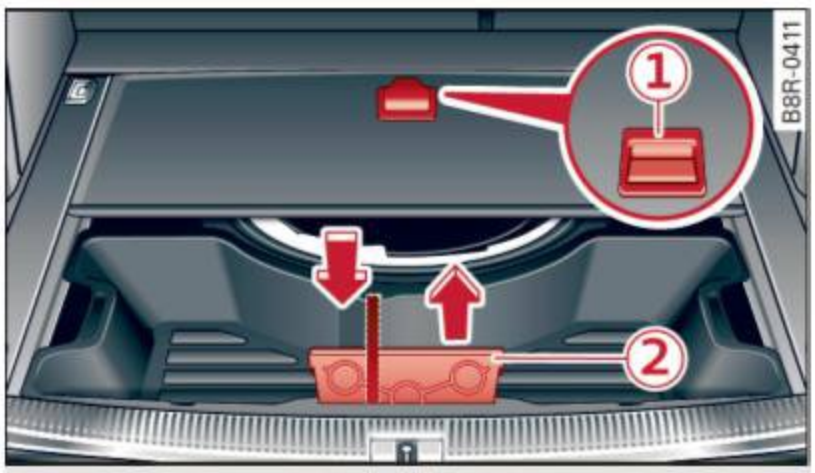


Fig. 79 Luggage compartment: cargo floor folded together with protective tray

Folding the cargo floor together

- ▸ Lift the cargo floor by the handle ⇨ *fig. 79* ① and fold it up.
- ▸ Place your item in the protective tray.

Removing the cargo floor, installing

- ▸ To remove, lift the cargo floor folded together and pull it toward the rear lid.
- ▸ To install, place the folded cargo floor into both retainers and unfold it.

Grab the protective tray on the handles and pull it out. You can also install a divider to divide ② the storage area. Depending on the vehicle equipment level, the protective tray can have different sizes and shapes.

Cargo net and storage hooks

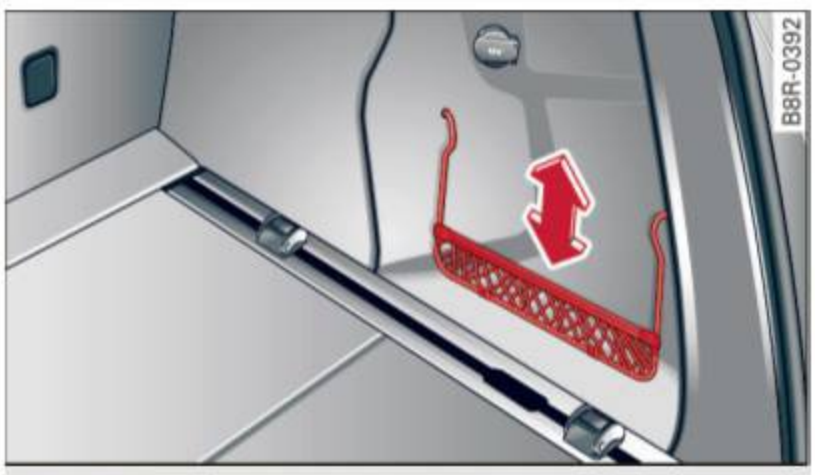


Fig. 80 Luggage compartment:



Fig. 81 Luggage compartment: Storage hooks

Storage net

The storage net on the right side trim can be moved lower on the side guides, if needed ⇨ *fig. 80*.

Storage hooks

The storage hooks can be used to secure shopping bags from falling over ⇨ *fig. 81*.

WARNING

Do not use the storage hooks to secure heavy objects. Heavier objects are not adequately secured. There is risk of personal injury.

Roof rack

Description

Additional cargo can be carried with a roof luggage rack.

If luggage or cargo is to be carried on the roof, you must observe the following:

– Only a specially designed roof rack may be used on your vehicle roof. This is provided with your vehicle.
– These roof racks are the basis for a complete roof rack system. Additional attachments are necessary if you want to transport luggage, bicycles, surf boards and skis. All these components are available at your authorized Audi dealer.

Note

If you use other roof luggage rack systems or do not install the racks as intended, any damage to the vehicle is not covered by ▸

the warranty. Always read the manufacturer installation instructions that came with your roof rack system when you install the attachments.

Tips

When installing a factory-supplied roof rack system on the roof railing, the ESP will adapt itself to a different center of gravity.

Attachment points

The roof rack can only be attached at the marked locations.



Fig. 82 Roof rack attachment points

Attach the roof rack only at the attachment points on the roof railing. On the inside of the roof railing there are two holes for attaching the rear end of the roof rack. To prevent confusing the front and rear roof rack attachments, there are three holes on the left and two holes on the right for mounting the front part of the roof rack ⇨ *fig. 82*.

The roof racks have a sticker on the left side underneath to identify front and rear.

WARNING

When installing the roof rack, make sure the sticker is on the left side of the vehicle and faces the stamped arrow in the drive direction.

Installing a roof rack

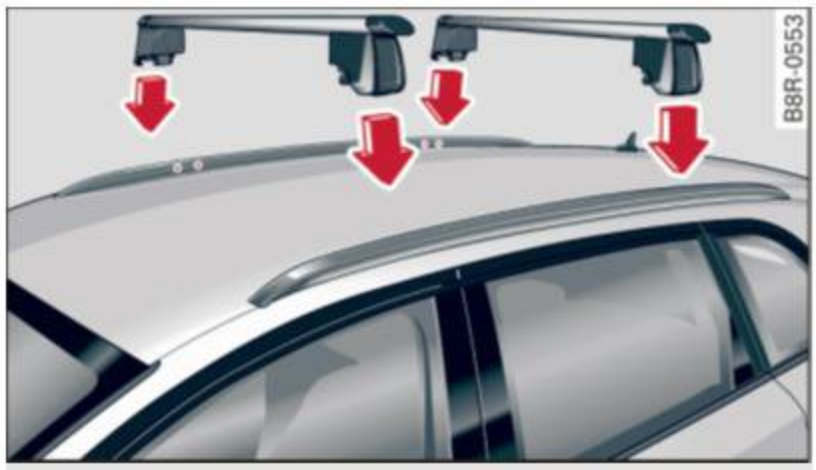


Fig. 83 Roof railing: positioning the roof rack

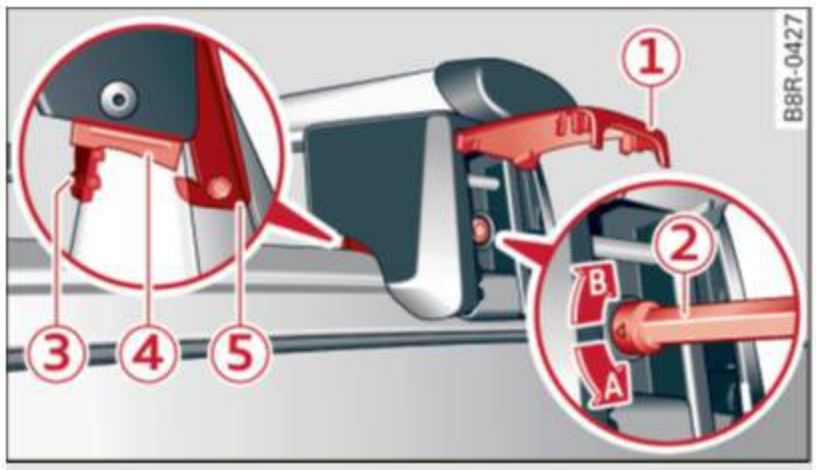


Fig. 84 Roof railing: installing a roof rack

The roof rack set consists of a front and rear roof rack, the cover profile and a socket wrench.

- Open the cap (1) ⇨ *fig. 84*.
- Before mounting the roof rack, use the socket wrench (2) and loosen the left and right screw in the direction of (A).
- Clean the attachment points on the roof railing as well as the roof rack rubber washers (4).
- Carefully place the roof rack over the holes in the roof railing ⇨ *fig. 83*.
- Place the pins (3) into the holes. The claw (5) must engage into the edge of the roof railing.
- Make sure the rubber washer (4) lays flat on the roof railing.
- Tighten the left and right screws using the socket wrench (2) in direction (B).
- To reach the **4 ft lb (6 Nm)** tightening specification needed, both arrows on the socket wrench must align.
- Repeat this procedure on the second roof rack.

▶

WARNING

Check all the roof rack connections each time before each trip and re-tighten or re-adjust if necessary. If you are going to be driving or rough terrain, you will have to check the attachments more often. If you do not do this, the risk of your luggage coming loose and falling off is greater.

Note

The pins and the roof rack claws must engage securely into the holes and into the edge of the roof railing when you tighten the screws!

Tips

You can adjust the width of the roof rack by using a hexagon wrench and turning the screws on the top. Let your authorized Audi dealer help you with this.

Installing the attachments

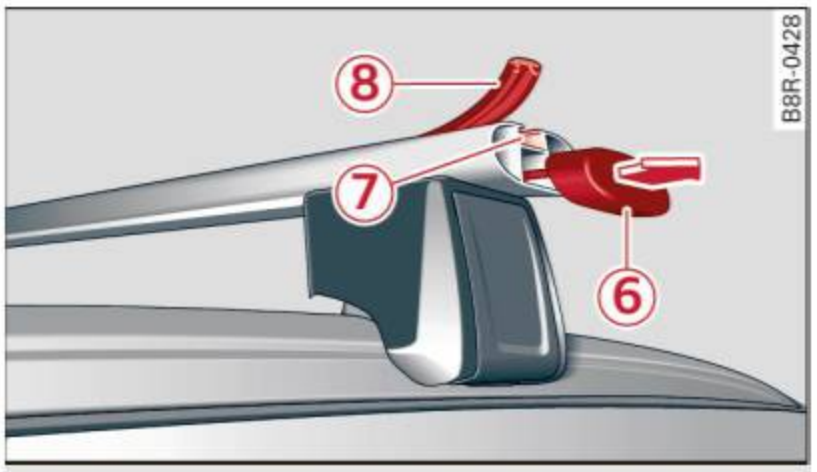


Fig. 85 Roof railing: installing cover profile into the roof rack

Installing the attachments

- ▸ Remove the cap ⑥ ⇨ *fig. 85*.
- ▸ Slide the attachment into the T-groove ⑦.
- ▸ Tighten the attachment according to the roof rack installation instructions.
- ▸ Close the cap.

Installing the cover profile

- ▸ Seal the openings in the T-groove ⑦ with the cover profile ⑧ after having installing the attachments.
- ▸ If you not want to use the attachment, seal the whole T-groove ⑦ with the cover profile ⑧.
- ▸ Cut the cover profile to the length needed, if necessary.

Roof load

The cargo on the roof must be securely attached. Handling characteristics change when cargo is transported.

The permissible roof load for your vehicle is **220 lbs (100 kg)**. The roof load is the total of the weight of the roof rack, the attachments and the cargo you are carrying.

WARNING

- The cargo must be securely attached on the roof rack, otherwise you risk an accident.
- Distribute the load as evenly as possible and do not make the roof rack wider than the maximum permitted.
- You must under no circumstances exceed the permissible roof load, the permissible axle loads and the permissible overall weight of your vehicle - risk of an accident.
- Mount the attachments to the roof rack only after you have placed the roof rack on the vehicle.
- Consider that when transporting heavy objects or one with a large surface, the handling characteristics change due to shift in the center of gravity or the greater surface exposed to the wind. So adapt your driving and your speed to prevailing conditions. We recommend that you do not drive faster than 80 mph (130 km/h).
- Mounting a roof rack changes the height of your vehicle. Keep this in mind when parking your vehicle in your garage, or when driving through a tunnel or under an overpass. ▶

Note

– Make sure the rear lid does not hit the cargo on the roof rack when you open it. On vehicles with automatic rear lid/trunk lid operation* you may have to adjust the open position of the rear lid ⇨ *page 45*.
– Remove the roof rack and attachment before taking your vehicle through an automatic car wash to avoid damage.

For the sake of the environment

Frequently people will leave the roof rack mounted on the vehicle even if it is not being used. Your vehicle will use more fuel due to the increased wind resistance. So remove the roof rack after using it.

Beverage holders



Fig. 86 Center console: Front cupholders

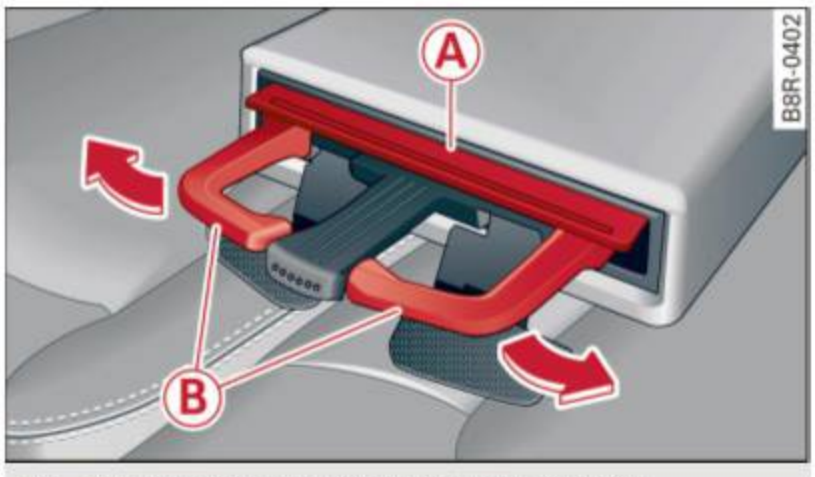


Fig. 87 Beverage storage in the rear armrest

Front cupholders

▸ You can accommodate two beverages in this storage ⇨ *fig. 86*.

Opening rear beverage holders

▸ Press on the symbol Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 87*.

Holding beverages at the rear

▸ To adjust the arm Ⓑ, swing it in the direction of the arrow.
▸ Place the beverage in the holder and release the arm. The arm swings back by itself and automatically secures the beverage.

Closing the rear cupholders

▸ Press on the center section between the two arms and push the cupholder in the slot as far as it will go.

The holding arm must be adjusted such that it lies closely against the cupholder.

A maximum of two beverages can be placed in the center armrest.

WARNING

Spilled hot liquid can cause an accident and personal injury.
– Never carry any beverage containers with hot liquids, such as hot coffee or hot tea, in the vehicle while it is moving. In case of an accident, sudden braking or other vehicle movement, hot liquid could spill, causing scalding burns. Spilled hot liquid can also cause an accident and personal injury.
– Use only soft cups in the cupholder. Hard cups and glasses can cause injury in an accident.
– Never use the cupholder or adapter as an ashtray - risk of fire.

Note

Only drink containers with lids should be carried in the cupholder. Liquid could spill out and damage your vehicle's electronic equipment or stain the upholstery, etc.

Climatized cupholders

Applies to vehicles: with climatized beverage holders

The driver side beverage holder can keep your beverage warm or cold.

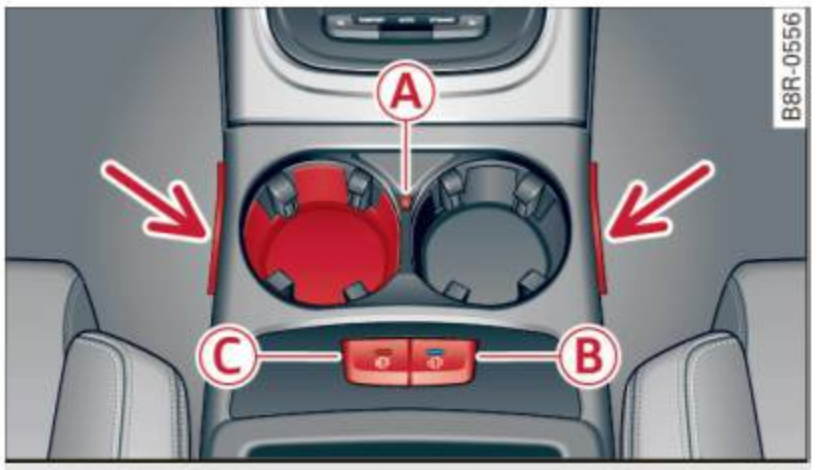


Fig. 88 Center console: climatized cupholder

- ▸ Press button Ⓑ ⇨ *fig. 88* to keep your beverage **cold**. The button will light up blue.
- ▸ Press button Ⓒ ⇨ *fig. 88* to keep your beverage **warm**. The button will light up red.
- ▸ To switch between the two functions, press the appropriate button.
- ▸ Press Ⓑ or Ⓒ to switch off these feature. The light in the button will go out.

When cooling, the temperature of the beverage holder base will go down to approximately 41 °F (5 °C). When warming, the temperature will be approximately 136 °F (58 °C). At 104 °F (40 °C) the warming display will come on Ⓐ. This is reminder not to touch the base because it is hot. The display goes out if the temperature falls below this value.

WARNING

– Never touch the beverage holder base when the warming display is on. You can burn yourself!
– Do not use breakable beverage containers (for example made out of glass or porcelain). You could be injured by them in case of an accident.

Note

Make sure your beverage holder has a lid. If not, your beverage could spill out and cause damage to the vehicle electronic or stain the seat covers.

Tips

Do not cover the ventilation grille -arrow- because that could prevent the beverage holder from functioning correctly.

Cupholders in the door pockets

There is a cupholder in all four doors.



Fig. 89 Section of door panel: Cupholder

The cupholders in the door pockets are suitable for 1 to 1.5-liter bottles.

WARNING

Spilled hot liquid can cause an accident and personal injury.
– Never carry any beverage containers with hot liquids, such as hot coffee or hot tea, in the vehicle while it is moving. In case of an accident, sudden braking or other vehicle movement, hot liquid could spill, causing scalding burns. Spilled hot liquid can also cause an accident and personal injury.
– Use only soft cups in the cupholder. Hard cups and glasses can cause injury in an accident.

Note

Only drink containers with lids should be carried in the cupholder. Liquid could spill out and damage your vehicle's electronic equipment or stain the upholstery, etc.

Ashtray

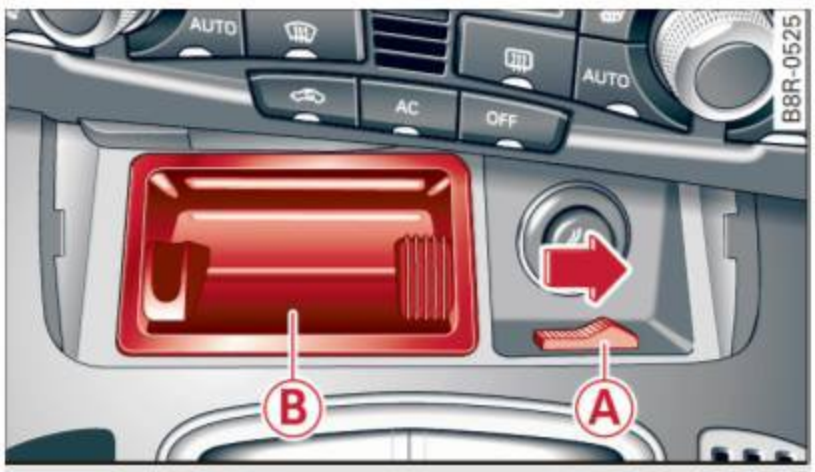


Fig. 90 Center console: front ashtray

Opening the ashtray

▸ Slide the cover open.

Closing the ashtray

▸ Tap the lid to close the ashtray automatically.

Removing ashtray insert

▸ Release the ashtray insert by sliding the switch Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 90* to the right.

▸ Remove the ashtray insert Ⓑ ⇨ *fig. 90*.

Reinstalling ashtray insert

▸ Press the ashtray insert into its holder.

WARNING

Never put waste paper in the ashtray. Hot ashes or other hot objects in the ashtray could set waste paper on fire.

Cigarette lighter/outlet

Cigarette lighter



Fig. 91 Open front ashtray

Using the cigarette lighter

▸ Open the lid of the front ash tray.
▸ Push the knob on the cigarette lighter in.
▸ Wait until the knob pops out slightly.
▸ Remove the cigarette lighter immediately.
▸ Light your cigarette from the red-hot heating coil of the cigarette lighter.
▸ Return the cigarette lighter to its socket.

Using the socket

▸ Remove the cigarette lighter.
▸ Insert the plug of the electrical device into the cigarette lighter socket.

The socket of the cigarette lighter may be used for 12-volt appliances with maximum consumption of up to 100 watts, such as a flash light, small vacuum cleaner, etc.

Before you purchase any accessories, always read and follow the information in ⇨ *page 293, Additional accessories and parts replacement*.

WARNING

– Use care when using the cigarette lighter. Inattentive or unsupervised use of the cigarette lighter can cause burns – risk of injury!
– The power outlets and therefore the electrical accessories connected to them operate only with the ignition on. Improper use of the outlets or of electrical accessories can lead to serious injuries or cause a fire. For this reason, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle – they could be injured!

Note

– To avoid damaging the socket, only use plugs that fit properly.
– Only use the cigarette lighter socket as a power source for electrical accessories for short durations. Use the sockets in the vehicle when a power source is needed for longer durations.

▶

Tips

When the engine is off and accessories are still plugged in and are on, the vehicle battery can still be drained.

12-volt sockets

Electrical accessories can be connected to every 12-volt socket.



Fig. 92 Section of the trim panel of the luggage compartment: 12-volt socket

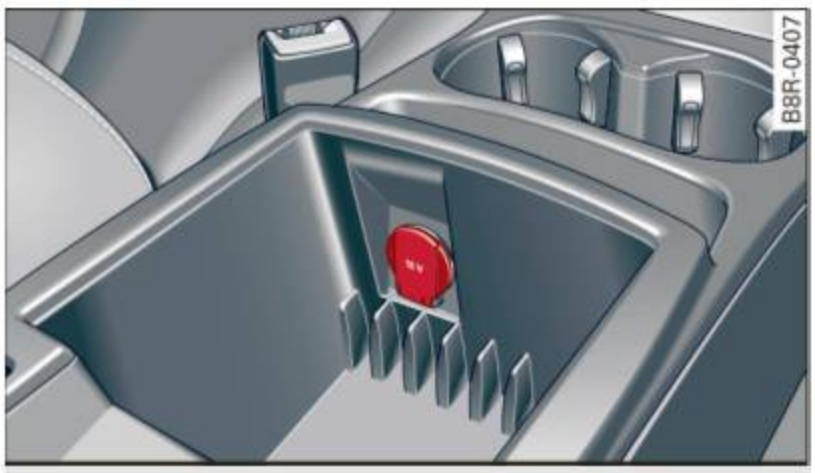


Fig. 93 Center console: 12-volt socket

- ▸ Open the socket cover ⇨ *fig. 92* or ⇨ *fig. 93*.
- ▸ Insert the plug of the electrical device into the socket.

The socket of the cigarette lighter may be used for 12-volt appliances with maximum consumption of up to 100 watts, such as a flash light, small vacuum cleaner, etc.

There is an additional 12V socket in the center console.

Before you purchase any accessories, always read and follow the information in ⇨ *page 293, Additional accessories and parts replacement*.

WARNING

The power outlets and therefore the electrical accessories connected to them operate only with the ignition on. Improper use of the outlets or of electrical accessories can lead to serious injuries or cause a fire. For this reason, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle – they could be injured!

Note

To avoid damaging the socket, only use plugs that fit properly.

Tips

When the engine is off and accessories are still plugged in and are on, the vehicle battery can still be drained.

Storage

General overview

There are numerous places to store items in your vehicle.

Glove compartment	⇨ *page 80*
Cooling box in glove compartment	⇨ *page 80*
Storage compartment in the roof	⇨ *page 80*
Multi-use attachment	⇨ *page 81*
Coat hooks	⇨ *page 81*
Storage in the door panels	
Storage net in footwell	
Storage net in the front seatbacks	
Storage net in luggage compartment	

WARNING

– Always remove objects from the instrument panel. Any items not put away could slide around inside the vehicle while driving or when accelerating or ▸

when applying the brakes or when driving around a corner.
– When you are driving make sure that anything you may have placed in the center console or other storage locations cannot fall out into the footwells. In case of sudden braking you would not be able to brake or accelerate.
– Any pieces of clothing that you have hung up must not interfere with the driver's view. The coat hooks are designed only for lightweight clothing. Never hang any clothing with hard, pointed or heavy objects in the pockets on the coat hooks. During sudden braking or in an accident - especially if the airbag is deployed - these objects could injure any passengers inside the vehicle.

Glove compartment

The glove compartment is illuminated and can be locked.



Fig. 94 Glove compartment

To open glove compartment

▸ Pull the handle in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 94* and swing the cover down to open.

To close glove compartment

▸ Push the glove compartment lid upward until the lock engages.

There are holders for a pen and a pad of paper in the glove compartment lid.

On the right side in the glove compartment is a holder with the key body into which the emergency key must be clipped to be able to start the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of personal injury in an accident or sudden stop, always keep the glove compartment closed while driving.

Cooling box in glove compartment

The cooling box works only when the air-conditioning is in cooling mode.

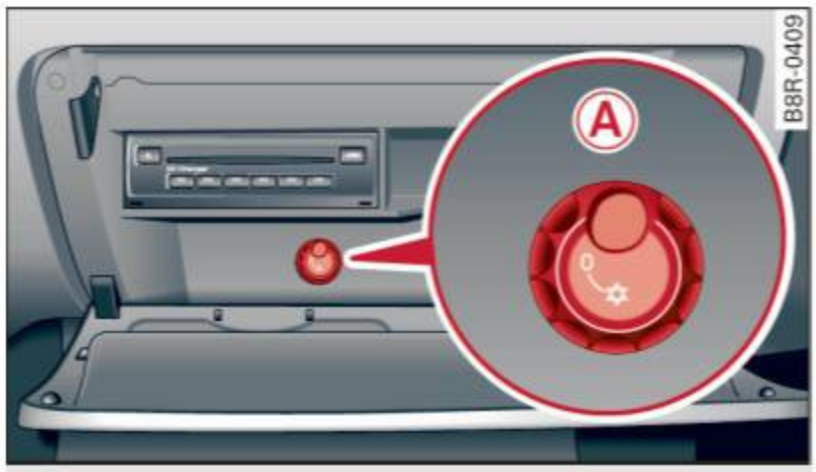


Fig. 95 Glove box with cooling box open and switched on

▸ Open the glove compartment ⇨ *page 80, fig. 94*.
▸ Turn the rotary switch Ⓐ counter-clockwise to switch the cooling on. The symbols on the rotary switch must be displayed ⇨ *fig. 95* accordingly.
▸ Turn the rotary switch Ⓐ clockwise to switch the cooling off.

The cooling box works only in the cooling mode. If the climate control is in the heating mode, we recommend switching the cooling box off.

Storage compartment in the roof



Fig. 96 Storage pocket in the roof ▶

- ▸ To open the lid you have to touch the bar ⇨ *fig. 96* (Arrow). The lid opens automatically.
- ▸ To close the lid, push it up until it engages.

WARNING

Always keep the lid closed while driving to reduce the risk of injury during a sudden braking maneuver or in the event of an accident.

Multi-use attachment

Light objects can be secured on the multi-use attachment.

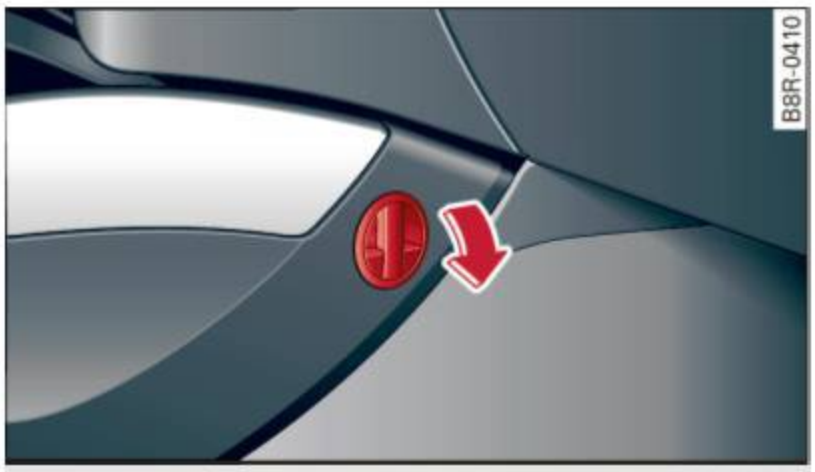


Fig. 97 Passenger footwell: multi-use attachment

Unfold the hook in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 97*.

WARNING

Maximum load on the multi-use attachment: 22 lbs (10 kg). Heavier objects are not adequately secured. There is risk of personal injury.

Tips

Other accessories or objects such as an umbrella from the Audi accessories programs can be secured on the multi-use attachment.

Coat hooks



Fig. 98 Coat hooks at rear doors

WARNING

- – Hang clothes in such a way that they do not impair the driver's vision.
- – The coat hooks must only be used for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp edged objects in the pockets which may interfere with the side curtain airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in a crash.
- – Do not use coat hangers for hanging clothing on the coat hooks as this can interfere with proper deployment of the side curtain airbags in an accident.
- – Do not hang heavy objects on the coat hooks, as they could cause personal injury in a sudden stop.

Warm and cold

Three-zone automatic climate control

Description

The air conditioner is fully automatic and is designed to maintain a comfortable and uniform climate inside the vehicle.

We recommend the following settings:

- ▸ Set the temperature to 75 °F (+23 °C).
- ▸ Press the AUTO button.

With this setting, you attain maximum comfort in the least amount of time. Change this setting, as desired, to meet your personal needs.

The climate controls are a combination of heating, ventilation and cooling systems, which automatically reduce humidity and cool the air inside your vehicle.

The climate control automatically maintains a temperature once it has been set. The temperature of the air from the vents, fan speed (air volume) and air distribution are also automatically adjusted. The system also takes into account strong sunshine so that manual adjustment is not necessary. So in almost all cases, **automatic mode** offers the best conditions for the comfort of the occupants at all times of the year ⇨ *page 84*.

Please note the following:

Turn on the air conditioner to reduce humidity in the vehicle. This also prevents the windows from fogging up.

When the outside temperature is high and the air is very humid, **condensation** from the evaporator may drip under the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak.

If the outside temperature is low, the fan normally only switches to a higher speed once the engine coolant has warmed up sufficiently.

The air conditioner temporarily switches off when you drive off from a standstill using full throttle to save engine power.

The compressor also switches off if the coolant temperature is too high, so that the engine can be adequately cooled under extreme loads.

Dust and pollen filter

The dust and pollen filter (a combined particle filter and activated charcoal filter) reduces or prevents outside air pollution (dust, or pollen) from entering the vehicle.

The dust and pollen filter must be changed at the intervals specified in your Maintenance booklet, so that the air conditioner can properly work.

If you drive your vehicle in an area with a high degree of air pollution, the filter may need to be changed more frequently than specified in your Audi Warranty & Maintenance booklet. If in doubt, ask your authorized Audi Service Advisor for advice.

Key recognition

The current climate control settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote key

Energy management

To prevent the battery from being discharged and to restore the balance of energy, components which require large amounts of energy are temporarily cut back or switched off ⇨ *page 203*. Heating systems in particular require a great deal of energy. If you notice, for example, that the rear window heater is not heating, then it has been temporarily cut back or switched off by **energy management**. These systems are available again as soon as the energy balance has been restored.

WARNING

Reduced visibility is dangerous and can cause accidents. ▸

– For safe driving it is very important that all windows be free of ice, snow and condensation.
– Completely familiarize yourself with the proper use and function of the heating and ventilation system and especially how to defog and defrost the windows.
– Never use the windshield wiper/washer system in freezing weather until you have warmed the windshield first, using the heating and ventilation system. The washer solution may freeze on the windshield and reduce visibility.

Note

– If you suspect that the climate control system has been damaged, switch the system off to avoid further damages, and have it inspected by a qualified dealership.
– Repairs to the Audi air conditioner require special technical knowledge and special tools. Contact an authorized Audi dealer for assistance.

Tips

– To avoid adversely affecting heating and cooling performance and to prevent condensation on the windows, the air intake in front of the windshield must be free of ice, snow and leaves.
– The air flowing out of the vents and throughout the vehicle's entire interior is discharged at the rear of the vehicle. Make sure that the outlet slots are not covered by clothing, etc.
– Climate control works most effectively if the windows and the Panoramic sliding sunroof* are closed. However, if the interior of a parked vehicle is extremely hot from the sun, briefly opening the windows can speed up the cooling process.

Controls

This overview will help you to familiarize yourself with the climate controls.



Fig. 99 Climate controls

The display shows the selected temperature for the driver's side on the left and the selected temperature for the front passenger's side on the right.

Functions are set by rotating the control or are switched on and off by tapping the buttons. The LED in the buttons illuminates when the function is active. ▶

Button(s)	Meaning
OFF	Turns on and off ⇨ *page 84*
AUTO	Automatic operation ⇨ *page 84*
Temperature regulator[a)]	Temperature selection ⇨ *page 84*
	Fan ⇨ *page 85*
	Recirculation mode ⇨ *page 85*
	Air distribution ⇨ *page 85*
	Defrost ⇨ *page 86*
	Rear window defogger ⇨ *page 86*
AC	Turns cooling system on and off ⇨ *page 86*
	Seat heating ⇨ *page 88*

a) The regulator is also used to set the fan speed, air distribution and seat heating.

Tips

The grille on the controls ⇨ *fig. 99* must remain unobstructed and must not be taped over. Measuring sensors are located behind it.

Turning the climate control on and off

Turning the climate control on

- ▸ Press OFF, or
- ▸ press AUTO.

Turning the climate control off

- ▸ Press the OFF button to turn the climate control off and to block the air supply from the outside.

The air conditioner turns back on when you press the **temperature regulator** or one of the buttons.

Automatic mode AUTO

The standard operating mode for all times of the year.

Turning on automatic mode

- ▸ Set the temperature between 60 °F (+16 °C) and 84 °F (+28 °C).
- ▸ Press AUTO.

Automatic mode ensures constant temperatures in the interior and dehumidifies the air inside the vehicle. Air temperature, volume and distribution are controlled automatically to reach or maintain the desired interior temperature as quickly as possible. Fluctuations in exterior temperature and the effects of temperature from the position of the sun are compensated for automatically.

This operating mode works only in an adjustable temperature range of 60°F (+16°C) to 84°F (+28°C). If you select a temperature lower than 60°F (+16°C), **low** will appear in the radio or MMI* display. At temperatures above 84°F (+28?), **high** is displayed. At both extreme settings, climate control runs continuously at maximum cooling or heating power. There is no temperature regulation.

Setting the temperature

The temperature can be set separately for the driver's side and front passenger's side.



Fig. 100 Temperature setting regulator

- ▸ Rotate the regulator to the left to reduce the temperature, or to the right to increase the temperature ⇨ *fig. 100*.

The selected temperature appears on the climate control display. The temperature setting will also appear for a few seconds in the radio or MMI* display.

Fan

The automatically preset fan speed can be reduced or increased.



Fig. 101 Fan button and regulator

- ▸ Press the button.
- ▸ Rotate the regulator to set the desired fan speed (air volume).

The climate control system automatically regulates fan speed based on the interior temperature. You can adjust the volume of air produced by the fan to your own requirements.

The fan speed setting will appear for a few seconds in the radio or MMI* display.

Tips

It is possible that the fan speed may change automatically. This occurs to ensure that the desired temperature setting is reached as quickly as possible.

Recirculation mode

The recirculation mode prevents polluted outside air from entering the vehicle interior.

Turning on recirculation mode

- ▸ Press the button ⇨ ⚠.

Turning off recirculation mode

- ▸ Press the button again, or
- ▸ press the AUTO button, or
- ▸ press the button.

In recirculation mode, air is drawn from the vehicle interior, filtered and recirculated. We recommend selecting recirculation mode under the following conditions:

When driving through a tunnel or in a traffic jam so that exhaust fumes and odors cannot enter the vehicle interior.

WARNING

You should not use the recirculation mode for an extended period since no fresh air is drawn in. With the air-conditioning switched off, the windows can fog up, which increases the risk of an accident!

Air distribution

The automatically preset air distribution can be changed.



Fig. 102 Air distribution button and regulator

- ▸ Press the button.
- ▸ Rotate the regulator to the desired setting.

You can adjust the air distribution so that air flows from specific vents. In position air flows only to the windows, in position , it flows to the driver or passenger, and in position it flows to the footwell. There are additional combinations available to adjust air distribution as needed.

To regulate air distribution automatically, switch to AUTO.

The air distribution setting will appear for a few seconds in the radio or MMI* display.

Defrost

The windshield and side windows are defrosted or cleared of condensation as quickly as possible.

- ▸ Press to turn on the defroster.
- ▸ Press the button again, or press the AUTO button to turn it off.

Temperature is controlled automatically. The maximum amount of air flows mainly from the vents below the windshield.

Pressing the button switches off recirculation mode.

Rear window defogger

The rear window defogger clears the rear window of condensation.

- ▸ Press the button to turn the rear window defogger on and off.

The rear window defogger works only when the engine is running. The indicator light in the button illuminates when the rear window defogger is on.

The rear window defogger is switched off automatically after 10 to 20 minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

The rear window defogger can be turned on permanently by pressing the button for more than two seconds. This remains stored until the ignition is switched off. A rear window defogger that was switched on also remains stored for 15 minutes after the ignition is switched off.

If the engine is restarted within these 15 minutes, the rear window defogger is activated for 10 to 20 minutes, depending on outside temperature. When a vehicle is parked for a short time, the rear window defogger does not need to be manually activated again.

For the sake of the environment

As soon as the rear window is clear, you should switch the rear window defogger off. The reduced power consumption has a beneficial effect on fuel consumption.

A/C mode AC

Turning A/C off

- ▸ Press the AC button.

Turning A/C on

- ▸ Press the AC button again.

The cooling system is turned on in A/C mode. The heating and ventilation system is controlled automatically.

Tips

If the light in the button stays on after you have switched off the air conditioning, then one of the components in the air conditioning system is faulty. Please consult a authorized dealership if there is an operating problem.

Air vents

Air distribution determines the air flow from the individual vents.

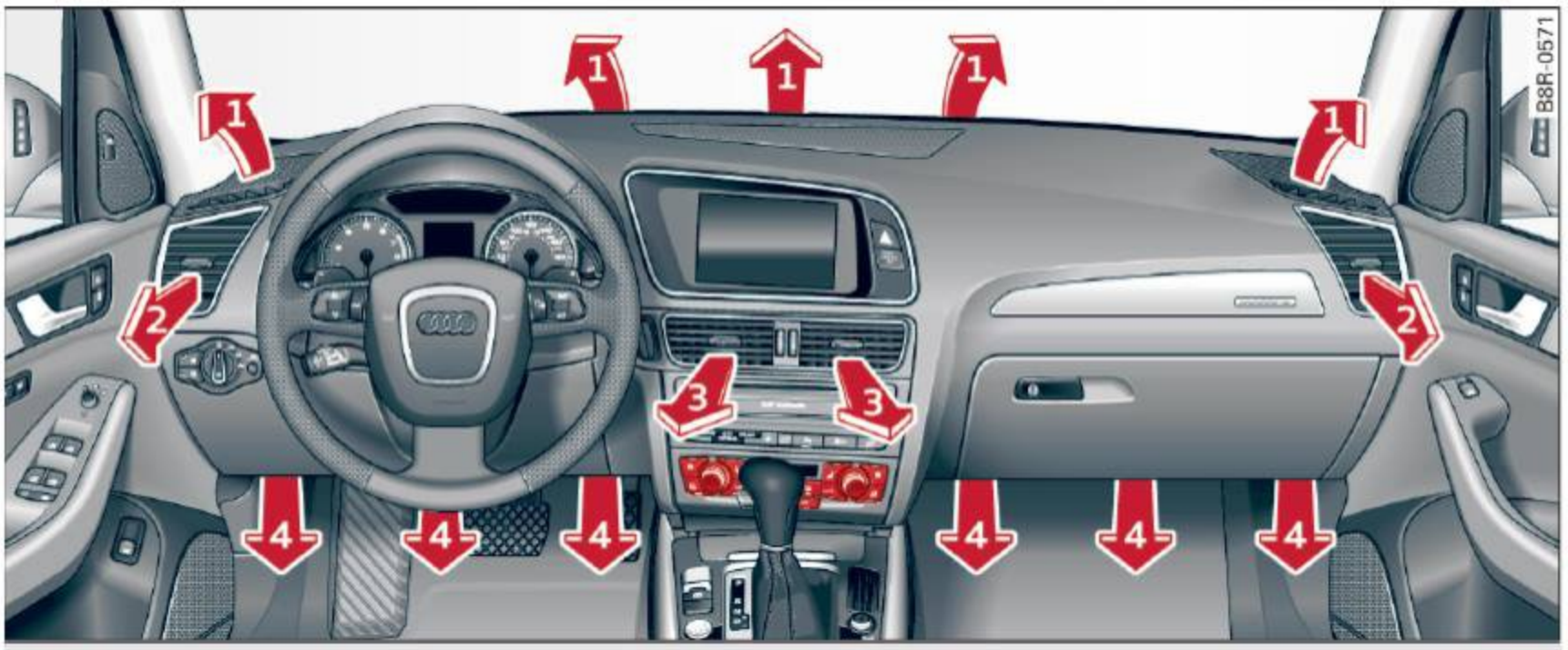


Fig. 103 Instrument panel: Location of air vents

Vents ② and ③

- ▸ Rotate the thumbwheel located next to the outlet to open or close it.
- ▸ To adjust the direction of the airflow from the outlet, move the tab in the center of the outlet in the desired direction. The direction of the air delivered from the vents can be adjusted horizontally and vertically.

The air outlets are actuated either automatically or manually depending on the operating mode selected. Heated or unheated fresh air or cooled air flows from vents ① through ④.

Tips

If the climate control is running in cooling mode, air flows mainly from vents ② and ③. To achieve adequate cooling, you should never close these vents completely.

Rear air vents

The rear air vents are located in the center console.

- ▸ Turn the left thumbwheel to open or close the vent.
- ▸ To adjust the direction of the air move the handle in the center of each vent. You can adjust the air flow horizontally and vertically.
- ▸ To raise or lower the air temperature, turn the right thumbwheel toward the red or blue marking.

The air vents are actuated either automatically or manually depending on the operating mode selected. Heated or unheated fresh air, or cooled air flows from the vents.

The air vents to heat the rear footwell are located under the front seats.

Tips

If the climate control is operating in cooling mode, air flows primarily from the vents in the center console. To achieve adequate cooling, you should never close these vents completely.

Economical use of the climate control system

Economical use of the climate control system helps save fuel.

When the climate control system is working in cooling mode, engine performance is reduced and fuel consumption is affected. To keep the time the climate control system is on as short as possible, you should do the following: ▸

- ▸ To save fuel, turn off cooling mode by pressing the AC button (indicator light goes out).
- ▸ In addition, if you open the window or the Panoramic sliding sunroof* while driving, turn off cooling mode by pressing the AC button (indicator light goes out).
- ▸ If the vehicle is extremely hot due to the heat of the sun, briefly open doors and windows.

For the sake of the environment

When you save fuel, you reduce emissions from the vehicle.

Basic settings

General information

The basic climate control settings can be adjusted in the radio or MMI.*

- ▸ Select: Function button CAR > Control button **AC**.

The following functions can be selected:

– Auto recirculat. ⇨ *page 88*
– Synchronization ⇨ *page 88*

Automatic recirculation

An air quality sensor detects increased concentrations of pollutants in the outside air and automatically switches to recirculation mode.

If the **air quality sensor** located in the climate control system detects polluted outside air, the sensor decides whether the air pollution can be reduced by the factory-installed pollutant filter or whether it is necessary to switch to recirculation. With heavy concentrations of pollutants, the climate control system is switched automatically to recirculation mode and the supply of outside air is blocked. As soon as the concentration of pollutants in the outside air drops, fresh air is supplied to the vehicle interior again.

In the event that the windows fog up during automatic recirculation, press the button immediately.

Under certain operating conditions, automatic recirculation is switched off automatically. When outside temperatures are below about 50 °F (+10 °C), automatic recirculation is limited to 30 seconds.

Synchronization

Setting for the driver seat and passenger seat.

After Synchronization is set to **On**, all of the subsequent climate control settings (except for seat heating*) for the driver are transferred to the front passenger.

Synchronization is canceled when settings are adjusted on the front passenger's side.

Seat heating

Front seat heating

Applies to vehicles: with front seat heating

The seat cushion and the seatback of the front seats can be heated electrically.



Fig. 104 Seat heating button and regulator

- ▸ Press the button.
- ▸ Rotate the regulator to the desired setting.

In position 0, seat heating is turned off. The control range is from 1 to 6.

The seat heating only works when the seat recognizes body weight on it. If no one is sitting on the front seats, then do not switch on the seat heating. ▶

Note

To avoid damage to the heating elements in the seats, do not kneel on the seats or place heavy loads on a small area of the seat.

Tips

Make sure that your packages do not exert weight on the seats. This weight could possible be enough and could switch on the seat heating.

On the road

Steering

Manually adjustable steering wheel

The height and reach of the steering wheel can be adjusted.



Fig. 105 Lever under the steering column

First, adjust the driver's seat correctly.

- ▸ Pull the lever ⇨ *fig. 105 -Arrow-* ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Move the steering wheel to the desired position.
- ▸ Push the lever against the steering column until it locks.

There must be at least 10 inches (25 cm) between your chest and the center of the steering wheel. If you cannot sit more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel, see if adaptive equipment is available to help you reach the pedals and increase the distance from the steering wheel.

For detailed information on how to adjust the driver's seat, see ⇨ *page 65*.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of steering wheel adjustment and improper seating position can cause serious personal injury.

– Adjust the steering wheel column only when the vehicle is not moving to prevent loss of vehicle control.
– Adjust the driver's seat or steering wheel so that there is a minimum of 10 inches (25 cm) between your chest and the steering wheel ⇨ *page 140, fig. 164*. If you cannot maintain this minimum distance, the airbag system cannot protect you properly.
– If physical limitations prevent you from sitting 10 inches (25 cm) or more from the steering wheel, check with your authorized Audi dealer to see if adaptive equipment is available.
– If the steering wheel is aligned with your face, the supplemental driver's airbag cannot provide as much protection in an accident. Always make sure that the steering wheel is aligned with your chest.
– Always hold the steering wheel with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag deploys.
– Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag deploys.

Ignition lock and ignition switch

Starting engine with the key

The ignition is switched on and the engine started with the ignition key.



Fig. 106 Ignition key

- ▸ Insert the key into the ignition lock.
- ▸ Step on the brake pedal and move the selector lever to the P or N position.
- ▸ **Press** the key ⇨ *fig. 106* - the engine will start.

▶

By pressing the key **without** stepping on the brake, the ignition is switched on and off. With the ignition on, the steering wheel is unlocked.

You can only remove the key with the ignition switched off. To do this, you have to press on the key again. With an automatic transmission, the selector lever must be in the P position.

When starting the engine, major electrical loads are switched off temporarily.

After starting a cold engine, there may be a brief period of increased noise because the oil pressure must first build up in the hydraulic valve adjusters. This is normal and not a cause for concern.

If the engine should not start immediately, the starting process is automatically stopped after a short time. Repeat starting procedure.

Driver message in the instrument cluster display

Press brake pedal to start engine

This message appears if you do not step on the brake pedal to start the engine on a vehicle with an automatic transmission.

Engage N or P to start engine

This message appears when attempting to start the engine if the selector lever for the automatic transmission is not in the P or N position. The engine can only be started with the selector in these positions.

Shift to P, otherwise vehicle can roll away. Doors do not lock if lever is not in P.

This message appears for safety reasons along with a warning signal. It appears if the selector lever for the automatic transmission is not in the P position after the ignition is switched off. Move the selector lever to the P position, otherwise the vehicle is not secured against rolling away. You also cannot lock the vehicle using the locking button* on the door handle or using the remote key.

WARNING

- Always take the key with you whenever you leave your vehicle. Otherwise, the engine could be started or electrical equipment such as the power windows could be operated. This can lead to serious injury.
- Never leave children or persons requiring assistance unattended in the vehicle. The doors can be locked using the remote transmitter, preventing people from escaping from the vehicle on their own in the event of an emergency. Depending on the time of year, people inside the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.
- Never remove the ignition key from the ignition look while the vehicle is moving. Otherwise, the steering lock could suddenly engage and you would not be able to steer the vehicle.

Note

- In the event of a malfunction in the electronic ignition lock a symbol in the instrument cluster flashes with the message **Ignition lock defective**.
- Avoid high engine speeds, fast acceleration or heavy engine loads while the engine is still cold. This could damage the engine.

For the sake of the environment

To avoid unnecessary engine wear and to reduce exhaust emissions, do not let your vehicle stand and warm up. Be ready to drive off immediately after starting your vehicle. Maintain moderate speed until the engine is completely warm. Remember, the engine performs best at operating temperature.

Tips

- If the key cannot be removed from the ignition lock, you have to pull the mechanical key out of the master key in order to be able to lock the vehicle. The ▶

vehicle can be locked with the mechanical key ⇨ *page 39*.

– If you open the driver's door with the ignition switched on, a buzzer sounds and the message **Ignition is on** appears in the instrument cluster display. Switch the ignition off.

Stopping the engine

▸ Bring the vehicle to a full stop.
▸ Move the selector lever to the P or N position.
▸ **Press** on the ignition key. The engine is turned off.

Emergency off

If it is necessary in unusual circumstances, the engine can be switched off while the vehicle is moving. The engine will be switched off if you press on the key for an extended period.

WARNING

– Never turn off the engine until the vehicle has come to a complete stop.
– The brake booster and servotronic only work when the engine is running. With the ignition turned off, you have to apply more force when steering or braking. Since you cannot steer and stop normally, this can lead to accidents and serious injuries.
– The radiator fan can continue to run for up to 10 minutes even after you have turned off the engine and removed the ignition key. The radiator fan can also turn on again if the engine coolant heats up because of intense sunlight or heat build-up in the engine compartment.

Note

Do not stop the engine immediately after hard or extended driving. Keep the engine running for approximately two minutes to prevent excessive heat build-up.

Starting and stopping the engine with Convenience key

Starting the engine with the START ENGINE STOP button

Applies to vehicles: with Convenience key

This button switches on the ignition and starts the engine.



Fig. 107 Convenience key: START ENGINE STOP button

▸ Step on the brake pedal and move the selector lever to P or N ⇨ ⚠.
▸ **Press** on the START ENGINE STOP button ⇨ *fig. 107* - the engine will start.

By pressing the START ENGINE STOP button without depressing the brake peal, the ignition is switched on and switched off by pressing it again.

If the engine does not start immediately, stop trying after 10 seconds and then try to restart the engine about 30 seconds later.

After a cold engine is started, there may be a brief period of increased noise because oil pressure must first build up in the hydraulic valve adjusters. This is normal and not a cause for concern.

Driver message in the instrument cluster display

No key identified

This message appears when the START ENGINE STOP button is pressed if there is no master key inside the vehicle or if the system does not recognize it. For example, the master key cannot be recognized if it is covered by an object (e.g. aluminum brief ▶

case) which *screens* the radio signal. Electronic devices such as cell phones can also interfere with the radio signal.

Press brake pedal to start engine

This message appears if you press the START ENGINE STOP button to start the engine and do not depress the brake pedal. The engine can only be started if the brake pedal is depressed.

Engage N or P to start engine

This message appears when attempting to start the engine if the selector lever for the automatic transmission is not in the P or N position. The engine can only be started with the selector in these positions.

Key not in vehicle

This message appears along with the symbol if the master key is removed from the vehicle with the engine running. It is intended to remind you (e.g. when changing drivers) not to continue the journey without the master key.

If the master key is no longer in the vehicle, you cannot switch on the ignition after stopping the engine and you also cannot start the engine again. Moreover, you cannot lock the vehicle from the outside with the key.

Shift to P, otherwise vehicle can roll away. Doors do not lock if lever is not in P.

This message appears for safety reasons along with a warning signal. It appears if the selector lever for the automatic transmission is not in the P position when switching off the ignition with the START ENGINE STOP button. Move the selector lever to the P position, otherwise the vehicle is not secured against rolling away. You also cannot lock the vehicle using the locking button on the door handle or using the remote key.

Convenience key defective ! Use ignition lock

This message appears when the engine must be started or shut off using the ignition key and not with the START ENGINE STOP button.

WARNING

- Never allow the engine to run in confined spaces - danger of asphyxiation.
- Never turn off the engine until the vehicle has come to a complete stop.
- The brake booster and servotronic only work when the engine is running. With the ignition turned off, you have to apply more force when steering or braking. Since you cannot steer and stop normally, this can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

Note

- Avoid high engine rpm, full throttle and heavy engine loads until the engine has reached operating temperature - otherwise you risk engine damage.
- The engine cannot be started by pushing or towing the vehicle.

Tips

If you open the driver's door with the ignition switched on, a buzzer sounds and the message **Ignition is on** appears in the instrument cluster display. Switch the ignition off.

Switching engine off with the START ENGINE STOP button

Applies to vehicles: with Convenience key

- ▸ Bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
- ▸ Move the selector lever to the P or N position.
- ▸ **Press** the START ENGINE STOP button ⇨ *page 92, fig. 107*.

Emergency OFF function

If necessary, the engine can be switched off with the selector lever in the R, D or S* positions. To do so, step on the brake pedal and press and hold the START ENGINE STOP button (vehicle speed must be less than 6 mph / 10 km/h. ▶

WARNING

- Never turn off the engine until the vehicle has come to a complete stop.
- The brake booster and servotronic only work when the engine is running. With the ignition turned off, you have to apply more force when steering or braking. Since you cannot steer and stop normally, this can lead to accidents and serious injuries.
- For safety reasons, you should always park your vehicle with the selector lever in P. Otherwise, the vehicle could inadvertently roll away.
- After the engine has been switched off, the radiator fan can continue to run for up to 10 minutes - even with the ignition switched off. It can also switch on again after some time if the coolant temperature rises as the result of a heat buildup or if the engine is hot and the engine compartment is additionally heated by the sun's rays.

Note

If the engine has been under heavy load for an extended period, heat builds up in the engine compartment after the engine is switched off - there is a risk of damaging the engine. Allow the engine to run at idle for about 2 minutes before switching it off.

Electromechanical parking brake

Operation

The electromechanical parking brake replaces the hand brake.



Fig. 108 Center console: Parking brake

- ▸ Pull on the switch ⇨ *fig. 108* to apply the parking brake. The indicator light in the switch illuminates.
- ▸ Step on the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal and press the switch at the same time to release the parking brake. The indicator light in the switch goes out.

Your vehicle is equipped with an electromechanical parking brake. The parking brake is designed to prevent the vehicle from rolling unintentionally and replaces the hand brake.

In addition to the normal functions of a traditional hand brake, the electromechanical parking brake provides various convenience and safety functions.

When starting from rest

- The integral starting assist helps you when driving by automatically releasing the parking brake ⇨ *page 95, Starting from rest*.
- When starting on inclines, the starting assist prevents the vehicle from unintentionally rolling back. The braking force of the parking brake is not released until sufficient driving force has been built up at the wheels. ▶

Emergency brake function

An emergency brake ensures that the vehicle can be slowed down even if the *normal* brakes fail ⇨ *page 96, Emergency braking*.

Indicator lights

– If the parking brake is closed with the ignition **switched on** the indicator lights come on PARK BRAKE (USA models)/(P) (Canada models) in the instrument cluster and the switch.
– If the parking brake is closed with the ignition **switched off** the indicator lights come on PARK BRAKE (USA models)/(P) (Canada models) in the instrument cluster and the switch for about 20 seconds.

WARNING

If a drive range is engaged with the vehicle stationary and the engine running, you must in no instance accelerate carelessly. Otherwise the vehicle will start to move immediately - risk of an accident.

Note

If the symbol (!) in the display or the indicator light BRAKE (USA models)/(!) (Canada models) in the instrument cluster flashes, there is a malfunction in the brake system. By pressing the SET button, you can bring up a driver message which explains the malfunction in more detail. If the driver message **Parking brake ! Please contact workshop** appears, there is an operating malfunction in the parking brake which you should have repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or other qualified workshop ⇨ *page 30*.

Tips

– You can apply the parking brake at any time - even with the ignition turned off. The ignition must be turned on in order to release the parking brake.
– Occasional noises when the parking brake is applied and released are normal and are not a cause for concern.
– When the vehicle is parked, the parking brake goes through a self-test cycle at regular intervals. Any associated noises are normal.

Parking

Various rules apply to prevent the parked vehicle from rolling away accidentally.

Parking

▸ Stop the vehicle with the foot brake.
▸ Pull the switch to apply the parking brake.
▸ Move the selector lever to P.
▸ Turn the engine off ⇨ (!).

In addition on inclines and grades

▸ Turn the steering wheel so that your vehicle will roll against the curb in case it should start to move.

WARNING

– When you leave your vehicle - even if only briefly - always remove the ignition key. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise the children could start the engine, release the parking brake or operate electrical equipment (e.g. power windows). There is the risk of an accident.
– When the vehicle is locked, no one - particularly not children should remain in the vehicle. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to get into the vehicle - putting lives at risk.

Starting from rest

The starting assist function ensures that the parking brake is released automatically upon starting.

Stopping and applying parking brake

▸ Pull the switch to apply the parking brake. ▶

Starting and automatically releasing the parking brake

- When you start to drive as usual, the parking brake is automatically released and your vehicle begins to move.

When stopping at a traffic signal or stopping in city traffic on vehicles with an automatic transmission, the parking brake can be applied. The vehicle does not have to be held with the footbrake. The parking brake eliminates the tendency to creep with a drive range engaged. As soon as you drive off as usual, the parking brake is released automatically and the vehicle starts to move.

Starting on slopes

When starting on inclines, the starting assist prevents the vehicle from unintentionally rolling back. The braking force of the parking brake is not released until sufficient driving force has been built up at the wheels.

Tips

For safety reasons, the parking brake is released automatically only when the driver's safety belt is engaged in the buckle.

Starting off with a trailer

To prevent rolling back unintentionally on an incline, do the following:

- Keep the switch pulled and depress the accelerator. The parking brake stays applied and prevents the vehicle from rolling backward.
- You can release the switch once you are sure that you are developing enough driving force at the wheels by depressing the accelerator.

Depending on the weight of the rig (vehicle and trailer) and the severity of the incline, you may roll backwards as you start. You can prevent rolling backwards by holding the parking brake switch pulled out and accelerating - just as you would when starting on a hill with a conventional hand brake.

Emergency braking

In the event that the conventional brake system fails or locks.

- In an emergency, pull the switch and continue to pull it to slow your vehicle down with the parking brake.
- As soon as you release the switch or accelerate, the braking process stops.

If you pull the switch and hold it above a speed of about 5 mph (8 km/h), the emergency braking function is initiated. The vehicle is braked at all four wheels by activating the hydraulic brake system. The brake performance is similar to making an emergency stop ⇨ ⚠.

In order not to activate the emergency braking by mistake, an audible warning tone (buzzer) sounds when the switch is pulled. As soon as the switch is released, or the accelerator pedal is depressed, emergency braking stops.

WARNING

Emergency braking should only be used in an emergency, when the normal foot brake has failed or the brake pedal is obstructed. Using the parking brake to perform emergency braking will slow your vehicle down as if you had made a full brake application. The laws of physics cannot be suspended even with ESP and its associated components (ABS, ASR, EDS). In corners and when road or weather conditions are bad, a full brake application can cause the vehicle to skid or the rear end to break away - risking an accident.

Driver messages in the instrument cluster

Caution: Vehicle parked too steep

This message appears when the parking brake is applied on an incline that exceeds about 30%.

In this case the braking power of the parking brake may **not be adequate** to prevent the vehicle from rolling unintentionally. ▶

Press brake pedal to release parking brake

This driver message appears when the switch to release the parking brake was pressed. The parking brake can only be released if you step on the brake pedal and at the same time press the switch or you automatically release the parking brake with the starting assist ⇨ *page 95*.

Parking brake malfunction!

This driver message appears together with the yellow symbol when there is a parking brake malfunction.

Cruise control

Switching on

The cruise control system makes it possible to drive at a constant speed starting at 20 mph (30 km/h).



Fig. 109 Control lever with push-button

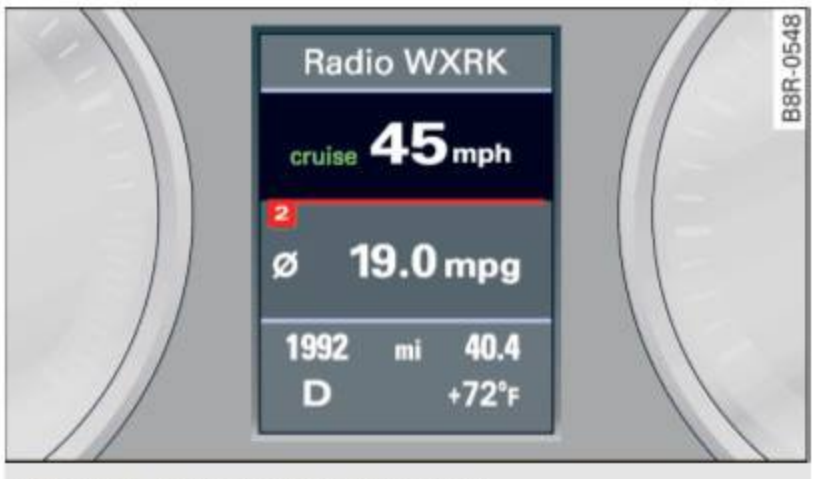


Fig. 110 Display: Selected speed

- ▸ Pull the lever to position (1) ⇨ *fig. 109* to switch the system on.
- ▸ Drive at the speed to be controlled.
- ▸ Press button (A) to set that speed.

The stored speed and the green symbol CRUISE (US model)/ (Canadian model) are shown in the display ⇨ *fig. 110*. The display may vary, depending on the type of display in your vehicle. The indicator light CRUISE (US model)/ (Canadian model) will also light up in the instrument cluster.

The speed is kept constant by modifying engine power or through an active brake intervention.

WARNING

- – Always pay attention to the traffic around you when the cruise control is in operation. You are always responsible for your speed and the distance between your vehicle and other vehicles.
- – For reasons of safety, cruise control should not be used in the city, in stop-and-go traffic, on twisting roads and when road conditions are poor (such as ice, fog, gravel, heavy rain and hydroplaning) - you could have an accident.
- – Switch the cruise control off temporarily when driving in turning lanes, highway exits or in construction zones.
- – Please note that unconsciously “resting” your foot on the accelerator pedal causes cruise control not to brake. This is due to the control system being overridden by the driver's acceleration.
- – Never use the cruise control when driving off-road or on unpaved roads. The cruise control is intended for use only when the vehicle is being operated on paved roads, and is not suitable for use off-road or on unpaved roads.
- – If a brake system malfunction such as overheating occurs when the cruise control system is switched on, the braking function in the system may be switched off. The other cruise control functions remain active as long as the indicator light CRUISE (US model)/ (Canadian model) is on.

Tips

The brake lights illuminate as soon as the brakes apply automatically.

Changing speed

- ▸ Press the lever in the direction of the (+) ⇨ *page 97, fig. 109* or in the direction of the (-) to increase or decrease your speed.
- ▸ Let go of the lever to save that speed.

Change speed in increments of 1 mph (1 km/h) by lightly pressing the lever. If you keep the lever pressed down, you will alter your speed in 5 mph (10 km/h) increments.

You can also press the accelerator pedal down to increase your speed, e.g. if you want to pass someone. The speed you saved earlier will resume as soon as you let off of the accelerator pedal.

If, however, you exceed your saved speed by 5 mph (10 km/h) for longer than 5 minutes, the cruise control will be turned off temporarily. The green symbol in the display turns white, the saved speed is retained.

Pre-selecting speed

You can pre-select your desired speed while the vehicle is not moving.

- ▸ Turn on the ignition.
- ▸ Pull lever into position (1) ⇨ *page 97, fig. 109*.
- ▸ Press the lever in the (+) or (-) direction to increase or decrease your speed.
- ▸ Let go of the lever to save that speed.

This function makes it possible, for example, to save the speed you want before driving on the highway. Once on the highway, activate the cruise control by pulling the lever toward (1).

Switching off

Temporary deactivation

- ▸ Step on the brake pedal, or
- ▸ Press the lever into position (2) (not clicked into place) ⇨ *page 97, fig. 109*, or
- ▸ Drive for longer than 5 minutes at more than 5 mph (10 km/h) above the stored speed.

Switching off completely

- ▸ Press lever into position (2) (clicked into place), or
- ▸ Switch the ignition off.

The speed you saved will be retained if the cruise control has been switched off temporarily. To resume the saved speed, let up on the brake and pull the lever to position (1).

The saved speed will be erased after turning the ignition off.

WARNING

You should only resume the saved speed if it is not too high for existing traffic conditions. Otherwise you risk an accident.

Adaptive cruise control

Speed and distance control system

Description

Applies to vehicles: with adaptive cruise control

The adaptive cruise control driver assistance program is a combined speed and distance control system.



Fig. 111 Front bumper: Position of radar sensor

Any speed between about 20 mph (30 km/h) and about 95 mph (150 km/h) can be set and held with the adaptive cruise control. The system also regulates a pre-set distance from the vehicle ahead within the limits of the system described.

Driving can be more relaxed, particularly on long trips on interstates or on other highways that are generally straight.

How does it work?

You can operate the adaptive cruise control using the lever on the steering wheel column ⇨ *page 101, How is the speed stored?* and ⇨ *page 103, How is the distance (time interval) set?*.

Driver information

Important information is brought up in the speedometer and in the instrument cluster display as the vehicle is being driven ⇨ *page 104, Driver information*.

What is important for you to know

The adaptive cruise control is set with system-specified limits, that is, as a driver, you will have to adjust the speed and distance to the vehicle ahead in some instances ⇨ *page 108, Driver intervention prompt* and ⇨ *page 108, System limitations*.

WARNING

Improper use of the adaptive cruise control can cause collisions, other accidents and serious personal injury.

- Never drive at speeds that are too high for traffic, road and weather conditions.
- Never follow the vehicle in front so closely that you cannot stop your vehicle safely. The adaptive cruise control cannot brake the vehicle safely when you follow another vehicle too closely. Always remember that the adaptive cruise control has a braking power that is only about 25% of the vehicle's maximum braking ability, the automatic braking function cannot bring the vehicle to a stop.
- Never use adaptive cruise control on roads where you cannot drive safely at a steady speed, including city, stop-and-go or heavy traffic, on winding roads or when road conditions are poor (for example, on ice, gravel, in fog, heavy rain or on wet roads that increase the risk of hydroplaning).
- The radar sensor's *vision* can be reduced by rain, snow and heavy spray. This can result in vehicles driving ahead being inadequately detected or, in some circumstances, not detected at all. If necessary, take action yourself!
- Always turn off adaptive cruise control when entering turn lanes, highway exit lanes and construction zones or similar situations because the vehicle will automatically accelerate to the stored speed.
- Never rest your foot on the accelerator pedal, especially when the adaptive cruise control is being used because doing so will override the braking function and prevent the brakes from being applied by the system when it detects a situation when the brakes must be applied.
- Always remember that the adaptive cruise control has limits – it does not ▶

react when you drive towards an obstacle or something else on or near the road that is not moving, such as vehicles stopped in a traffic jam, a stalled or disabled vehicle.
– Always remember that the adaptive cruise control cannot detect a vehicle that is driving towards you in your traffic lane and that it cannot detect narrow vehicles such as motorcycles and bicycles.

Tips

– For safety reasons, the stored speed is deleted when the ignition is turned off.
– The Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP) and the Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR) cannot be deactivated when the adaptive cruise control is switched on. If the ESP and the Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR) has been deactivated and you then switch on the adaptive cruise control, the ESP function will also be activated automatically.
– Damage caused by accidents (e.g. if the vehicle is damaged when parking) can affect the radar sensor settings. This can cause the system to malfunction or switch off completely.
– The radar sensor cover is heated. In winter conditions, you should still check before driving to make sure it is free of ice and snow. If necessary, clean the area near the radar sensor carefully ⇨ *fig. 111*.
– To ensure that the radar sensor is not blocked, foreign objects (e.g. stickers, add-on parts) must not cover the area near the radar sensor ⇨ *fig. 111*. The area near the radar sensor must not be painted, either.
– For Declaration of Compliance to United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations ⇨ *page 294*.

How does adaptive cruise control work?

Applies to vehicles: with adaptive cruise control

Vehicles traveling ahead are detected with the aid of a radar sensor.

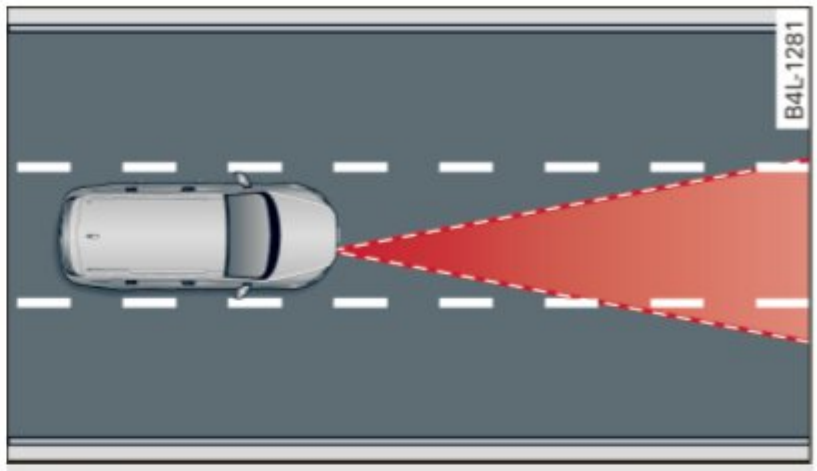


Fig. 112 Radar sensor measurement range

A radar sensor is built into the front of the vehicle ⇨ *fig. 112*, which is subject to certain system limits ⇨ *page 108*. Stationary objects are not taken into consideration. The system is intended to measure the distance to reflective surfaces. The system responds after the distance measurement has taken place. If a measurement is not possible, the system does not respond.

Open road

When the road is clear, the adaptive cruise control works like cruise control. It maintains a constant target speed specified by the driver.

Driving in traffic

If a vehicle driving ahead is detected, the adaptive cruise control decelerates (within the limits of the system) ⇨ *page 108, Driver intervention prompt* and ⇨ *page 108, System limitations* to its speed and after adjusting, tries to maintain the set distance from the vehicle ahead. The vehicle may temporarily drive slower than the set speed while adjusting ⇨ ⚠ *in Description on page 99*.

If the vehicle in front accelerates, adaptive cruise control also accelerates up to the speed that you have set.

Situation requiring driver intervention

In some situations you will have to use the footbrake to slow the vehicle down in order to ▶

keep a safe distance from vehicle in front of you or to avoid a rear-end collision. In this situation, a symbol appears and a warning tone sounds ⇨ *page 108*.

Passing another vehicle

If you move into the passing lane and no vehicle is detected ahead, the adaptive cruise control accelerates to the speed you have set and maintains it.

Override

You can increase your speed at any time by stepping on the accelerator pedal. After you release the accelerator pedal, the system adjusts back down to the speed you previously set.

Tips

Please note that the amount of acceleration the adaptive cruise control uses depends on the Distance setting selected. DISTANCE 1 gives you acceleration that is dynamic and sporty. DISTANCE 4, on the other hand, gives more moderate acceleration. For more information about the time intervals ⇨ *page 103, How is the distance (time interval) set?*.

– Please note that if the adaptive cruise control has begun braking the vehicle and the driver chooses to brake the vehicle additionally, the brakes may feel “hard”. This is simply due to the pressure build-up of the initial braking.
– Adaptive cruise control is switched off after pressing the footbrake. The speed saved up this point can be resumed. To resume the saved speed, release the brake pedal and pull the control lever ⇨ *page 102, Turning adaptive cruise control off temporarily*.

Switching the system on and off

Applies to vehicles: with adaptive cruise control

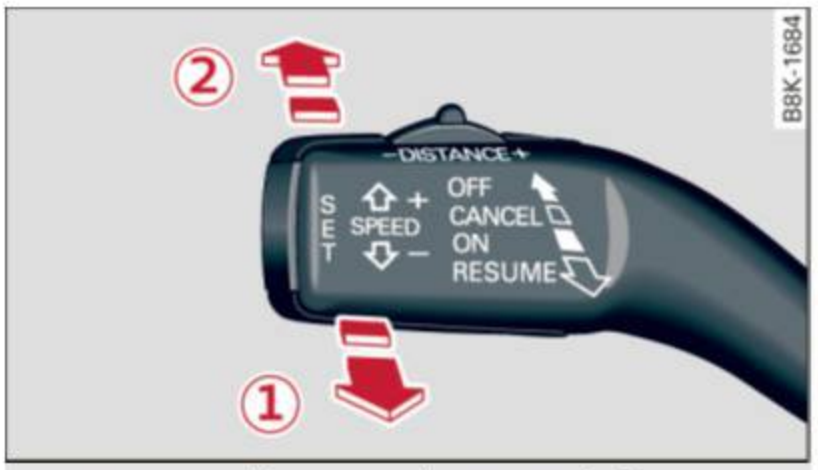


Fig. 113 Control lever: Switching on and off

Switching the system on

▸ Pull the lever to position (1) ⇨ *fig. 113*.

Switching the system off

▸ Press the lever to position (2) (latched).

How is the speed stored?

Applies to vehicles: with adaptive cruise control

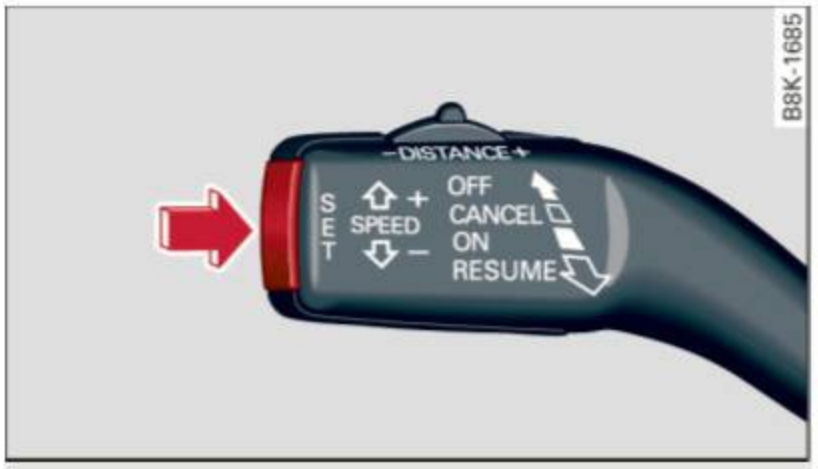


Fig. 114 Control lever: Storing speed

With **the system switched on** the speed is stored as follows:

▸ Drive at the speed you want. The speed must be between 20 and 95 mph (30 and 150 km/h).
▸ Press the SET button ⇨ *fig. 114* to store the desired speed.

After the SET button is released, the current speed is stored and maintained.

The saved speed is now shown in the LED display in the speedometer by one or two illuminated red light diodes ⇨ *page 105*. At the same time, the saved speed is also shown for a short time in the Information line ⇨ *page 106*. ▶

Tips

For safety reasons, the stored speed is deleted when the ignition is turned off.

Changing stored speed

Applies to vehicles: with adaptive cruise control

The speed can be changed without touching the accelerator or brake pedal.

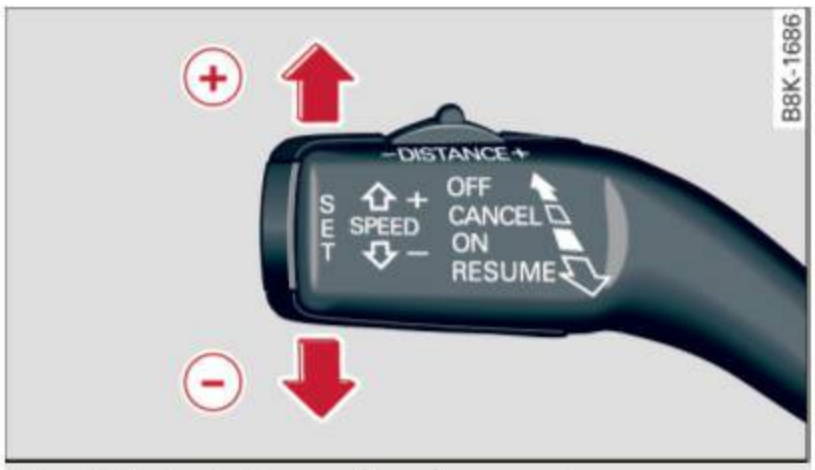


Fig. 115 Control lever: Changing speed

Increasing speed

- ▸ Press the lever **briefly** upwards ⊕ ⇨ *fig. 115*. USA models: the speed increases by about 2.5 mph. Canada models: speed will increase by one mark on the speedometer scale.
- ▸ Press the lever upwards ⊕ and **hold** it. As long as you hold the control switch down, the light diode display in the speedometer LED display in the speedometer moves forward and the speed is increased.

Reducing speed

- ▸ Press the lever downwards **briefly** ⊖. USA models: the speed decreases by 2.5 mph. Canada models: speed will decrease by one mark on the speedometer scale.
- ▸ Press the lever downwards ⊖ and **hold** it. As long as you hold the control switch down, the light diode display in the speedometer LED display moves backward and the speed is reduced.

After releasing the control switch, the system regulates the speed to the value just set.

After each adjustment, the newly-set speed is shown for a short time in the Information line ⇨ *page 106*.

Tips

You can increase your speed at any time by stepping on the accelerator pedal. After you release the accelerator pedal, the system adjusts back down to the speed you previously set. A new desired speed can be stored at any time by pressing the SET button ⇨ *page 101, fig. 114*.

Turning adaptive cruise control off temporarily

Applies to vehicles: with adaptive cruise control

In some situations it makes sense to turn adaptive cruise control off temporarily.



Fig. 116 Control lever: Turning adaptive cruise control off temporarily

Turning control off temporarily

- ▸ To shut off the control with the save function, either depress the brake pedal, or
- ▸ Press the lever in the direction of the arrow ② ⇨ *fig. 116*.

Reactivating control

- ▸ To resume the saved speed, release the brake pedal and press the lever in the direction of the arrow ①.

WARNING

Improper use of the adaptive cruise control can cause collisions, other accidents and serious personal injuries. Never resume the stored speed if the speed is too high for prevailing road, traffic or weather conditions. ▶

Tips

When the system is turned off temporarily, the speed stored at the time is retained.

How is the distance (time interval) set?

Applies to vehicles: with adaptive cruise control

Distance can be set in four stages.

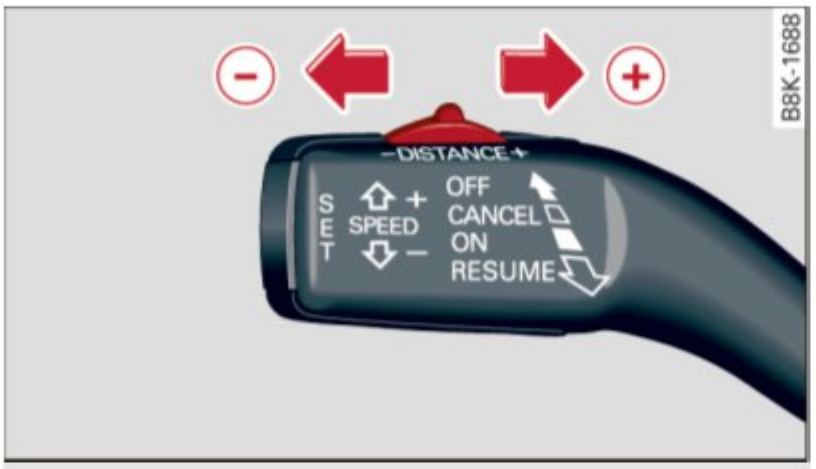


Fig. 117 Control lever: Setting distance

- Push the slider switch **once** to the right ⊕ or to the left ⊖ ⇨ *fig. 117*. The distance currently set is shown for 3 seconds in the instrument cluster display.
- Push the slider switch **again** to the right ⊕ or to the left ⊖ to increase or to decrease the distance by one step.

Select distance

The distance at which the adaptive cruise control follows a vehicle in front is determined by *time* intervals. A time interval to a vehicle in front is established and maintained. This produces a speed-dependent interval. The higher the speed, the greater the safety interval in yards (meters) ⇨ ⚠.

The distances provided are specified values. These distances may exceed or fall short of these target distances, depending on the driving situation and the driving style of the vehicle ahead.

Distance 1

This setting is ideal for brisk driving in bumper-to-bumper traffic. The distance is one second. This is the equivalent of, for instance,

– a distance of 36 feet (11 meters) at a speed of 25 mph (40 km/h)
– a distance of 72 feet (22 meters) at a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h)
– a distance of 108 feet (33 meters) at a speed of 75 mph (120 km/h)

Distance 2

This setting is ideal for "keeping pace" comfortably in bumper-to-bumper traffic. The distance is 1.3 seconds. This is the equivalent of, for instance,

– a distance of 46 feet (14 meters) at a speed of 25 mph (40 km/h)
– a distance of 95 feet (29 meters) at a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h)
– a distance of 144 feet (44 meters) at a speed of 75 mph (120 km/h)

Distance 3

This setting is ideal for "keeping pace" in bumper-to-bumper traffic and is the equivalent of the generally recommended distance that is "half of the speedometer speed". The distance is 1.8 seconds. This is the equivalent of, for instance,

– a distance of 66 feet (20 meters) at a speed of 25 mph (40 km/h)
– a distance of 131 feet (40 meters) at a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h)
– a distance of 197 feet (60 meters) at a speed of 75 mph (120 km/h)

Distance 4

This setting is ideal for secondary road traffic. The distance is 2.3 seconds. This is the equivalent of, for instance,

– a distance of 82 feet (25 meters) at a speed of 25 mph (40 km/h)
– a distance of 167 feet (51 meters) at a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h)
– a distance of 249 feet (76 meters) at a speed of 75 mph (120 km/h)

You can set the way your vehicle performs in ACC mode when accelerating and braking in the radio or MMI* ⇨ *page 108*. Depending on the driving program and distance you select, ▶

your vehicle's acceleration and braking can range from dynamic (1) to comfortable (5).

Driving program	dynamic	standard	comfort
Distance 1	1	2	3
Distance 2	2	3	4
Distance 3	2	3	4
Distance 4	3	4	5

WARNING

When setting the distance, the driver is responsible for adhering to the respective national and country-specific regulations.

- Following other vehicles too closely increases the risk of collisions and serious personal injury.
- Setting short distances to the traffic ahead reduces the time and distance available to bring your vehicle to a safe stop and makes it even more necessary to pay close attention to traffic.
- Always use good judgment and select a safe following distance for the traffic, road and weather conditions.

Tips

The distance setting is reset to the factory default **DISTANCE 3** the next time the ignition is turned on.

Driver information

Displays in the instrument cluster

Applies to vehicles: with adaptive cruise control

Depending on the driving situation, driver information is displayed in the instrument cluster.



Fig. 118 Overview instrument cluster

Ⓐ Speedometer and indicator light display

Ⓑ Display in the instrument cluster

Ⓒ Message in the instrument cluster display

Ⓐ Speedometer and indicator light display

Important information concerning vehicle operation with adaptive cruise control is shown in display area Ⓐ. The desired speed you set is indicated in the speedometer (LED lights around the edge).

The indicator lights show whether the system has detected a vehicle traveling ahead.

Ⓑ Display in the instrument cluster

In display area Ⓑ information from the navigation system* and the trip computer is displayed in addition to information about adaptive cruise control.

You can select among the different information by repeated brief taps on the RESET button on the windshield wiper lever ⇨ *page 24, Operation*.

Ⓒ Status indicator

The information in area Ⓒ is not displayed permanently. Information is displayed only if you set or change the speed setting, change ▶

the time interval, when messages are displayed or if the adaptive cruise control is turned off for safety reasons.

Speedometer and indicator light display

Applies to vehicles: with adaptive cruise control

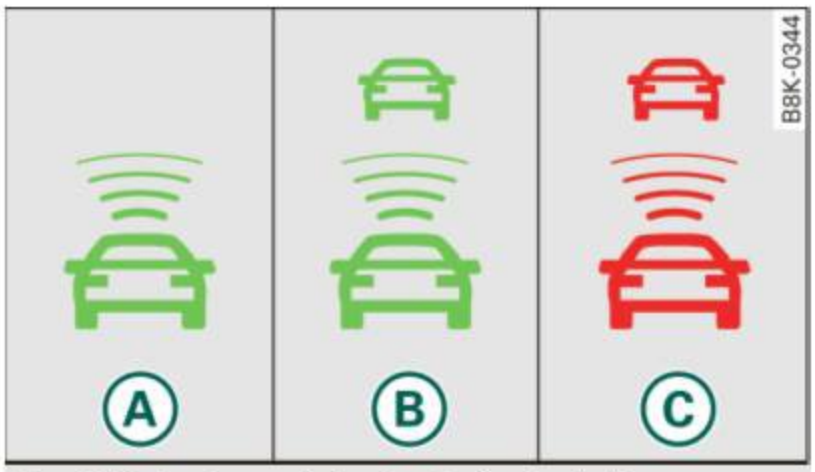


Fig. 119 Instrument cluster: Indicator light

Desired speed

The desired speed set by the driver is displayed by a red LED in the LED display in the speedometer.

If the desired speed was set between two lines on the speedometer using the SET button, the two closest light diodes will come on ⇨ *page 104, fig. 118*.

The system allows only speeds from 20 to 95 mph (30 to 150 km/h) to be set. This speed range is faintly illuminated in the speedometer (LED lights).

Indicator lights (symbols)

- Ⓐ **Open road:** The indicator light shows that adaptive cruise control is active and that no object is ahead of the vehicle. A stored speed requested is maintained.
- Ⓑ **Driving in traffic:** The indicator light indicates that an object has been detected traveling in front. Your speed is adjusted according to the speed of the vehicle in front. The adaptive cruise control accelerates and brakes automatically within the system's operation parameters.
- Ⓒ **Driver intervention prompt:** The red flashing warning light means **Request for driver to assume control**. You as the driver must slow the vehicle with the foot brake. The symbol tells you that the adaptive cruise control is not able to slow the vehicle down enough to keep a enough distance to the vehicle in front of you. An warning tone will also sound when the symbol appears. For more information about the driver intervention prompt ⇨ *page 108*.

Tips

- If you use the accelerator to go faster than the speed of the object ahead of you, the **driver intervention prompt** will not be accompanied by a warning signal.
- If the speed you previously set is exceeded, the indicator light in the speedometer will switch off.

Display in the instrument cluster

Applies to vehicles: with adaptive cruise control

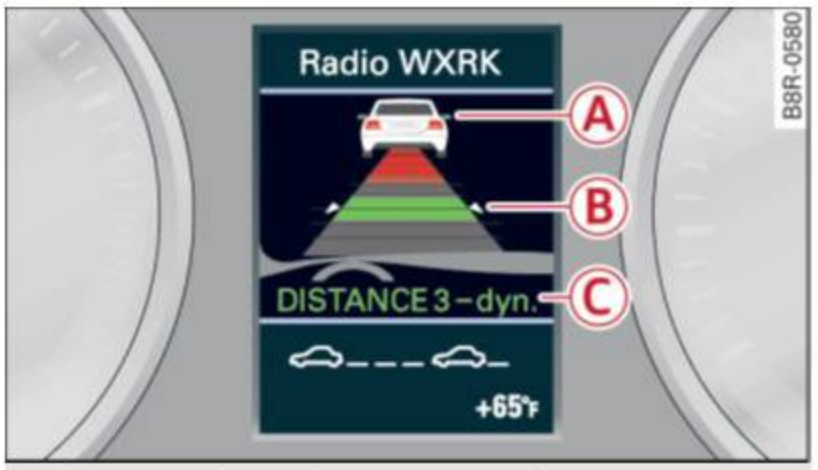


Fig. 120 Display in the instrument cluster

Scroll through the available information displays by briefly tapping the RESET button at the end of the windshield wiper lever. You can select information from the trip computer, navigation system* or adaptive cruise control.

Ⓐ Vehicle symbol

Ⓑ Distance

Ⓒ Status

Ⓐ Vehicle symbol

The vehicle symbol indicates whether the system has detected an object traveling in front.

- **Vehicle outline**: Open road, no vehicle ahead.
- **White vehicle**: A vehicle is detected ahead.
- **Red vehicle**: Request for driver to assume control.

Ⓑ Distance

Using the arrows and scale, you can detect how far it is to the vehicle in front of you.

– **Open road:** No arrow appears when the vehicle is on an open road and there is no vehicle ahead.

– **Driving in traffic:** If a vehicle is detected ahead, the arrow moves on the scale. The green area represents the distance set. When approaching slowly, the arrow moves from the **gray** zone to the **green** zone on the scale.

– **Request for driver to assume control:** When approaching rapidly, the arrow serves as an early warning signal. If the distance selected is exceeded or possibly not reached, the arrow moves into the **red** zone on the scale. In certain driving situations, you as the driver will have to take action ⇨ *page 108, Driver intervention prompt*.

Ⓒ Status

– The text **ACC OFF** appears in white letters when adaptive cruise control is turned off.
– The text **ACC AVAILABLE** appears in white letters when the system is turned on but no desired speed has been set.
– The text **OVERRIDE** appears in white letters when you exceed the desired speed by accelerating.
– The text **DISTANCE!** appears in red letters when the interval to a vehicle traveling ahead is too short and you have to slow your vehicle additionally with the foot brake.
– The text messages **DISTANCE 1** to **DISTANCE 4** appear in green letters to indicate the time interval you have set and adaptive cruise control is in management mode.
– If the driving program “standard” is replaced by “comfort” or “dynamic” using the radio or MMI*, the above text message is supplemented by an appropriate prompt, e.g. **DISTANCE 1 - dyn.**.

System status indicator

Applies to vehicles: with adaptive cruise control

The text messages and symbols shown in this area of the display are not displayed permanently.



Fig. 121 System status indicator

Time intervals (such as ⌓____⌓)

The different symbols for the time intervals appear if you change the settings ⇨ *fig. 121*.

...

The text message **...** (three white dots) appears if a setting cannot be implemented with the operating lever. The following are possible reasons:

– If you pull the control lever towards you to resume speed but no requested speed was set.
– If you push the lever up to increase (or down to reduce) speed when no speed has been set previously.
– If you push the lever up to increase (or down to reduce) speed and this speed is outside the range from 20 to 95 mph (Canada models: 30 to 150 km/h).

ACC functionality limited

The text message **ACC functionality limited** appears when the ACC system does not detect any objects over an extended time period. For the time being, the distance to vehicles up ahead is not being controlled. The ACC system is not switched off, so increased alertness is required. The following may be reasons for the text message ACC Functionally limited: ▶

– The ACC sensor is dirty. The ACC system is not reacting, or is not reacting correctly, to vehicles traveling ahead.
– It is possible that you are driving on a road with very light traffic *without* anything at the side of the road (e.g. guard rails, traffic signs, trees). As soon as a vehicle is detected by the system again, it returns to its control range and the text message disappears.

The ACC sensor is located in the right front trim grille ⇨ *page 99, fig. 111*. If there is a loss of operation due to heavy contamination, this area should cleaned to restore proper operation.

ACC not available

The text message **ACC not available** appears, for example, if the temperature of the brakes is excessive. Adaptive cruise control is temporarily not available. A warning tone sounds as a reminder.

ACC not available!

The text message **ACC not available!** appears in the event of a malfunction. Adaptive cruise control is turned off. A warning tone sounds as a reminder. Have the system inspected by a qualified dealership.

ACC sensor blocked!

The text message **ACC sensor blocked!** appears when the ACC system can no longer guarantee safe detection of objects. Adaptive cruise control is turned off. A warning tone sounds as a reminder.

To decide whether it is necessary to switch off the ACC (ACC sensor blocked!) or if it is only a temporary condition (ACC Functionally limited), the system will also takes into consideration the outside temperature and/or the windshield wiper operation.

The ACC sensor is dirty or blocked (e.g. leaves, snow).

The sensor should be cleaned to restore proper sensor function ⇨ *page 99, fig. 111*.

Parking brake!

The text message **Parking brake!** appears if emergency braking was manually initiated with the Electromechanical Parking Brake (EPB). The adaptive cruise control is turned off. This is accompanied by a warning tone.

Stabilisation program

The text message **Stabilisation program** appears if the Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP) has intervened. In this case the adaptive cruise control is automatically turned off. This is accompanied by a warning tone.

Speed

The set speed in mph (Canada km/h) always appears when saving or changing the speed in adaptive cruise control ⇨ *page 101, How is the speed stored?* and ⇨ *page 102, Changing stored speed*.

Speed too low

The text message **Speed too low** appears if the current speed is too low **to set** or **to hold** the requested speed.

When setting a desired speed, it must be at least 20 mph (30 km/h). At speeds below 12 mph (20 km/h), the cruise control is turned off.

In speeds over 95 mph (150 km/h), the system remains active and resumes the speed of 95 mph (150 km/h) if the driver removes the foot from the accelerator.

Selector lever position!

The text message **Selector lever position!** appears when the selector lever is moved to position **N**. In this position, adaptive cruise control is not available.

Driver intervention prompt

Applies to vehicles: with adaptive cruise control

The driver intervention prompt calls on the driver to take over the situation.



Fig. 122 Instrument cluster: Driver intervention prompt

In certain situations, the braking power of the adaptive cruise control is not sufficient to maintain an adequate distance from the object ahead. In this situation, the adaptive cruise control calls on **you** as the driver to take action.

The **driver intervention prompt** alerts you visually and audibly.

– A red vehicle is shown in the instrument cluster display ⇨ *fig. 122*.
– The text **DISTANCE!** appears in the status line.
– The indicator light in the Instrument cluster blinks red.
– A warning tone sounds.

Tips

– If the adaptive cruise control initiates braking, the hydraulic brake system is under pressure. Therefore, the brake pedal distance is shorter and the pedal "feels" harder.
– Adaptive cruise control is switched off after pressing the footbrake. The speed saved up this point can be resumed.
– To resume the saved speed, release the brake pedal and press the control lever ⇨ *page 102, Turning adaptive cruise control off temporarily*.
– If you use the accelerator to go faster than the speed of the object ahead of you, the **driver intervention prompt** will not be accompanied by a warning signal.
– If the speed you previously set is exceeded, the indicator light in the speedometer will switch off.

Settings

Applies to vehicles: with adaptive cruise control

Individual settings for adaptive cruise control can be selected in the radio or MMI.*

Settings for the **driving program** can be adjusted individually to the particular user and saved in the radio or MMI*.

▸ Select: Function button CAR > **adaptive cruise control** > **Driving program**.

Setting the driving program

In the **Driving program** menu you can adjust the characteristics of adaptive cruise control to what you want using **Dynamic**, **Standard** or **Comfort**.

Saving settings

Your individual settings are automatically saved and assigned to the remote control key being used (remote key storage). If the key is given to another person, the saved settings remain as they are.

System limitations

General information

Applies to vehicles: with adaptive cruise control

Some driving situations which affect the function of the radar sensor are described below.

When driving, the adaptive cruise control is governed by physical and system-specified limits. Also, under certain circumstances, the ACC system may react unexpectedly or late from the driver's point of view. Therefore, always be attentive and intervene, if necessary:

– when driving around curves ⇨ *page 109*
– when vehicles in front are not in line with your vehicle ⇨ *page 109* ▶

– when other vehicles are changing lanes ⇨ *page 109*
– when other vehicles are difficult to detect ⇨ *page 110*.
– when vehicles up ahead are not moving or obstacles are in your travel lane ⇨ *page 110*

WARNING

The radar sensor's *vision* can be reduced by rain, snow and heavy spray. This can result in vehicles driving ahead being inadequately detected or, in some circumstances, not detected at all. If necessary, take action yourself!

When driving around curves

Applies to vehicles: with adaptive cruise control

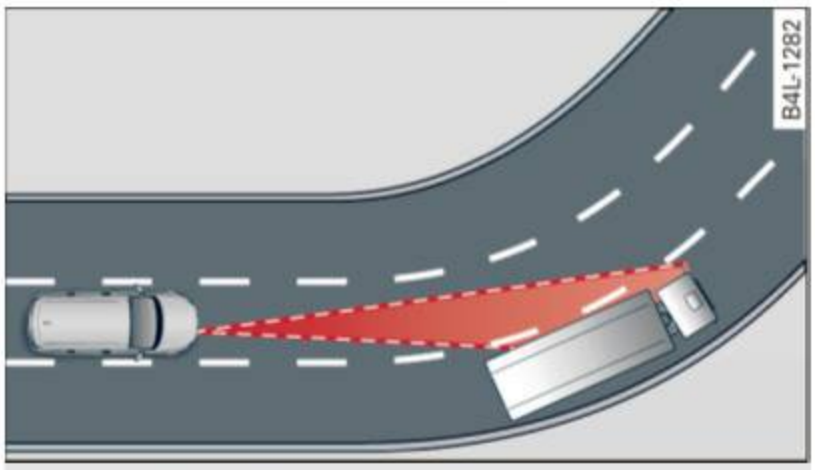


Fig. 123 Vehicle entering a curve

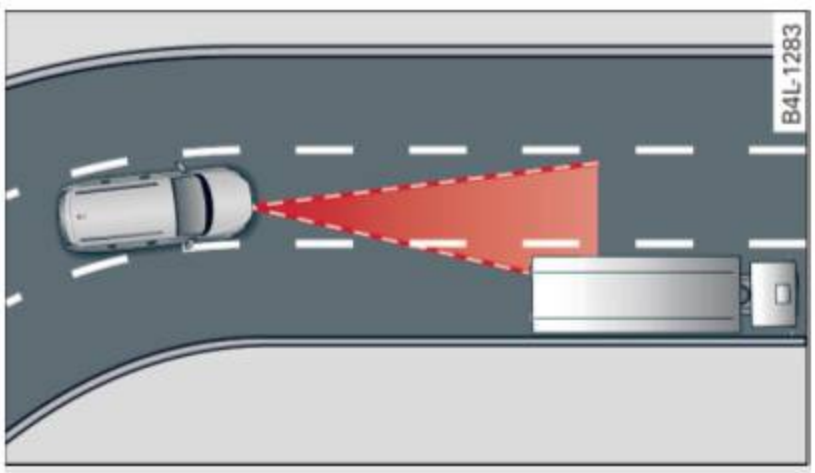


Fig. 124 Vehicle leaving a curve

Entering a curve

When entering a curve, the adaptive cruise control may react to a vehicle in the next lane and apply the brakes in your vehicle ⇨ *fig. 123*. The braking action can be overridden by depressing the accelerator pedal.

Leaving a curve

At the exit from very long curves the predictive lane reading can cause the adaptive cruise control to react to another vehicle in the next lane and apply the brakes in your vehicle ⇨ *fig. 124*. The braking action can be overridden by depressing the accelerator pedal.

Vehicles offset to one side

Applies to vehicles: with adaptive cruise control

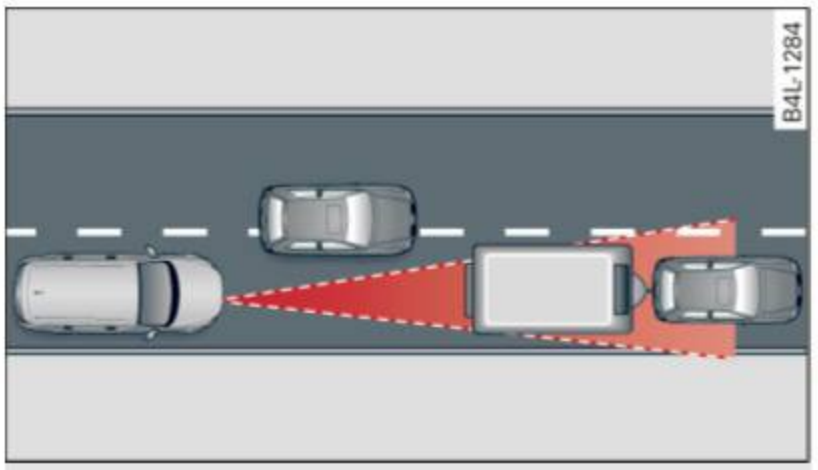


Fig. 125 Vehicle traveling ahead outside the detection range of the radar sensor

Vehicles traveling ahead and to one side cannot be detected by the adaptive cruise control until they are within the detection range of the sensor.

Lane changes by other vehicles

Applies to vehicles: with adaptive cruise control

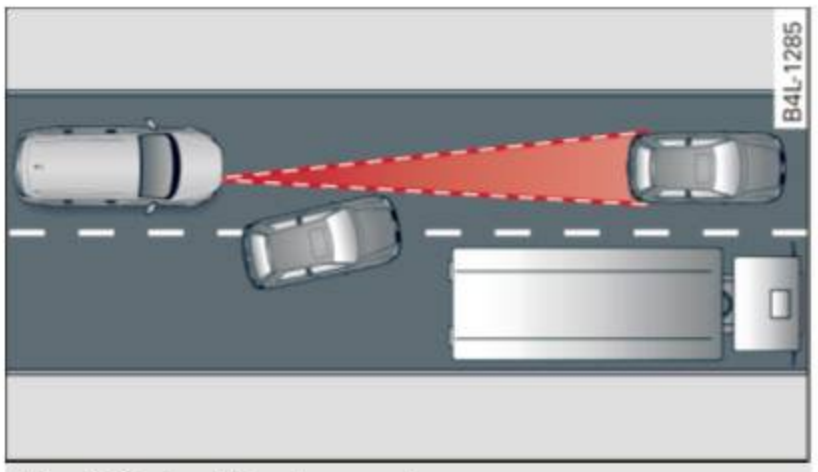


Fig. 126 A vehicle changes lanes

Vehicles which move into your lane a short distance ahead cannot be identified by the adaptive cruise control until they are in the radar sensor's detection range.

Vehicles that are difficult to detect

Applies to vehicles: with adaptive cruise control

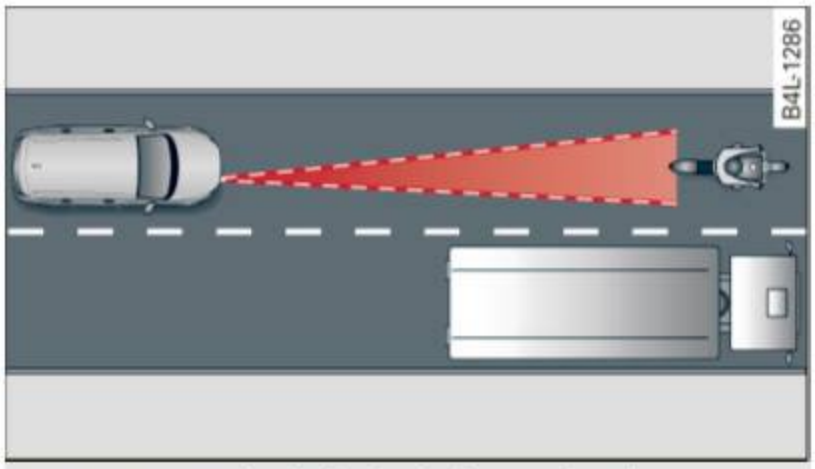


Fig. 127 Two-wheeled vehicle driving ahead

Vehicles that are difficult to detect, e.g. two-wheeled vehicles ahead, vehicles with high ground clearance, protruding load, are frequently detected late or not at all, under some circumstances.

Stationary vehicles

Applies to vehicles: with adaptive cruise control

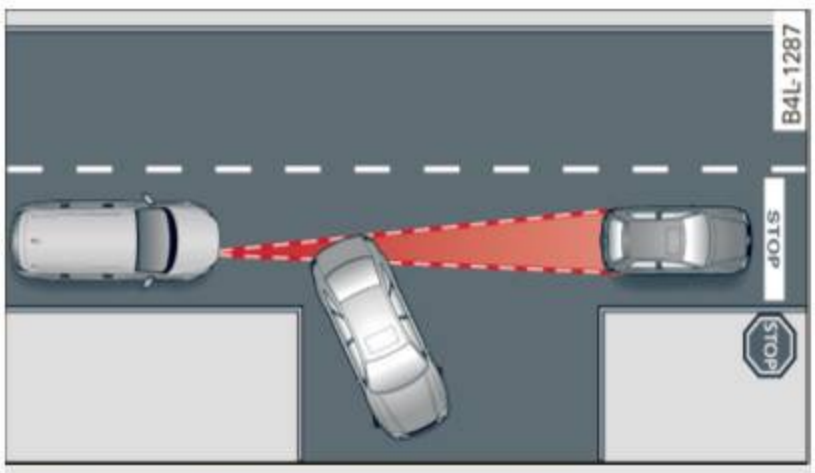


Fig. 128 Turning and stationary vehicle

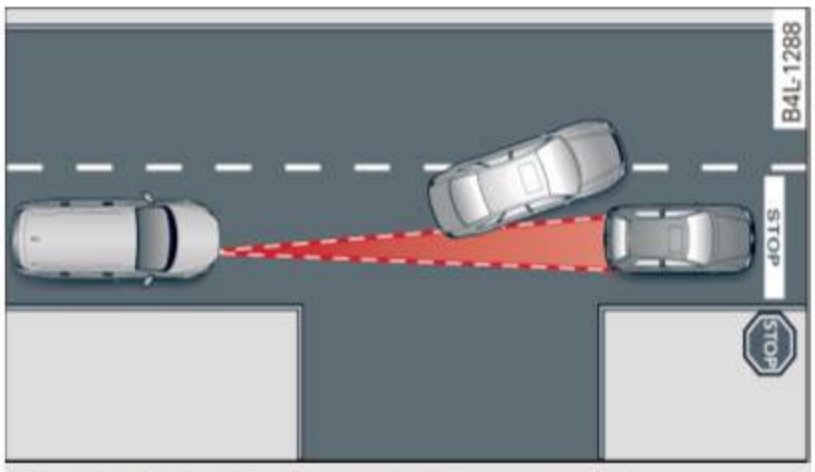


Fig. 129 Sheering out and stationary vehicle

If a vehicle that has been detected by the ACC system turns off or sheers out, and there is a stationary vehicle ahead of that vehicle, the ACC system does not respond to the stationary vehicle ⇨ *fig. 128* and ⇨ *fig. 129*.

Audi braking guard

Description

Applies to vehicles: with adaptive cruise control

Audi braking guard warns you of a threatening collision with a vehicle ahead.



Fig. 130 Display in the instrument cluster

The Audi braking guard is active from a speed of approx. 20 mph (30 km/h) and works within the system limits ⇨ *page 108* even when the adaptive cruise control is deactivated.

A radar sensor is built into the front of the vehicle ⇨ *page 99, fig. 111*. The system is intended to measure the distance to reflective surfaces. If a measurement is not possible, the system does not respond.

When the measurement has taken place, the system can assess a hazardous situation, when a vehicle ahead suddenly brakes or when your own vehicle is driving at high speed towards a much slower vehicle ahead. As soon as the system assumes that a possible collision with the vehicle ahead can only be avoided by immediate all-out braking or by an avoiding maneuver, a warning appears.

The system has a pre-set response time to be able to warn in good time. This system response time is automatically reduced if you accelerate actively, for example to join a highway. Braking, transverse acceleration and the steering angle can lead to a reduced system response time. The warning is deactivated if you begin to overtake with full acceleration.

The system draws your attention to two different hazardous situations: ▶

Distance

The distance warning is issued in the event of inadequate distance to the vehicle ahead a period of more than 5 seconds. If the distance is less than 30 feet (9 meters) at 50 mph (80 km/h), for example, an optical display is faded in on the instrument cluster ⇨ *fig. 130*.

If the vehicle ahead brakes sharply, a collision cannot be avoided, even in the case of an immediate response. In this case, increase the distance to the vehicle ahead.

Speed

If there is a much slower vehicle ahead in your lane, or if the vehicle ahead brakes sharply, the Audi braking guard calculates the point from which a collision can only be avoided by all-out braking or by an avoiding maneuver. If a warning does sound, a possible collision with the vehicle in front can be avoided through an evasive maneuver or by braking.

The warning is given in two stages:

– **Pre-warning:** An optical display appears in the instrument cluster and a warning tone sounds.
– **Acute warning:** If you do not respond to the pre-warning, the second stage, the acute warning, is issued. A brake jolt reminds you to concentrate on the road again.

Under heavy breaking, brake assist ⇨ *page 202* also helps you obtain maximum braking efficiency.

WARNING

Always pay attention to traffic, even when the Audi braking guard is switched on. You are always responsible for your speed and the distance between your vehicle and other vehicles.

– Always keep the legally stipulated safety distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead - danger of accident!
– The Audi braking guard does not respond outside the system limits, for example if you approach a stationary obstacle (end of a traffic jam or breakdown vehicle).
– Please observe that the Audi braking guard is subject to restrictions in narrow bends due to the field of vision of the radar sensor. This may possibly lead to obstacles not being detected.
– The radar sensor's *vision* can be reduced by rain, snow and heavy spray. This can result in vehicles driving ahead being inadequately detected or, in some circumstances, not detected at all. Always watch where you are driving.
– Reflecting objects such as e.g. crash barriers or the entrance to a tunnel may impair the function of the radar sensor.

Settings

Applies to vehicles: with adaptive cruise control

The settings of the Audi braking guard are performed in the radio or MMI.*

Settings regarding the system and the early warning can be adjusted to the respective user and saved in the radio or MMI*.

Switching the system on and off

▸ Select: Function button CAR > **Audi braking guard**.
▸ Select **System On** to switch the system on or **Off** to switch the system off.

Switching the early warning on and off

▸ Select: Function button CAR > **Audi braking guard**.
▸ Select **Early warning On** to switch the acoustic and optical warning on or **Off** to switch the system off.

Tips

When handing over the keys to another person, the previous settings are adopted if the Audi braking guard is activated ⇨ *page 41*.

Driver's information in the instrument cluster display

Applies to vehicles: with adaptive cruise control

braking guard activated

This driver's information appears when a brake jolt has been carried out due to an acute warning.

braking guard off

This driver's information appears when the system has been deactivated via the radio or MMI*. Furthermore the information appears each time shortly after the beginning of the journey when the system is switched off.

This driver's information also appears when the system is not available because of a malfunction or if ESP is switched to the Offroad mode⇨ *page 196*. In this state the system no longer warns of a pending collision.

Audi side assist

Lane change assistant

Description

Applies to vehicles: with side assist

The side assist helps you when changing lanes.



Fig. 131 Rear bumper: Position of radar sensors (not visible on outside)



Fig. 132 Signal light on the outside mirror - driver's side

Side assist uses radar sensors (not visible on outside) ⇨ *fig. 131* to help the driver check blind spots, and see what is happening in traffic behind the vehicle ⇨ *page 114, fig. 134*.

Signal lights are built into both outside mirrors (1) ⇨ *fig. 132*. The signal light on the left outside mirror assists when moving over into the left lane and the signal light on the right outside mirror assists when moving over into the right lane.

The signal light comes on to tell you that side assist has detected a vehicle on that side and that the position of this other vehicle should be taken into account if you were to change lanes. This is called the **informational stage signal** ⇨ *page 115*. The informational stage signal is designed so that you notice it only when you are looking in the outside mirror.

When you activate the turn signal and side assist detects a vehicle in a notable location, the corresponding signal on the outside mirror flashes briefly and brightly several times. This is the **alert stage signal** ⇨ *page 115*.

Activating and deactivating

Applies to vehicles: with side assist



Fig. 133 Driver's door: Side assist button

Activating

▸ Press the ⇨ *fig. 133* button. The indicator on the button lights up.

Deactivating

▸ Press the button again. The indicator light on the button goes out.

The system works at speeds faster than 19 mph (30 km/h).

WARNING

- Improper reliance on the side assist system can cause collisions and serious personal injury:
  - Never rely only on side assist when changing lanes.
  - Always check rear view mirrors to make sure that it is safe to change lanes.
- Side assist cannot detect all vehicles under all conditions- danger of accident!
- Side assist cannot detect vehicles in time to alert you when they approach from behind at very high speed, or if they drop back very quickly.

▶

– The radar sensor's *vision* can be reduced or entirely blocked by rain, snow, and heavy spray. This can result in side assist not adequately detecting vehicles or, in some cases, not detecting them at all. Always keep an eye on the direction you are traveling and the relevant area around the vehicle.
– Please note that side assist indicates there are approaching vehicles, or vehicles in your blind spot, only after your vehicle has reached a driving speed of at least 19 mph (30 km/h).
– Side assist signal does not work around tight corners (turning radius less than 328 feet or 100 m).
– Side assist is no replacement for the driver's full attention. The driver alone is responsible for lane changes and similar driving maneuvers. Always keep an eye on the direction you are traveling and the relevant area around the vehicle.

Note

– To ensure that you do not adversely affect side assist, do not block the area on the rear bumper where the radar sensors are located with foreign objects (such as stickers or bicycle racks).
– Make sure that the signal light on the outside mirror is not blocked by stickers or other items.

Tips

– Side assist automatically deactivates if it detects that the radar sensors are blocked ⇨ *page 119*. The indicator light on the button goes out.
– The area on the bumper where the radar sensors are located must consistently remain free of snow, ice, and heavy soiling so that side assist can function properly. Follow the additional notes on ⇨ *page 120*.
– For vehicles with a factory installed towing hitch* or a trailer hitch* that was installed later according to factory specifications, side assist is automatically deactivated as soon as the electrical connection to the trailer electrical socket is made ⇨ *page 119*.
– For vehicles with a trailer hitch that was **not** installed according to factory specifications, switch off the side assist when towing a trailer.
– Additional tinting on the front side windows can make it harder to see and correctly understand the signal light on the outside mirror.
– For Declaration of Compliance to United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations ⇨ *page 294*.

Sensor detection area

Applies to vehicles: with side assist

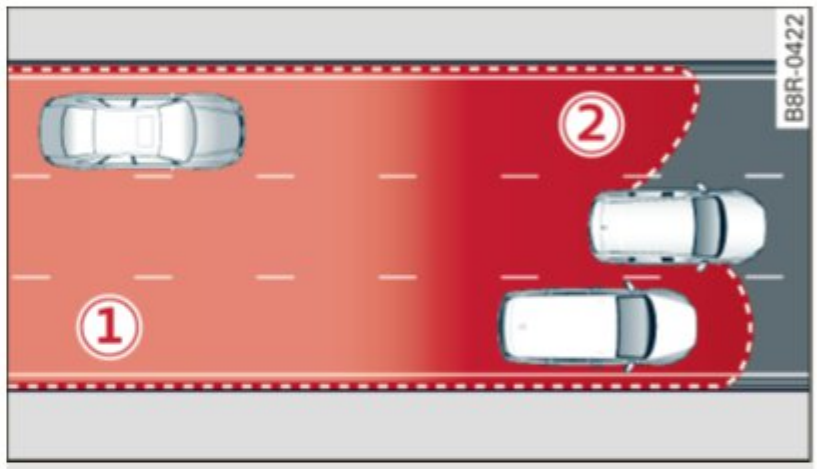


Fig. 134 Schematic illustration: Sensor detection area

The detection ⇨ *fig. 134* of the radar sensor detection area is made up of:

– the approach area (light green area) ①, about 164 feet (50 m) behind the vehicle, and
– the "blind spot" (dark green area) ②.

The radar sensors cover the adjacent left and right lanes. Other lanes are *not* covered by the radar sensors.

Tips

Side assist does not measure actual lane width. The system assumes a fixed lane width. Detection in the left and right lanes is based on this assumed lane width. When driving on narrow roads or when driving to the left or right of the center of a travel lane, it is possible that vehicles will be detected that are *not* in the lane ▶

next to the lane you are using ⇨ *page 119*.

Operation

Applies to vehicles: with side assist

Side assist compares the distance and difference in speed of detected vehicles with the speed of your vehicle. Whenever the difference in speed and distance is registered as notable if you were to change lanes, a signal light appears on the respective mirror.

The signal can light up if you are passed by a vehicle or if you are passing another vehicle.

If you pass another vehicle slowly (difference in speed less than 9 mph, or 15 km/h), the signal light will come on as soon as the other vehicle is in your blind spot and is detected by side assist. When the difference in speed is greater, the signal light will not come on.

Informational and alert stage signals

Applies to vehicles: with side assist

Side assist has two signal stages:

– the informational stage signal, and
– the alert stage signal.

Side assist helps you by using the appropriate signal stage, depending on whether or not you have activated the turn signal, and thus have indicated that you are or are not changing lanes.

Informational stage signal

As long as you have not activated the turn signal, side assist informs you of detected vehicles that are registered as being in a notable location if you were to change lanes. Whenever the detected vehicle's difference in speed and distance is registered by side assist as notable, the signal light on the respective mirror produces muted illumination.

The brightness of the informational stage signal is designed not to be as intense, so that it does not interfere with your view of the road when you are driving and have no intention of changing lanes. When you look in the outside mirror, you can clearly see the informational stage signal.

Alert stage signal

When you activate the turn signal, and side assist has detected a vehicle in a notable location on that particular side, the signal light on this side mirror flashes brightly. The repeated brief and bright flashing of the alert stage signal reminds you to carefully check traffic to the rear in the outside mirror and over your shoulder, so that you can safely complete the lane change ⇨ ⚠ *in Safety tips on page 120*.

Tips

The brightness of the signal light on the outside mirrors can be adjusted with the radio or the MMI* ⇨ *page 118*.

Driving situation: Fast approaching vehicles

Applies to vehicles: with side assist

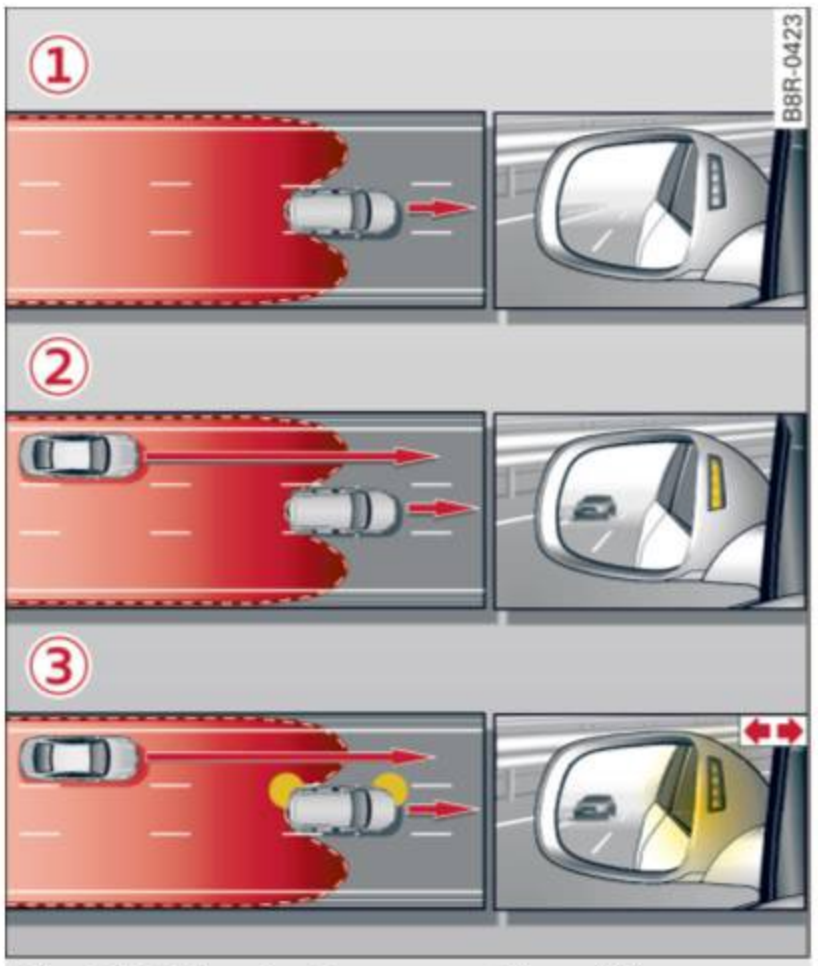


Fig. 135 Side assist: Fast approaching vehicles

① Signal on outside mirror does not light up

No vehicle was detected by the sensors. The signal on the outside mirror does not light up ⇨ ⚠ *in Safety tips on page 120*. ▶

② Informational stage signal lights up

A fast approaching vehicle - in the left-hand lane for example - was detected by the sensors. Although this vehicle is still far away, it should be taken into account if you were to change lanes, due to the considerable difference in speed. The informational stage signal on the outside mirror lights up ⇨ *page 115*.

③ Alert stage signal flashes

If you activate your turn signal in driving situation ②, the signal briefly flashes repeatedly. Side assist is alerting you to a vehicle that you may not have noticed.

Tips

- The faster a vehicle approaches from the rear, the sooner the signal on the outside mirror lights up. Side assist will signal, at the latest, when a detected vehicle enters your “blind spot”.
- When vehicles approach very quickly, changing lanes can be dangerous even if the signal on the outside mirror does not light up.

Driving situation: Slowly approaching vehicles

Applies to vehicles: with side assist

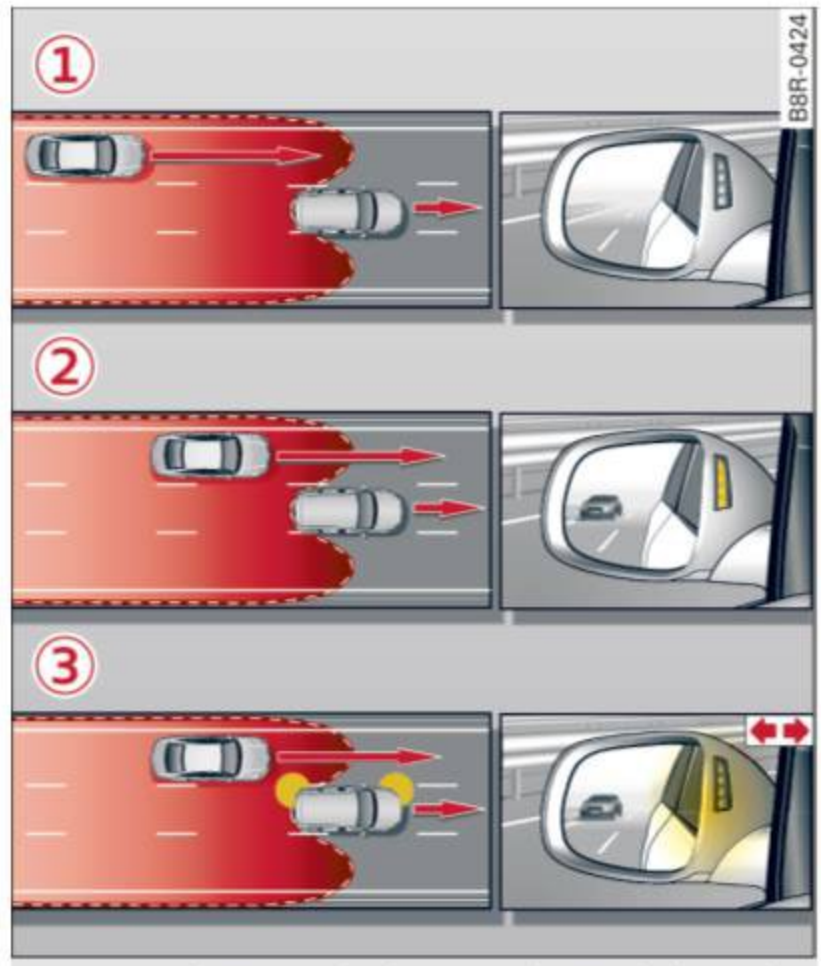


Fig. 136 Side assist: Slowly approaching vehicles and vehicles in your blind spot

① Signal on outside mirror does not light up

A vehicle approaching slowly - in the left-hand lane for example - was detected by the sensors. Because of the small difference in speed and the considerable distance from your vehicle, the signal on the outside mirror will not light up ⇨ ⚠ *in Safety tips on page 120*.

② Informational stage signal lights up

The distance between your vehicle and that of the slowly approaching vehicle has narrowed. The informational stage signal on the outside mirror lights up.

As soon as the difference in speed and distance is registered as notable if you were to change lanes, a signal on the mirror lights up. Side assist will signal at the latest when a detected vehicle enters your “blind spot”. ▶

③ Alert stage signal flashes

If you activate your turn signal in driving situation ②, the signal light briefly flashes repeatedly. Side assist is alerting you of a vehicle that you may not have noticed.

Tips

- The faster a vehicle approaches from the rear, the sooner the signal on the outside mirror lights up. Side assist will signal, at the latest, when a detected vehicle enters your “blind spot”.
- When vehicles approach very quickly, changing lanes can be dangerous even if the signal on the outside mirror does not light up.

Driving situation: Vehicles dropping back slowly

Applies to vehicles: with side assist

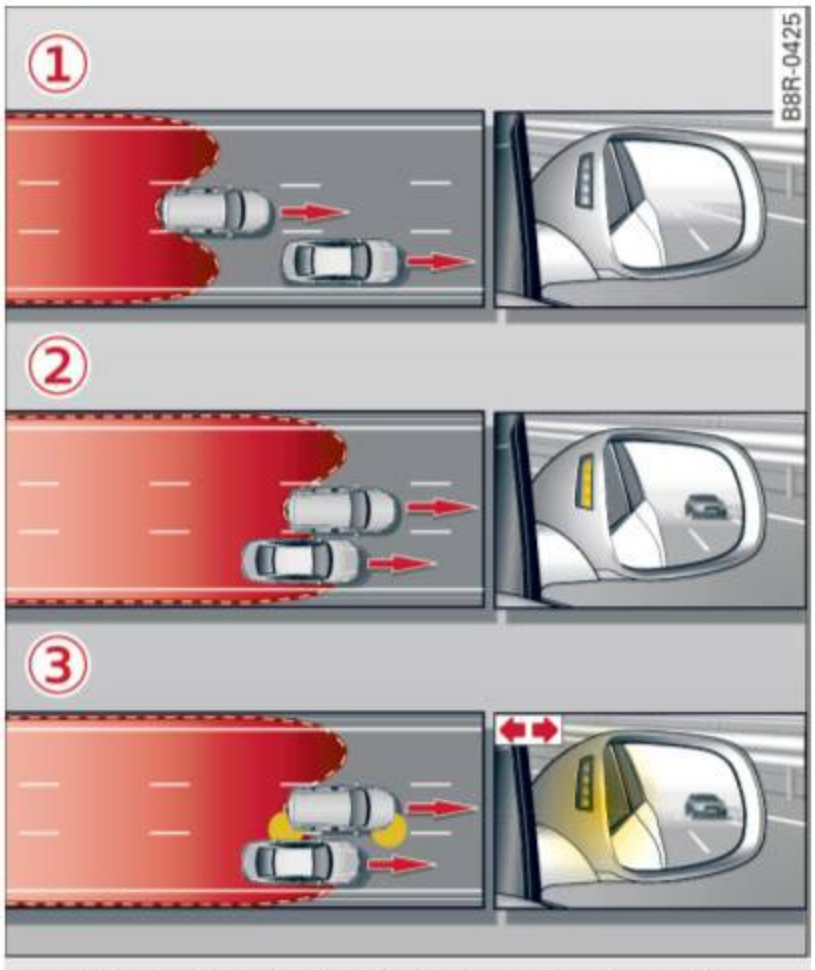


Fig. 137 Side assist: Vehicles dropping back slowly

① Signal on outside mirror does not light up

The vehicle that you passed has not yet been detected by side assist. The signal on the outside mirror does not light up ⇨ ⚠ *in Safety tips on page 120*.

② Informational stage signal lights up

A vehicle dropping back slowly on the right (difference in speed of less than 9 mph, or 15 km/h) has been detected by side assist. The informational stage signal on the outside mirror lights up.

③ Alert stage signal flashes

If you activate your turn signal in driving situation ②, the signal briefly flashes repeatedly. Side assist is alerting you of a vehicle that you may not have noticed.

Driving situation: Vehicles dropping back quickly

Applies to vehicles: with side assist

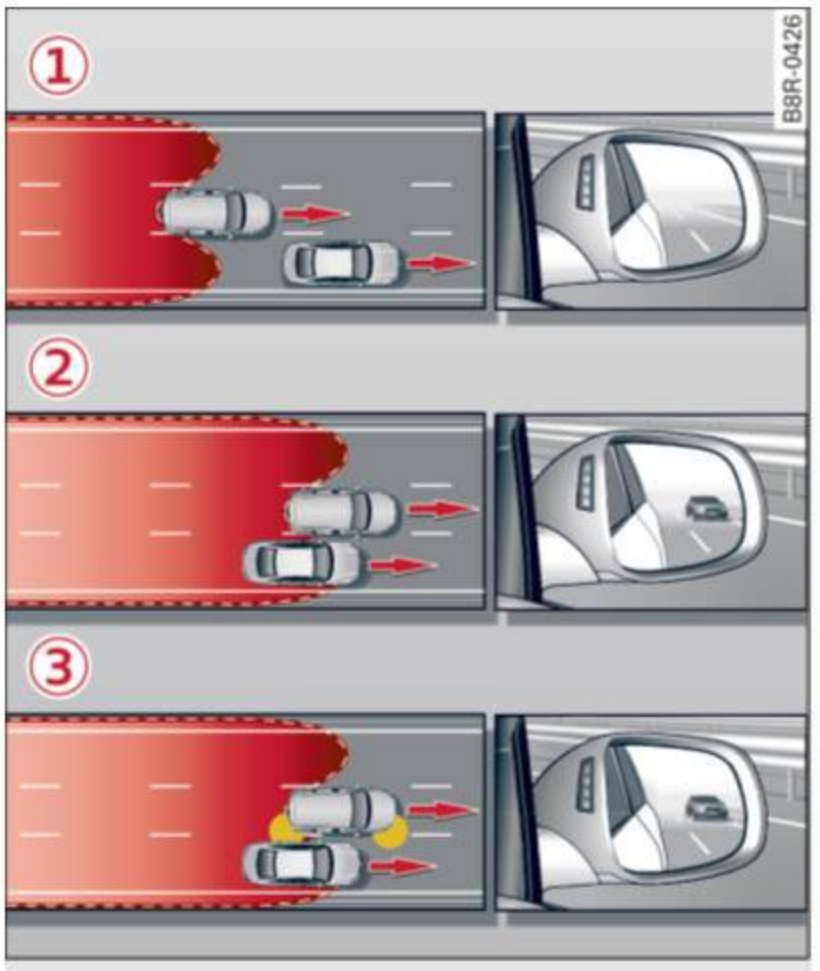


Fig. 138 Side assist: Vehicles dropping back quickly

① Signal on outside mirror does not light up

The vehicle just passed has not yet been detected by side assist. The signal on the outside mirror does not light up ⇨ ⚠ *in Safety tips on page 120*.

② Signal on outside mirror does not light up

The vehicle dropping back quickly on the right (difference in speed of more than 9 mph, or 15 km/h) has been detected by side assist, ▶

but is not considered notable in the event of a lane change, because it is dropping back so quickly. The signal on the outside mirror does not light up ⇨ ⚠ *in Safety tips on page 120*.

③ Signal on outside mirror does not light up

If you activate your turn signal in driving situation ②, the signal still does not light up on the outside mirror ⇨ ⚠ *in Safety tips on page 120*.

Setting the signal brightness on the outside mirror

Applies to vehicles: with side assist

The signal brightness can be set in the radio or in the MMI.*

▸ Select: Function button CAR > **Audi side assist**.

The brightness of the signal light for both the informational and alert stages is automatically adjusted to ambient light conditions. In addition, you can adjust the *basic brightness* separately, via the brightness function.

While making the adjustment, the new brightness setting is displayed briefly. The brightness displayed is that of the informational stage signal. The alert stage signal brightness is linked to the informational stage signal brightness.

The informational stage signal brightness should be adjusted so that you notice the signal illumination when you look in the outside mirror, but not when you look forward through the windshield.

In very dark or light surroundings, the automatic brightness setting adjusts signal light brightness to maximum or minimum intensity, as needed. In circumstances such as these, you may not notice any change in the brightness on the outside mirror when adjusting the *basic brightness*.

You may not notice the change until lighting conditions are normal again.

Tips

– Side assist is not active when the basic brightness is adjusted. The signal light comes on briefly to help you make the adjustment.
– Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

General information

Applies to vehicles: with side assist

Side assist has limits and cannot detect vehicles under all road and weather conditions. Please remember system limitations and never rely on the system, especially when:

– driving through curves ⇨ *page 118*,
– lanes are of different widths ⇨ *page 119*.

When driving through curves

Applies to vehicles: with side assist

Side assist cannot detect vehicles in curves with a turning radius of less than 328 feet (100 m).

When driving through a curve, it is possible that side assist may register a vehicle two lanes over, and the signal on the outside mirror will light up.

Lane width

Applies to vehicles: with side assist

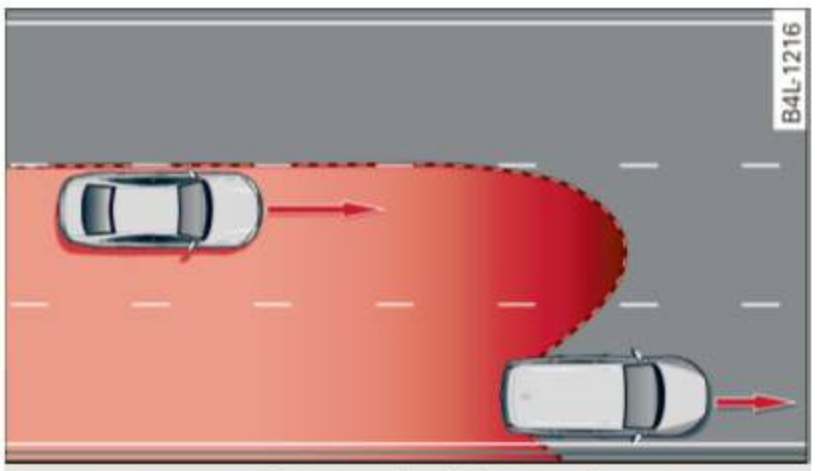


Fig. 139 Lanes of a normal width are in detection area

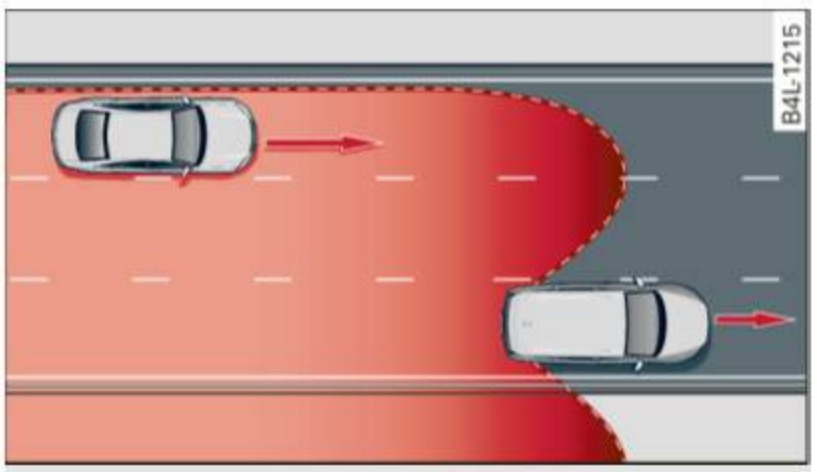


Fig. 140 Narrow lanes: Side assist may detect vehicles two lanes away

Side assist's detection area is designed to cover lanes of standard width to the left and right of your travel lane, depending on whether you drive in the center of your lane or closer to the edge.

If you drive in narrow lanes, side assist's detection area may also include other lanes - especially if you tend to drive on the edge of your lane ⇨ *fig. 140*. Under these conditions, vehicles can also be detected that are two lanes away, and side assist then could switch between the informational and warning stage signals.

When driving in very wide lanes, vehicles in the adjacent lane may not be detected because they are not inside the detection area.

Notes

Messages in instrument cluster display

Applies to vehicles: with side assist

If side assist turns off automatically, the indicator light on the button will go out and you will see a message in the instrument cluster display:

Audi side assist not available: sensors blocked

The side assist sensors are built into the rear bumper on the left and right (not visible on the outside) ⇨ *page 113, fig. 131*. To ensure that you do not adversely affect the way side assist functions, foreign objects (such as stickers or bicycle racks) should not be attached to the area on the rear bumper where the sensors are located. If side assist functions are adversely affected, you will see this message in the instrument cluster display. Remove anything that may be blocking the sensors.

If no vehicle is detected for a longer period of time while driving, side assist will also switch off automatically.

Audi side assist currently not available

If there is a temporary problem (such as the vehicle's battery charge being low), side assist cannot be activated temporarily.

Audi side assist: system fault

Have the system checked by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.

Audi side assist not available when towing

The radar sensor's view is limited when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a factory installed towing hitch or a trailer hitch that was installed later according to factory specifications, side assist is automatically deactivated as soon as the electrical connection to the trailer's electrical socket is made, and this status message appears in the instrument cluster display. Deactivation cannot be guaranteed when using a retrofitted towing hitch that was **not** installed according to factory specifications.

Safety tips

Applies to vehicles: with side assist

The side assist detection may be limited when driving around narrow street corners, on hilly streets, and under poor weather conditions.

It is possible that the radar sensors may also detect other objects, such as high or staggered guardrails.

Side assist does not measure actual lane width. The system assumes a fixed lane width. Detection in the left and right lanes is based on this assumed lane width. When driving on narrow roads or when driving to the left or right of the center of a travel lane, it is possible that vehicles will be detected that are *not* in the lane next to the lane you are using.

WARNING

- Improper reliance on the side assist system can cause collisions and serious personal injury:
  - Never rely only on side assist when changing lanes.
  - Always check rear view mirrors to make sure that it is safe to change lanes.
- Side assist cannot detect all vehicles under all conditions- danger of accident!
- Side assist cannot detect vehicles in time to alert you when they approach from behind at very high speed, or fall drop back very quickly.
- The radar sensor's *vision* can be reduced or entirely blocked by rain, snow, and heavy spray. This can result in side assist not adequately detecting vehicles or, in some cases, not detecting them at all. Always keep an eye on the direction you are traveling and the relevant area around the vehicle.
- Please note that side assist indicates there are approaching vehicles, or vehicles in your blind spot, only after your vehicle has reached a driving speed of at least 19 mph (30 km/h).
- Side assist signal does not work around tight corners (turning radius less than 328 feet, or 100 m).
- Side assist is no replacement for the driver's full attention. The driver alone is responsible for lane changes and similar driving maneuvers. Always keep an eye on the direction you are traveling and the relevant area around the vehicle.

Note

To ensure that side assist is not adversely affected, you should not block the area on the rear bumper where the radar sensors are located with foreign objects (such as with stickers or bicycle racks).

Tips

If the positions of the radar sensors have been changed as a result of a rear end-collision, for instance, have side assist checked by an authorized Audi dealer for safety reasons.

Audi drive select

Driving settings

Introduction

Applies to vehicles: with drive select

Audi drive select provides the possibility to experience different types of vehicle settings in one vehicle. For instance, using the three COMFORT, AUTO and DYNAMIC modes, the driver can switch from a sporty to a comfortable driving mode with the press of a button.

Additionally, in vehicles with MMI*, the vehicle setup for INDIVIDUAL* mode can be customized by you. This makes it possible to combine settings such as a sporty engine tuning with light steering.

Description

Applies to vehicles: with drive select

Depending on the mode, the **engine** and **automatic transmission** respond more quickly or in a more balanced manner to accelerator pedal movements.

The **Servotronic** (steering servo assistance) ⇨ *page 202* can also be adapted to driving situations.

Dynamic steering changes the steering ratio as a function of the driving speed in order to optimize the driver's required steering effort. This sets the steering to be less sensitive at higher speeds in order to provide improved vehicle control. At reduced speeds, steering is more direct in order to keep the steering effort as minimal as possible when the driver is maneuvering the vehicle. At low and average speeds, dynamic steering additionally provides more responsive steering performance. The driver can set the basic steering ratio characteristics in the Audi drive select.

The **adaptive dampers** use sensors to record information regarding steering movements, braking and acceleration operations by the driver, road surface, driving speed, and load. This makes it possible to adapt damping to the driving situation virtually in real time. Audi drive select also makes it possible to satisfy the desire for sporty suspension (DYNAMIC) and comfortable suspension (COMFORT) without giving up balanced tuning (AUTO).

The following chart provides an overview of the characteristics of each driving mode.

Systems	COMFORT	AUTO	DYNAMIC
Engine/gearbox	balanced	balanced	sporty
Servotronic	comfortable	balanced	sporty
Dynamic steering	comfortable/indirect	balanced/direct	sporty/direct
Suspension	comfortable	balanced	sporty

The Servotronic settings are adjusted under the **Dyn. steering** menu item.

Tips

- Select **DYNAMIC** to set the sporty shifting characteristics for vehicles with an automatic transmission. The **S** selector lever position is not available.
- The dynamic steering may make noise when starting or stopping the engine. This does not indicate a problem.

Selecting a driving mode

Applies to vehicles: with drive select

You can choose between COMFORT, AUTO, DYNAMIC and INDIVIDUAL modes.*



Fig. 141 Shift gate: Control for Audi drive select



Fig. 142 Center console: Control for Audi drive select

The control is located on the shift gate ⇨ *fig. 141* in vehicles with a radio, and in vehicles with MMI*, it is located in the center console ⇨ *fig. 142*.

- ▸ Turn on the ignition.
- ▸ Press the left or right arrow button until the desired mode appears in red.

You can change the driving mode when the vehicle is stationary or while driving. If traffic permits, after changing modes, briefly take your foot off the accelerator pedal so that the recently selected mode is also activated for the engine.

COMFORT

The COMFORT mode provides a comfortable vehicle setting. The engine and automatic transmission react in a balanced manner to movements of the acceleration pedal. Steering is light and indirect and the adaptive dampers provide a soft suspension. The setting is ideal for driving on long stretches, such as on freeways.

AUTO

Full use of AUTO provides a comfortable, yet dynamic feel. The setting is perfect for daily use.

DYNAMIC

DYNAMIC gives the vehicle a sporty feeling. The engine responds quickly to accelerator pedal movements, and steering is sporty and more direct. The adaptive dampers are stiffer, and the automatic transmission shift points are set at higher engine speed ranges. The setting is ideal for sporty driving.

INDIVIDUAL*

You can adapt this mode to your personal needs in the MMI.

WARNING

Pay attention to traffic when operating Audi drive select to prevent potential risk of an accident.

Tips

If you remove the ignition key, AUTO mode is set the next time you start the ignition.

Setting the INDIVIDUAL mode

Applies to vehicles: with MMI and drive select

You can personally specify the vehicle setup in the MMI.

- ▸ Select: Function button CAR > **Audi drive select individual**.

You need to select this control to drive in the recently set INDIVIDUAL mode ⇨ *page 122*.

Tips

Your INDIVIDUAL mode settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Automatic transmission

tiptronic®

General information

Your vehicle is equipped with an electronically controlled automatic transmission. Upshifting and downshifting takes place *automatically*.

The transmission is also equipped with tiptronic®. It allows the driver to shift gears *manually* if desired ⇨ *page 127*.

Driving the automatic transmission



Fig. 143 Shift gate on the center console: selector lever with release button

Starting the engine

- ▸ The selector lever must be in **N** or **P**.

Starting off

- ▸ Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ▸ Press and hold the release button in the selector lever handle and move the selector lever from **P** or **N** to **D** and release the button ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Wait briefly until the transmission has shifted (you will feel a slight movement).
- ▸ Remove your foot from the brake pedal and accelerate.

Rocking back and forth to become unstuck

- ▸ Shift only between **D** and **R** when the vehicle is at a full stop and the engine is running at idle speed.

Stopping

- ▸ Press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle has come to a complete stop.
- ▸ Keep the brake pedal depressed so that the vehicle cannot roll forward or backward while it is idling ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Once stopped, *do not* depress the accelerator pedal to rev up the engine ⇨ ⚠.

Parking

- ▸ Press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle has come to a complete stop.
- ▸ Set the parking brake firmly ⇨ *page 95, Parking*.
- ▸ Press and hold the release button in the selector lever handle, move the selector lever into **P** and then let go of the release button ⇨ ⚠.

The selector lever must be in **N** or **P**. If one of the driving positions is engaged a safety switch will prevent the engine from being started. See also ⇨ *page 90*.

Before you move the selector lever from the **P** position, you must always apply the brake pedal before and while depressing the button in the handle of the selector lever.

⚠ WARNING

– Unintended vehicle movement can cause serious injury.
  – When the selector lever is in a driving position, the vehicle may creep, even at idle speed. Therefore do not release the parking brake or foot brake until you are ready to move, because power is transmitted to the wheels as soon as a driving position is engaged.
  – Do not accelerate while selecting a driving position. At this time the engine must be at idle speed so that undue stress is not placed on the clutches in the transmission.
  – Remember: - even when stopped briefly with the automatic transmission in “D”, “S” or “R”, engine power is being transmitted to the wheels. Your vehicle ▶

could “creep” forward or backward. When stopped, keep the brake pedal fully depressed and use the parking brake if necessary to keep the vehicle from rolling.

– If the selector lever is unintentionally moved into N while you are driving, take your foot off the accelerator pedal and wait for the engine to return to idle speed before selecting a driving position.
– Never shift into “R” or “P” when the vehicle is in motion.
– Never get out of the driver’s seat when the engine is running.
– If you must get out of the vehicle, move the selector lever securely into the P position and apply the parking brake firmly.
– If the engine must remain running, never have any driving position engaged when checking under the hood. Make sure the selector lever has securely engaged and is locked in “P” with the parking brake firmly set ⇨ *page 226, Engine compartment*. Otherwise, any increase in engine speed may set the vehicle in motion, even with the parking brake applied.

Selector lever positions

This section describes the selector lever positions and driving ranges.

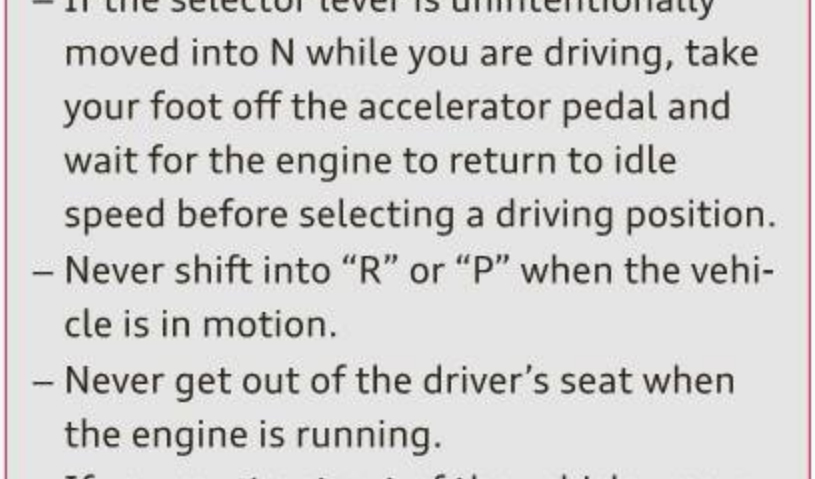


Fig. 144 Display in the instrument cluster: selector lever in position P

The instrument cluster display shows the current selector lever position.

P - Park

In this selector lever position the transmission is mechanically locked. Engage **P** only when the vehicle is *completely stopped* ⇨ ⚠ *in Driving the automatic transmission on page 123*.

To shift in or out of position **P**, you must *first* press and hold the brake pedal *and then* press the release button in the selector lever handle while moving the selector lever to or from **P**. You can shift out of this position only with the ignition on.

R - Reverse

The transmission will automatically select the **lowest gear ratio** when you shift into reverse.

Select **R** only when the vehicle is at a *full stop* and the engine is running at idle speed ⇨ ⚠ *in Driving the automatic transmission on page 123*.

Before you move the selector lever to **R**, press *both* the button in the handle of the selector lever *and* the brake pedal at the same time.

When the ignition is on, the backup lights illuminate when the selector lever is moved into **R**.

N - Neutral

The transmission is in neutral in this position. Shift to this position for standing with the brakes applied ⇨ *page 125*.

When the vehicle is stationary or at speeds below 3 mph (5 km/h), you must always apply the footbrake before and while moving the lever out of **N**.

D - Normal position for driving forward

Position **D** is for normal city and highway driving. It ranges from zero to top speed and all gears shift automatically, depending on engine load, driving speed and automatically selected shift programs.

When the vehicle is stationary or at speeds below 3 mph (5 km/h), you must always apply ▶

the foot brake before and while moving the lever to **D** out of **N**.

In certain circumstances it may be advantageous to temporarily switch to the manual shift program to manually select gear ratios to match specific driving conditions ⇨ *page 127*.

S – Sport position*

Select this position for sportier performance. In this position, the transmission will not upshift as soon, allowing the vehicle to use the increased power available at higher engine speeds to achieve livelier acceleration.

When the vehicle is stationary or at speeds below 3 mph (5 km/h), you must always apply the foot brake before and while moving the lever to **S** out of **N**.

WARNING

Read and follow all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in Driving the automatic transmission on page 123*.

Note

Coasting downhill with the transmission in N and the engine not running will result in damage to the automatic transmission and possibly the catalytic converter.

Tips

On vehicles with Audi drive select* you can adjust the sporty shift characteristics in the **DYNAMIC** drive mode. **S** will appear in the instrument cluster display instead of **D**. The **S** selector lever position is not available.

Automatic Shift Lock (ASL)

The Automatic Shift Lock safeguards you against accidentally shifting into a forward or the reverse gear and causing the vehicle to move unintentionally.

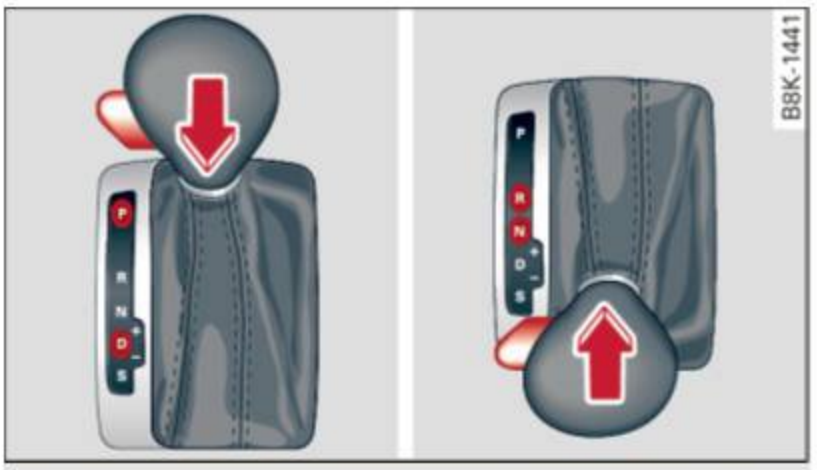


Fig. 145 Shift gate: selector lever lock positions and interlock button highlighted

The selector lever lock is released as follows:

- ▸ Turn the ignition on.
- ▸ Step on the brake pedal. *At the same time* press and hold the interlock button on the side of the gear selector knob ⇨ *fig. 145* with your thumb until you have moved the selector lever to the desired position.

Automatic selector lever lock

The selector lever is locked in the **P** and **N** positions when the ignition is turned on. To move the lever from these positions the driver must depress the brake pedal. As a reminder to the driver, the following warning appears in the instrument cluster display when the selector is in **P** and **N**:

When stationary apply foot brake while selecting gear

A time delay element prevents the selector lever from locking when it is moved through the **N** position (going from **R** to **D**). The locking element will lock the selector lever if the lever is left in N (Neutral) for more than approximately 1 second, without the brake pedal being pressed.

At speeds above about 3 mph (5 km/h) the Automatic Shift Lock is automatically deactivated in the **N** position. ▶

Interlock button

The lock button on the selector lever prevents the lever from being accidentally shifted into certain positions. Pressing this button deactivates the selector lever lock. Depending on the direction of the shift, the selector lever locks at different positions. The positions are highlighted in the illustration ⇨ *fig. 145*.

Ignition key safety interlock

The key cannot be removed from the ignition unless the selector lever is in the **P** park position. When the ignition key is removed, the selector lever will be locked in the **P** position.

Kick-down

The kick-down feature allows the vehicle to generate maximum acceleration.

When you press the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point that is reached at full throttle, the transmission will select a lower gear ratio based on vehicle speed and engine RPM. The engine RPM will be controlled to produce maximum vehicle acceleration as long as you continue to press the accelerator pedal beyond this resistance point.

WARNING

Be careful when using the kick-down feature on slippery roads. Rapid acceleration may cause the vehicle to skid.

Dynamic shift program (DSP)

The automatic transmission is electronically controlled.

The transmission is self adapting and will **automatically** select the best shift program suited to the driving conditions and driving style.

The transmission will select one of the **economy** programs when you drive at a steady speed or a gradually changing speed without heavy acceleration. This achieves optimum fuel efficiency, with early upshifting and delayed downshifting.

The transmission will automatically select the **sporty** shift programs when you drive at higher speeds, or with heavy acceleration and frequently changing speeds. Upshifts are delayed to make full use of engine power. Downshifting takes place at higher engine speeds than in the economy programs.

The selection of the most suitable shift program is a continuous, automatic process. The driver can also make the transmission switch to a sporty program by **quickly** pressing down the gas pedal.

This causes the transmission to shift down to a lower gear to achieve rapid acceleration, e.g. for quickly passing another vehicle. You do not need to press the gas pedal into the kick-down range. After the transmission has upshifted, the original program is selected according to your driving style.

An additional shift program allows the automatic transmission to select the proper gear for uphill and downhill gradients.

This keeps the transmission from shifting up and down unnecessarily on hills. The transmission will shift down to a lower gear when the driver presses the brake pedal on a downhill gradient. This makes use of the braking effect of the engine without the need to shift down manually.

Manual shift program

Using the manual shift program you can manually select gears.



Fig. 146 Center console: shifting the tiptronic® manually



Fig. 147 Display: manual shift program, selected gear

Switching to manual shift program

► Push the selector lever to the right from D. As soon as the transmission has switched over, the selected gear appears in the display ⇨ *fig. 147*.

To upshift

► Push the selector lever forward to the plus position ⊕ ⇨ *fig. 146*.

To downshift

► Push the lever to the minus position ⊖.

When accelerating, the transmission will automatically shift into the next gear before the engine reaches its maximum RPM.

If you apply a light throttle when accelerating, tiptronic® will automatically shift from 1st to 2nd gear to save fuel. If you apply a heavy throttle, the transmission will stay in 1st gear until near maximum RPM is reached, or until the driver shifts into 2nd gear.

If you take your foot off the accelerator pedal when driving down a steep incline, tiptronic® will downshift from the selected gear into the next lower gear until it reaches 1st gear, based on road speed and engine RPM. Automatic downshifting is interrupted as soon as you apply the throttle again.

Tips

– When you shift into the next lower gear, the transmission will downshift only when there is no possibility of over-revving the engine.
– When the kick-down comes on, the transmission will shift down to a lower gear, depending on vehicle and engine speeds.
– tiptronic® is inoperative when the transmission is in the fail-safe mode.

Steering wheel with tiptronic®

Applies to vehicles: with tiptronic-steering wheel

The shift buttons on the steering wheel allow the driver to shift gears manually.

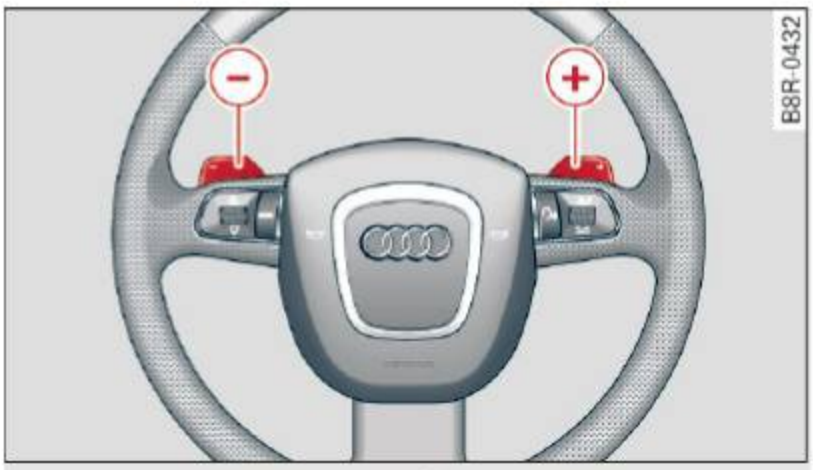


Fig. 148 Steering wheel: Shift buttons

► To downshift, touch the button on the left ⊖.
► To upshift, touch the button on the right ⊕.

The shift buttons are activated when the selector lever is in D, S or in the manual shift program (tiptronic).

Of course, you can continue to use the manual shift program with the selector lever on the center console.

Automatic transmission malfunction

Transmission: please press the brake pedal and select the position again

Press the brake pedal and select the desired selector lever position again. You can then continue driving.

Transmission hot: please modify driving style

The transmission temperature has increased significantly due to the sporty driving manner. Drive in a less sporty manner until the temperature returns to the normal range and the indicator light switches of.

Transmission malfunction: You can continue driving

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. You may continue driving. Drive to your authorized Audi dealer or qualified repair facility soon to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission malfunction: Limited driving functionality

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. The transmission is switching to emergency mode. This mode only shifts into certain gears or will no longer shift at all. The engine may stall. Drive to your authorized Audi dealer or qualified repair facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission malfunction: Stop and shift to P

Do not continue driving. Select the P selector lever position and see your authorized Audi dealer or qualified repair facility for assistance.

Note

If the transmission switches to emergency mode, you should take the vehicle to an authorized Audi dealership as soon as possible to have the condition corrected.

Emergency release of the selector lever

If the vehicle's power supply fails, the selector lever can be released in an emergency.

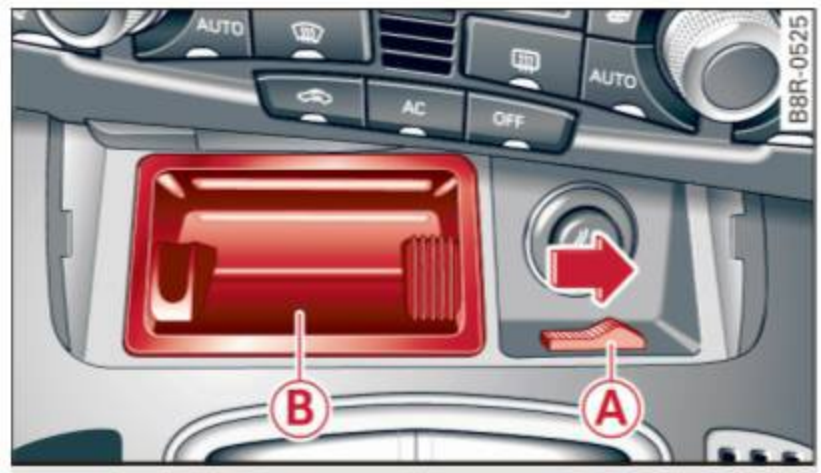


Fig. 149 Removing ashtray insert



Fig. 150 Emergency release for selector lever

The emergency release is located under the insert for the ashtray.

- Slide open the cover for the ashtray.
- Release the ashtray by pushing the switch Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 149* to the right.
- Remove the ashtray insert Ⓑ.
- Now you can see a small cover in the ashtray holder on the front of the ashtray recess ⇨ *fig. 150*.
- Release and remove this cover.
- You now have access to a bolt. Using a screwdriver or similar, press the bolt down and hold it down.
- Now press the interlock and move the selector lever to the N position.

The selector lever can only be moved from the P position if the ignition key is in the lock and the ignition is turned on. If the vehicle has to be pushed or towed if the power supply fails (e.g. battery is discharged), the selector lever must first be moved to the N position using the emergency locking device.

Parking system

Audi parking system plus with rearview camera

Introduction

Applies to vehicles: with Audi parking system plus with rearview camera

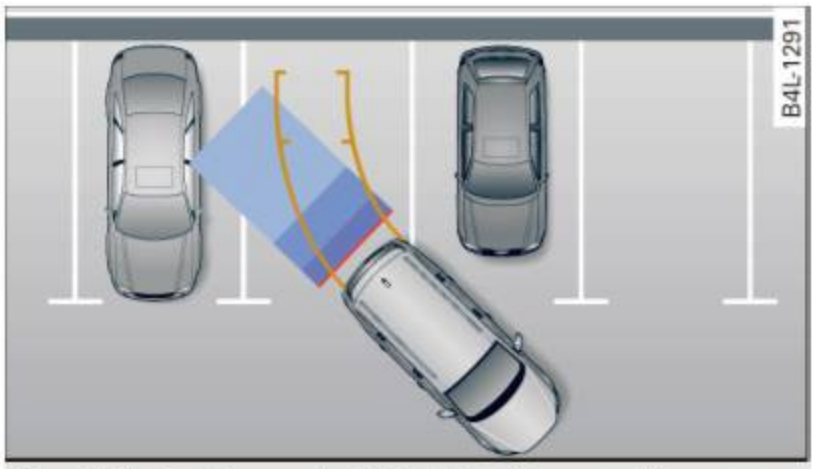


Fig. 151 Parking mode 1: Backing into a parking space

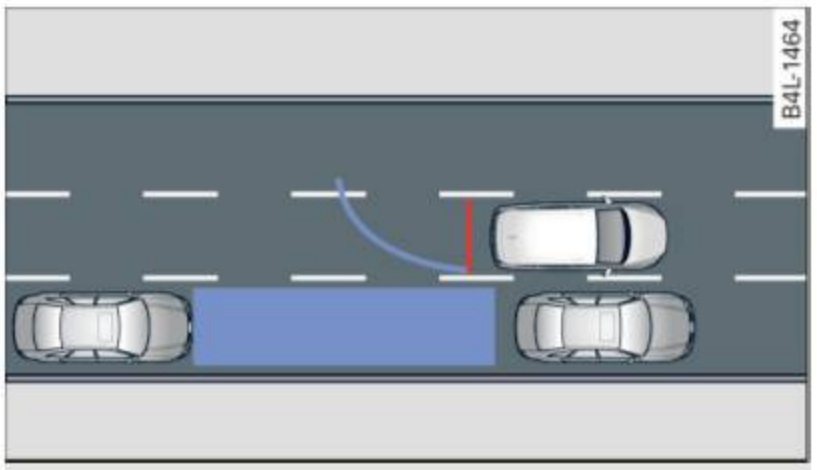


Fig. 152 Parking mode 2: parallel parking

Vehicles with the Audi parking system plus with rearview camera are equipped with a **rearview camera** in addition to the acoustic and visual parking system.

You can choose between parking modes to help you when parking your vehicle. Use "parking mode 1" when parking in a parking space or garage ⇨ *fig. 151*. If you are going to be parallel parking, use "parking mode 2" ⇨ *fig. 152*.

General Information

Applies to vehicles: with Audi parking system plus with rearview camera

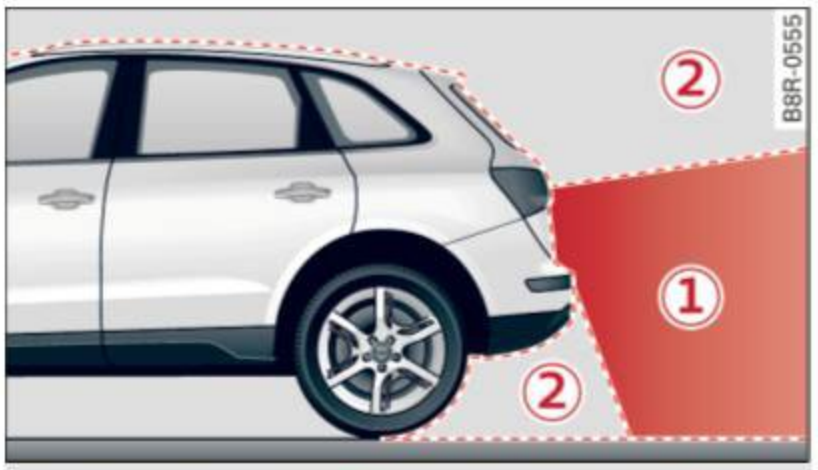


Fig. 153 Area covered ① and area not covered ② by the rearview camera.



Fig. 154 Rear lid: Location of the rearview camera

Sensors in the bumper

Sensors are located in the front and rear bumpers. If these detect an obstacle, audible and visual signals warn you. The range at which the sensors begin to measure is approximately:

front	side	3 ft (0.90 m)
	center	4 ft (1.20 m)
rear	side	2 ft (0.60 m)
	center	5.2 ft (1.60 m)

The closer you get to the obstacle, the shorter the interval between the audible signals. A continuous tone sounds when the obstacle is less than approximately 1 foot (0.30 meters) away. Do not continue driving farther.

If the distance to an obstacle remains constant, the volume of the distance warning gradually drops after about four seconds (this does not apply in the continuous tone range). ▶

Rearview camera coverage area

The MMI display shows the area covered by the rearview camera ⇨ *fig. 153* ①. Objects that are not in the area covered ② are not shown on the MMI display.

We recommend that you practice parking with the rearview camera in a traffic-free location or parking lot to become familiar with the system, the orientation lines, and their function. When doing this, there should be good light and weather conditions.

In the MMI display, objects or vehicles appear closer or further away if:

– you are driving in reverse gear from a level surface onto an incline, or a downward slope,
– you are driving in reverse gear toward protruding objects,
– the vehicle is carrying too much load in the rear.

The accuracy of the orientation lines and blue surfaces diminishes if:

– the rearview camera does not provide a reliable image, for example, in poor visibility conditions or if the lens is dirty,
– the image on the screen is not visible due to sun glare and reflection.

Caring for the rearview camera lens

The rearview camera is located above the rear license plate bracket. For the parking system to operate, the lens ⇨ *fig. 154* must be kept clean:

– Dampen the lens with a household alcohol-based glass cleaner, and then wipe the lens clean with a dry cloth ⇨ (!).
– Remove snow with a hand brush and ice preferably with a de-icing spray ⇨ (!).

WARNING

– The parking system cannot replace the driver's attention. The driver alone is responsible for parking and similar driving maneuvers.
– Sensors have blind spots in which objects cannot be detected. Pay special attention to small children and animals because the sensors cannot always detect them.
– Always keep your eyes on the vehicle's surroundings, using the rearview mirror as well.
– Do not allow yourself to be distracted from traffic by the rearview camera pictures.
– If the position and the installation angle of the camera has changed, for example, after a rear end collision, do not continue to use the system for safety reasons. Have it checked by a qualified dealership.

Note

– Low obstacles already signaled by a warning can disappear from the system's detection range as they are approached and will not continue to be signaled. Objects such as barrier chains, trailer draw bars, thin painted vertical poles or fences may not be detected by the system, posing risk of damage.
– Never use warm or hot water to remove snow or ice from the rearview camera lens - this could cause the lens to crack!
– When cleaning the lens, never use products that are abrasive.

Switching on and off

Applies to vehicles: with Audi parking system plus with rearview camera

The rearview camera switches on automatically together with the acoustic and visual park assist when you put the vehicle in reverse.



Fig. 155 Center console: Parking system switch

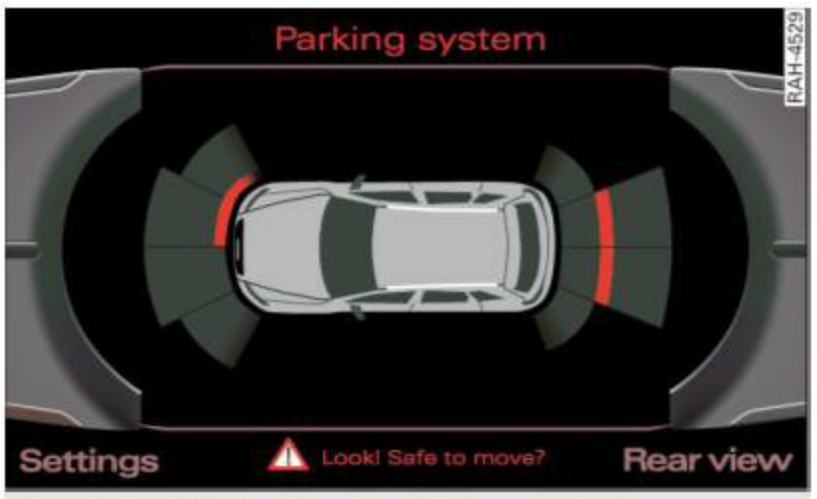


Fig. 156 MMI display: visual distance display

Switching on

- Switch the MMI on and select reverse gear.
- To use the front parking system, press the switch P in the center console ⇨ *fig. 155*. A short confirmation tone sounds and the indicator light in the switch lights up.

Switching between the rearview camera and visual display

- Press the **Graphic** control button ⇨ *page 132, fig. 157* (5) to see the visual display.
- Press the **Rear view** control button to see the rearview camera image ⇨ *fig. 156*.

Switching off

- Drive faster than 6 mph (10 km/h), or
- press the switch P or
- switch off the ignition.

Segments in the visual display

The red segments in front of and behind the vehicle ⇨ *fig. 156* help you to determine the distance between you and an obstacle. As your vehicle comes closer to the obstacle, the segments move closer to the vehicle. The collision area has been reached when the next to last segment is displayed. Do not continue driving farther ⇨ ⚠ *in General Information on page 130*!

WARNING

- The MMI display cannot show, or cannot adequately show, certain objects (such as small posts or grating), recesses in the ground and protruding parts on another car.
- Only use the rearview camera to assist you if it shows a good, clear picture. For example, the image may be affected by the sun shining into the lens, dirt on the lens or if there is a defect.
- Use the rearview camera only with the rear lid completely closed. Make sure any objects you may have mounted on the rear lid do not block the rearview camera.

Tips

- The sensors must be kept clean and free of snow and ice for the park assist to operate.
- The visual display is shown in the illustration of the rearview camera. This display shows where the sensors have detected an obstacle.
- You can change the volume and pitch of the signals as well as the display ⇨ *page 133*.
- Please follow the instructions for towing a trailer ⇨ *page 134*.
- What appears in the display is time-delayed.

Reverse Parking

Applies to vehicles: with Audi parking system plus with rearview camera

Parking mode 1 can be used when parking in a garage or into a parking space.

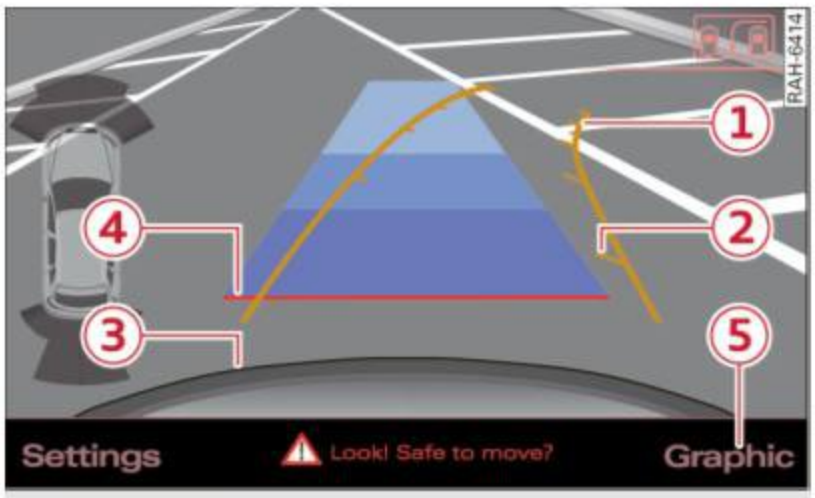


Fig. 157 MMI display: aiming at a parking spot

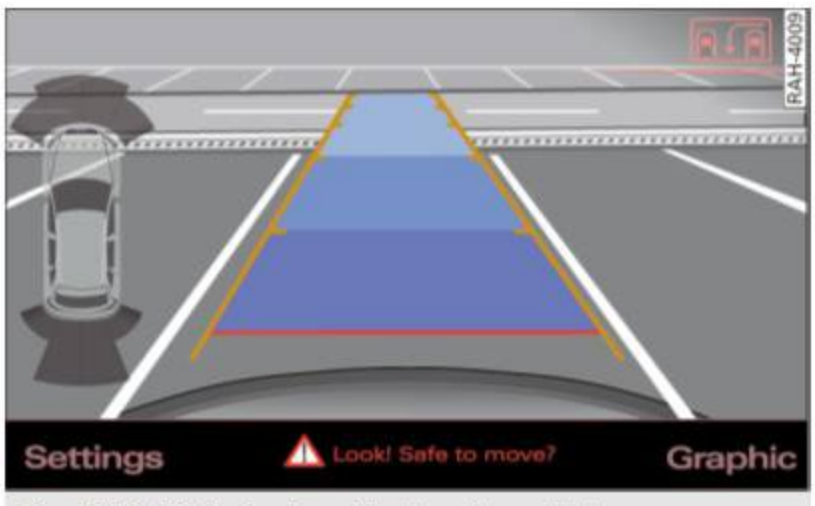


Fig. 158 MMI display: aligning the vehicle

- ▸ Switch the MMI on and select reverse gear.
- ▸ Turn the steering wheel until the orange orientation lines ① appear in the parking spot ⇨ *fig. 157*. Use the markings ② to help you estimate the distance from an obstacle. Each marking represents 3 ft (1 meter). The blue area represents an extension of the vehicle's outline by approximately 16 ft (5 meters) to the rear.
- ▸ While driving in reverse gear, adjust the steering wheel angle to fit the parking space with the aid of the orange orientation lines ⇨ (!). ③ marks the rear bumper. Stop the vehicle when the red orientation line ④ borders an object ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

– The rearview camera does not show the entire area behind the vehicle ⇨ *page 129, fig. 153*. Watch out especially for small children and animals. The rearview camera cannot always detect them, posing risk of an accident!
– Please note that objects not touching the ground can appear to be further away than they really are (for example, the bumper of a parked vehicle, a trailer hitch, or the rear of a truck). In this case, you should not use the help lines to help with parking, which poses danger of an accident!

Note

In the MMI display, the direction of travel of the vehicle rear is represented depending on the steering wheel angle. The vehicle front swings out more than the vehicle rear. Maintain plenty of distance so that your outside mirror or a corner of your vehicle does not collide with any obstacles. This can damage to your vehicle.

Parallel Parking

Applies to vehicles: with Audi parking system plus with rearview camera

Use parking mode 2 to help you parallel park along the side of a street.

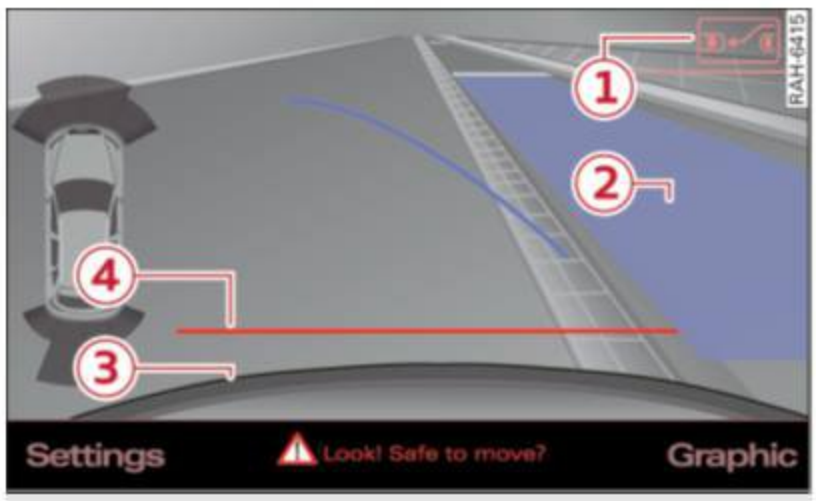


Fig. 159 MMI display: blue surface in the parking spot

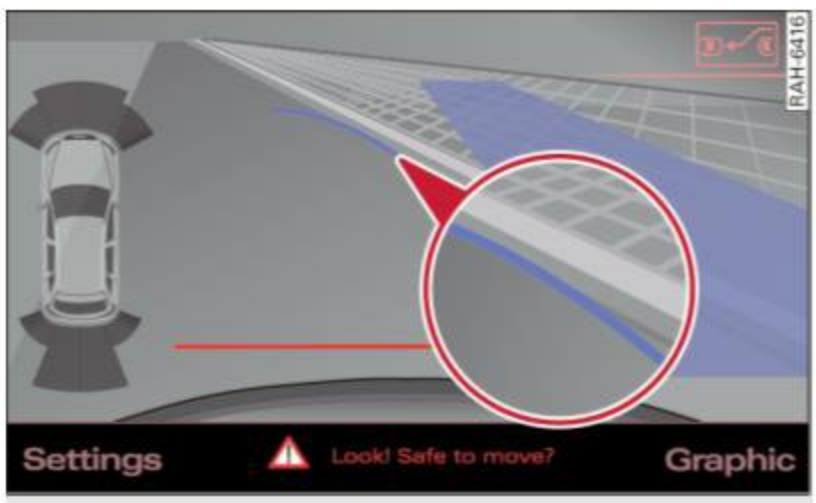


Fig. 160 MMI display: Blue curve on the curb

▶

The following steps apply only when there is no obstacle such as a wall near the parking spot. Otherwise, please read the information provided in the "Parking Next to Obstacles" section.

- ▸ Activate the turn signal.
- ▸ Position your vehicle parallel to the edge of the street, approximately 3 ft (1 meter) from a parked vehicle.
- ▸ Switch the MMI on and select reverse gear. The parking aid turns on and parking mode 1 appears on the display.
- ▸ Press the control button ① ⇨ *fig. 159* on the MMI control console. Parking mode 2 appears.
- ▸ Back up and align your vehicle so the blue area ② borders on the rear end of the vehicle or on the parking spot line. The blue area represents an extension of the vehicle's outline by approximately 16 ft (5 meters) to the rear. The long side of the blue area should be on the curb. The entire blue area must fit into the parking spot.
- ▸ With the vehicle stopped, turn the steering wheel to the right as far as it will go.
- ▸ Back into the parking spot until the blue curve touches the curb ⇨ *fig. 160*. Stop the vehicle.
- ▸ With the vehicle stopped, turn the steering wheel to the left as far as it will go.
- ▸ Continue to back into the parking spot until the vehicle is parked parallel to the curb. ③ marks the rear bumper. Stop the vehicle when the red orientation line ④ borders an object ⇨ ⚠. Keep an eye on the front of your vehicle while doing this ⇨ ⓘ.

Parking next to obstacles

When there is an obstacle (such as a wall) next to the parking spot, choose a spot with more space on the sides. Position the long side of the blue area so that there is sufficient space from the curb. The area must not be on the curb. You will also need to start turning the steering wheel much earlier. There should be a sufficient amount of space between the curb and the blue curve, and the blue curve ⇨ *fig. 160* must **not** touch the curb.

⚠ WARNING

- The rearview camera does not show the entire area behind the vehicle ⇨ *page 129, fig. 153*. Watch out especially for small children and animals. The rearview camera cannot always detect them, posing risk of an accident!
- Please note that objects not touching the ground can appear to be further away than they really are (for example, the bumper of a parked vehicle, a trailer hitch, or the rear of a truck). In this case, you should not use the help lines to help with parking, which poses danger of an accident!

ⓘ Note

In the MMI display, the direction of travel of the vehicle rear is represented depending on the steering wheel angle. The vehicle front swings out more than the vehicle rear. Maintain plenty of distance so that your outside mirror or a corner of your vehicle does not collide with any obstacles. This can damage to your vehicle.

ⓘ Tips

The left or right orientation lines and surfaces will be displayed, depending on the turn signal being used.

Adjusting the display and warning tones

Applies to vehicles: with Audi parking system plus with rearview camera

The display and warning tones can be adjusted in the MMI.

- ▸ Select: Function button CAR > **Parking system**.

Display

- **Off** - when the parking system is switched off, only audible signals are given.
- **On** - when the parking system is switched on, either the visual display or the picture from the rearview camera is displayed. ▶

Warning tones

– **Front volume** - front sensor volume
– **Front frequency** - front sensor frequency
– **Rear volume** - rear sensor volume
– **Rear frequency** - rear sensor frequency
– **In-car entertainment fader** - when the parking system is switched on, the volume of the active audio source is lowered.

The newly adjusted value is briefly heard from the signal generator.

Tips

– The warning tones can also be adjusted directly by the visual display or the picture from the rearview camera. Simply press the **Settings** control button.
– Changed settings are activated when parking system is switched on again.
– The settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key.

Trailer hitch

Applies to vehicles: with Audi parking system plus with rearview camera and trailer hitch

For vehicles with a factory installed trailer hitch, or a trailer hitch installed according to factory specifications, the parking system rear sensors do not come on whenever you shift into reverse gear or when you press the P switch. Remember, there is no warning for distances to the rear. The front sensors remain activated. The visual display switches to the trailer towing mode. The picture from the rearview camera will not show the orientation lines nor the blue surfaces.

If you install a hitch yourself, this function may not work.

Error messages

Applies to vehicles: with Audi parking system plus with rearview camera

There is an error in the system if the LED on the P switch is blinking and you hear a continuous alarm for a few seconds after switching on the parking system or when the parking system is already activated. Have your authorized Audi dealer correct the error.

Tips

If the error is not corrected before you switch off the ignition, when you switch on the parking system again, the LED in the P switch will blink.

HomeLink®

Universal remote control

General information

Applies to vehicles: with HomeLink® universal remote control

The HomeLink® feature can learn up to three radio frequency codes for most current transmitters used for operating garage doors, estate gates, home or outdoor lighting systems, and other devices.

You must first program the HomeLink® transmitter before you can use the system ⇨ *page 136, Programming the HomeLink® transmitter*.

In order to program the HomeLink® transmitter for devices utilizing rolling code, a second person on a ladder who can safely reach the garage door opener motor is recommended. It is also necessary to locate the “learn” button on your garage door opener motor. Refer to the operating instructions for the opener, as the location and color of this button may vary by manufacturer.

You can still use the original remote control for the device at any time.

WARNING

- Never use the HomeLink® transmitter with any garage door opener that does have not the safety stop and reverse feature as required by federal safety standards. This includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982.
- A garage door opener which cannot detect an object, signaling the door to stop and reverse does not meet current federal safety standards. Using a garage door opener without these features increases risk of serious injury or death.
- For safety reasons never release the parking brake or start the engine while anyone is standing in front of the vehicle.
- A garage door or an estate gate may sometimes be set in motion when the HomeLink® remote control is being programmed. If the device is repeatedly activated, this can overstrain motor and damage its electrical components - an overheated motor is a fire hazard!
- To avoid possible injuries or property damage, please always make absolutely certain that no persons or objects are located in the range of motion of any equipment being operated.

Tips

- If you would like more information on HomeLink®, where to purchase the HomeLink® compatible products, or would like to purchase the HomeLink® Home Lighting Package, please call toll-free: 1-800-355-3515.
- For Declaration of Compliance to United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations ⇨ *page 294*.

Programming the HomeLink® transmitter

Applies to vehicles: with HomeLink® universal remote control

The transmitter is programmed in two phases. For rolling code transmitters, a third phase is also necessary.



Fig. 161 Overhead console: HomeLink® keypad

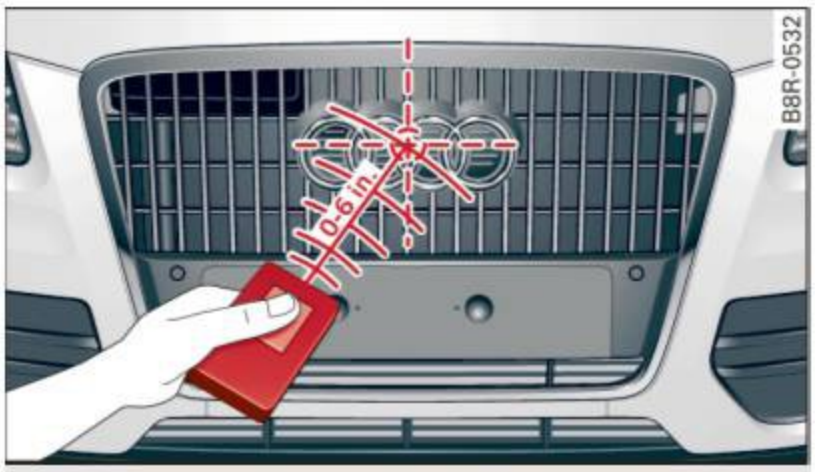


Fig. 162 Radiator grille: location of transmitter unit

Phase 1: programming the overhead keypad

1. Make sure your vehicle is within operating range of the remote controlled garage door opener.
2. Set the parking brake ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 135*.
3. Turn the ignition on. Do not start the engine!
4. Press and hold the two outside HomeLink® buttons Ⓘ and Ⓘⅲ for approximately 20 seconds until indicator light Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 161* begins to flash. Then release both buttons. Do not hold the buttons for longer than 30 seconds.

▸ This procedure only needs to be performed **once**. It erases the factory-set default codes and does not have to be repeated to program additional remote controls.

5. Press and hold the HomeLink® button Ⓘ, Ⓘⅱ or Ⓘⅲ until the indicator light Ⓐ starts flashing *slowly*. Release the button.

▸ *The system will remain in programming mode for 5 minutes. Go to the front of the vehicle and proceed with phase 2.*

Phase 2: at the radiator grille

6. Point the **original remote control** to the middle of the radiator grille of your vehicle ⇨ *fig. 162*.
7. Hold the *original remote control* at a distance between 0–6 in. (0–15 cm) (use the shortest distance possible).
8. Press and hold the activation button on the remote control.

▸ May be different in Canada. If so, press and re-press (cycle) the activation button on your remote control every two seconds.

9. The emergency flashers will flash **three times** (after about 15–60 seconds) when the programming is successful. Release the button on the remote control.

▸ *To program more devices, repeat steps 4 to 9.*

10. Press and hold the trained HomeLink® button and observe the indicator light Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 161*.

▸ If the indicator light is solid/continuous, programming is complete and your device should activate when you press and release the trained HomeLink® button.

▸ If the indicator light blinks rapidly for 2 seconds and is then a solid/continuous light, proceed with phase 3 to program a rolling code device.

Phase 3: rolling code programming

▸ A second person on a ladder who can safely reach the garage door opener motor is recommended.

11. Locate the “learn” button on the garage door opener motor (refer to the operating instructions for the opener, as the location of this button may vary by manufacturer).
12. Press and release the learn button on the garage door opener motor. ▶

- ▸ **Note:** once the button is pressed, there are **30 seconds** in which to initiate the next step.

13. On the HomeLink® keypad inside the vehicle, firmly press and hold the HomeLink® button previously programmed in phases 1 and 2 for two seconds and release. Repeat this sequence **twice**.

- ▸ Some vehicles may require the press/hold/release sequence up to three times to complete the training process.
- ▸ *HomeLink® should now activate your rolling code equipped device.*

If the 5 minute time limit is exceeded, the **emergency flashers will flash one time** to indicate that the process has been terminated. In this case, repeat steps 4 through 9.

If the emergency flashers do not flash *three* times (after about 15–60 seconds), programming was not successful. In this case, repeat steps 4 through 9.

Remote control units for garage door openers in Canada are set to stop transmitting radio frequency signals after two seconds. This time may not be sufficient for the HomeLink® system to learn the radio frequency signal. Perform all other steps as described above.

Operating the HomeLink® transmitter

Applies to vehicles: with HomeLink® universal remote control

The HomeLink® transmitter works in the same manner as the original handheld remote control that came with the system.



Fig. 163 Overhead console: HomeLink® keypad

- ▸ Press the appropriate programmed button Ⓘ, Ⓘⓘ or Ⓘⓘⓘ to activate the desired remote control function ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 135.*

Reprogramming a single button

Applies to vehicles: with HomeLink® universal remote control

A HomeLink® button can be reprogrammed individually without affecting the other button allocations.

Programming the overhead keypad

- ▸ Press the appropriate HomeLink® button until the indicator light begins flashing slowly.

At the radiator grille

1. Point the **original remote control** to the middle of the radiator grille of your vehicle ⇨ *page 136, fig. 162*.
2. Hold the *original remote control* at a distance between 0–6 in. (0–15 cm) (use the shortest distance possible).
3. Press and hold the activation button on the remote control.
4. The emergency flashers will flash **three times** (after about 15–60 seconds) when the programming is successful. Now release the button on the remote control.

- ▸ If the device utilizes a rolling code, please follow phase 3 of ⇨ *page 136, Programming the HomeLink® transmitter* for rolling code programming.

This procedure will cause the existing programming on the HomeLink® button to be erased!

Erasing the programming of the HomeLink® transmitter

Applies to vehicles: with HomeLink® universal remote control

When you erase the programming, the programming on all three of the transmitter channels with be lost!

- ▸ Perform steps 1 to 4 as described on ⇨ *page 136, Phase 1: programming the overhead keypad.* ▶

When completed, the HomeLink® system will be in the programming mode and is then ready to learn the codes for remote controlled devices.

Tips

– Programmed buttons cannot be erased individually.
– For security reasons you are advised to erase the programming of the HomeLink® system before you sell your vehicle.

Driving Safely

General notes

Safe driving habits

Please remember - safety first!

This chapter contains important information, tips, instructions and warnings that you need to read and observe for your own safety, the safety of your passengers and others. We have summarized here what you need to know about safety belts, airbags, child restraints as well as child safety. Your safety is for us *priority number 1*. Always observe the information and warnings in this section - for your own safety as well as that of your passengers.

The information in this section applies to all model versions of your vehicle. Some of the features described in this sections may be standard equipment on some models, or may be optional equipment on others. If you are not sure, ask your authorized Audi dealer.

WARNING

- Always make sure that you follow the instructions and heed the WARNINGS in this Manual. It is in your interest and in the interest of your passengers.
- Always keep the complete Owner's Literature in your Audi when you lend or sell your vehicle so that this important information will always be available to the driver and passengers.
- Always keep the Owner's literature handy so that you can find it easily if you have questions.

Safety equipment

The safety features are part of the occupant restraint system and work together to help reduce the risk of injury in a wide variety of accident situations.

Your safety and the safety of your passengers should not be left to chance. Advances in technology have made a variety of features available to help reduce the risk of injury in an accident. The following is a list of just a few of the safety features in your Audi:

- sophisticated safety belts for driver and all passenger seating positions,
- belt force limiters for the front seats,
- belt pretensioners for the seats,
- belt height adjustment for the front seats,
- head restraints for each seating position,
- front airbags,
- side airbags in the front seats and outer rear seats*,
- side curtain airbags,
- special LATCH anchorages for child restraints,
- adjustable steering column.

These individual safety features, can work together as a system to help protect you and your passengers in a wide range of accidents. These features cannot work as a system if they are not always correctly adjusted and correctly used.

Safety is everybody's responsibility!

Important things to do before driving

Safety is everybody's job! Vehicle and occupant safety always depends on the informed and careful driver.

For your safety and the safety of your passengers, **before driving always:**

- ▸ Make sure that all lights and signals are operating correctly.
- ▸ Make sure that the tire pressure is correct.
- ▸ Make sure that all windows are clean and afford good visibility to the outside.
- ▸ Secure all luggage and other items carefully ⇨ *page 79*.
- ▸ Make sure that nothing can interfere with the pedals.
- ▸ Adjust front seat, head restraint and mirrors correctly for your height.
- ▸ Instruct passengers to adjust the head restraints according to their height.
- ▸ Make sure to use the right child restraint correctly to protect children ⇨ *page 178, Child Safety*.

- Sit properly in your seat and make sure that your passengers do the same ⇨ *page 64, General recommendations*.
- Fasten your safety belt and wear it properly. Also instruct your passengers to fasten their safety belts properly ⇨ *page 148*.

What impairs driving safety?

Safe driving is directly related to the condition of the vehicle, the driver as well as the driver's ability to concentrate on the road without being distracted.

The driver is responsible for the safety of the vehicle and all of its occupants. If your ability to drive is impaired, safety risks for everybody in the vehicle increase and you also become a hazard to everyone else on the road ⇨ ⚠. Therefore:

- Do not let yourself be distracted by passengers or by using a cellular telephone.
- NEVER drive when your driving ability is impaired (by medications, alcohol, drugs, etc.).
- Observe all traffic laws, rules of the road and speed limits and plain common sense.
- ALWAYS adjust your speed to road, traffic and weather conditions.
- Take frequent breaks on long trips. Do not drive for more than two hours at a stretch.
- Do NOT drive when you are tired, under pressure or when you are stressed.

⚠ WARNING

Impaired driving safety increases the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

Proper occupant seating positions

Proper seating position for the driver

The proper driver seating position is important for safe, relaxed driving.

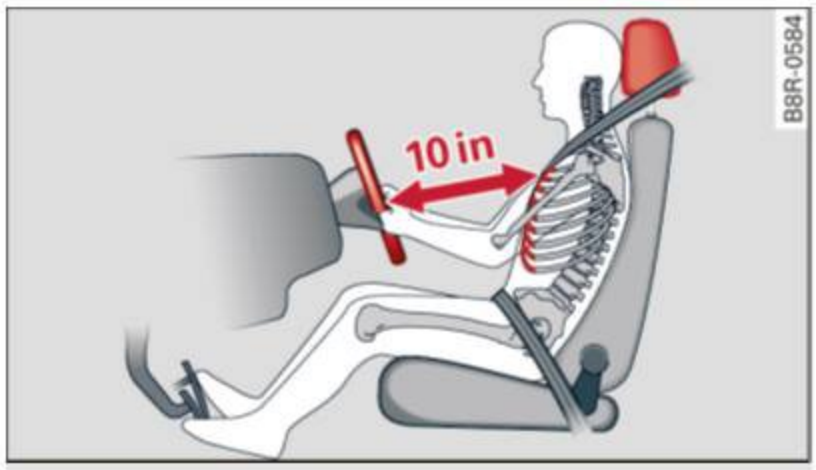


Fig. 164 Correct seating position

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend that you adjust the driver's seat to the following position:

- Adjust the driver's seat so that you can easily push the pedals all the way to the floor while keeping your knee(s) slightly bent ⇨ ⚠.
- Adjust the angle of the seatback so that it is in an upright position so that your back comes in full contact with it when you drive.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that there is a distance of at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the steering wheel and your breast bone ⇨ *fig. 164*. If not possible, see your authorized Audi dealer about adaptive equipment.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that the steering wheel and airbag cover points at your chest and not at your face.
- Grasp the top of the steering wheel with your elbow(s) slightly bent.
- Adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible.
- Fasten and wear safety belts correctly ⇨ *page 151*.

▶

▸ Always keep both feet in the footwell so that you are in control of the vehicle at all times.

For detailed information on how to adjust the driver's seat, see ⇨ *page 65*.

WARNING

Drivers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

– Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between your breastbone and the steering wheel.
– Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
– Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands at other positions inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag deploys.
– Pointing the steering wheel toward your face decreases the ability of the supplemental driver's airbag to protect you in a collision.
– Always sit in an upright position and never lean against or place any part of your body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
– Before driving, always adjust the front seats and head restraints properly and make sure that all passengers are properly restrained.
– Never adjust the seats while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly and you could lose control of the vehicle.
– Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.
– Children must always ride in child safety seats ⇨ *page 178*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 156*.

Proper seating position for the front passenger

The proper front passenger seating position is important for safe, relaxed driving.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend that you adjust the seat for the front passenger to the following position:

▸ Adjust the angle of the seatback so that it is in an upright position and your back comes in full contact with it whenever the vehicle is moving.
▸ Adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible ⇨ *page 142*.
▸ Keep both feet flat on the floor in front of the front passenger seat.
▸ Fasten and wear safety belts correctly ⇨ *page 151*.

For detailed information on how to adjust the front passenger's seat, see ⇨ *page 64*.

WARNING

Front seat passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured or killed by the airbag as it unfolds. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

– Passengers must always sit in an upright position and never lean against or place any part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
– Passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it ▸

unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye.
– Always make sure that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the front passenger's breastbone and the instrument panel.
– Each passenger must always sit on a seat of their own and properly fasten and wear the safety belt belonging to that seat.
– Before driving, always adjust the front passenger seat and head restraint properly.
– Always keep your feet on the floor in front of the seat. Never rest them on the seat, instrument panel, out of the window, etc. The airbag system and safety belt will not be able to protect you properly and can even increase the risk of injury in a crash.
– Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.
– Children must always ride in child safety seats ⇨ *page 178*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 156*.

Proper seating positions for passengers in rear seats

Rear seat passengers must sit upright with both feet on the floor consistent with their physical size and be properly restrained whenever the vehicle is in use.

To reduce the risk of injury caused by an incorrect seating position in the event of a sudden braking maneuver or an accident, your passengers on the rear bench seat must always observe the following:

- If there is a passenger on the rear center seating position, slide the center head restraint upward at least to the next notch ⇨ *page 68*.
- Make sure that the seatback is securely latched in the upright position ⇨ *page 70*.
- Keep both feet flat in the footwell in front of the rear seat.
- Fasten and wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 151*.
- Make sure that children are always properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for their size and age ⇨ *page 178*.

WARNING

Passengers who are improperly seated on the rear seat can be seriously injured in a crash.
– Each passenger must always sit on a seat of their own and properly fasten and wear the safety belt belonging to that seat.
– Safety belts only offer maximum protection when the seatback is securely latched in the upright position and the safety belts are properly positioned on the body. By not sitting upright, a rear seat passenger increases the risk of personal injury from improperly positioned safety belts!
– Always adjust the head restraint properly so that it can give maximum protection.

Proper adjustment of head restraints

Correctly adjusted head restraints are an important part of your vehicle's occupant restraint system and can help to reduce the risk of injuries in accident situations.

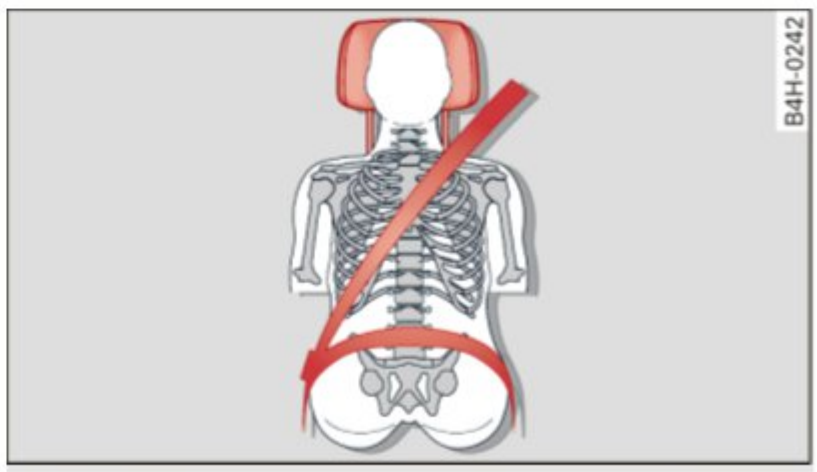


Fig. 165 Head restraint: viewed from the front

The head restraints must be correctly adjusted to achieve the best protection. ▶

- ▸ Adjust the head restraints so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible ⇨ *fig. 165*.
- ▸ If there is a passenger on the rear center seating position, slide the center head restraint upward at least to the next notch.

Adjusting head restraints ⇨ *page 68*.

⚠ WARNING

Driving without head restraints or with head restraints that are not properly adjusted increases the risk of serious or fatal neck injury dramatically. To help reduce the risk of injury:

– Always drive with the head restraints in place and properly adjusted.
– Every person in the vehicle must have a properly adjusted head restraint.
– Always make sure each person in the vehicle properly adjusts their head restraint. Adjust the head restraints so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible.
– Never attempt to adjust head restraint while driving. If you have driven off and must adjust the driver headrest for any reason, first stop the vehicle safely before attempting to adjust the head restraint.
– Children must always be properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for their age and size ⇨ *page 178*.

Examples of improper seating positions

The occupant restraint system can only reduce the risk of injury if vehicle occupants are properly seated.

Improper seating positions can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are properly positioned on the body. Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and will even increase the risk of injury and death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury and death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not in the proper seating position. A driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants and especially for children. Therefore:

- ▸ Never allow anyone to assume an incorrect seating position when the vehicle is being used ⇨ ⚠.

The following bulletins list only some sample positions that will increase the risk of serious injury and death. Our hope is that these examples will make you more aware of seating positions that are dangerous.

Therefore, whenever the vehicle is moving:

– never stand up in the vehicle
– never stand on the seats
– never kneel on the seats
– never ride with the seatback reclined
– never lie down on the rear seat
– never lean up against the instrument panel
– never sit on the edge of the seat
– never sit sideways
– never lean out the window
– never put your feet out the window
– never put your feet on the instrument panel
– never rest your feet on the seat cushion or back of the seat
– never ride in the footwell
– never ride in the cargo area

⚠ WARNING

Improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

– Always make sure that all vehicle occupants stay in a proper seating position and are properly restrained whenever the vehicle is being used.

Pedal area

Pedals

The pedals must always be free to move and must never be interfered with by a floor mat or any other object.

Make sure that all pedals move freely without interference and that nothing prevents them from returning to their original positions.

Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area free and can be secured with floor mat fasteners.

If a brake circuit fails, increased brake pedal travel is required to bring the vehicle to a full stop.

WARNING

Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious injury.

– Never place any objects in the driver's footwell. An object could get into the pedal area and interfere with pedal function. In case of sudden braking or an accident, you would not be able to brake or accelerate!
– Always make sure that nothing can fall or move into the driver's footwell.

Floor mats on the driver side

Always use floor mats that can be securely attached to the floor mat fasteners and do not interfere with the free movement of the pedals.

▸ Make sure that the floor mats are properly secured and cannot move and interfere with the pedals ⇨ ⚠.

Use only floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed and that are firmly secured so that they cannot slip out of position. You can obtain suitable floor mats from your authorized Audi dealer.

Floor mat fasteners are installed in your Audi.

Floor mats used in your vehicle must be attached to these fasteners. Properly securing the floor mats will prevent them from sliding into positions that could interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

WARNING

Pedals that cannot move freely can result in a loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

– Always make sure that floor mats are properly secured.
– Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings in the vehicle that cannot be properly secured in place to prevent them from slipping and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.
– Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings on top of already installed floor mats. Additional floor mats and other coverings will reduce the size of the pedal area and interfere with the pedals.
– Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been taken out for cleaning.
– Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver footwell while the vehicle is moving. Objects can become trapped under the brake pedal and accelerator pedal causing a loss of vehicle control.

Stowing luggage

Loading the luggage compartment

All luggage and other objects must be properly stowed and secured in the luggage compartment.

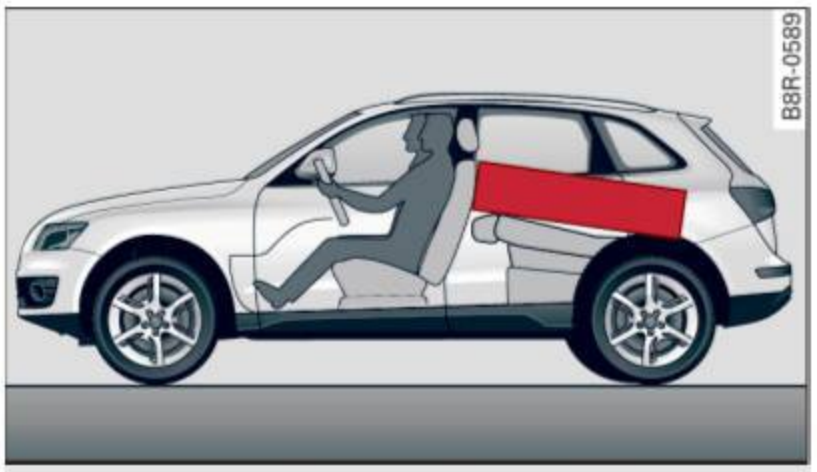


Fig. 166 Safe load positioning: place heavy objects as low and as far forward as possible.

Loose items in the luggage compartment can shift suddenly, changing vehicle handling characteristics. Loose items can also increase the risk of serious personal injury in a sudden vehicle maneuver or in a collision.

- ▸ Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.
- ▸ Always place and properly secure heavy items in the luggage compartment as low and as far forward as possible ⇨ *fig. 166*.
- ▸ Secure luggage using the tie-downs provided ⇨ *page 71*.
- ▸ Make sure that the rear seatback is securely latched in place.

WARNING

Improperly stored luggage or other items can fly through the vehicle causing serious personal injury in the event of hard braking or an accident. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

– Always put objects, for example, luggage or other heavy items in the luggage compartment.
– Always secure objects in the luggage compartment using the tie-down eyelets and suitable straps.

WARNING

Heavy loads will influence the way your vehicle handles. To help reduce the risk of a loss of control leading to serious personal injury:

– Always keep in mind when transporting heavy objects, that a change in the center of gravity can also cause changes in vehicle handling:
  – Always distribute the load as evenly as possible.
  – Place heavy objects as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.
– Never exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating or the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating specified on the safety compliance sticker on the left door jamb. Exceeding permissible weight standards can cause the vehicle to slide and handle differently.
– Please observe information on safe driving ⇨ *page 139*.

WARNING

To help prevent poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle, always keep the rear lid closed while driving.

– Never transport objects larger than those fitting completely into the luggage area because the rear lid cannot be fully closed.
– If you absolutely must drive with the rear lid open, observe the following notes to reduce the risk of poisoning:
  – Close all windows,
  – Close the Panoramic sliding sunroof*,
  – Open all air outlets in the instrument panel,
  – Switch off the air recirculation,
  – Set the fresh air fan to the highest speed.

WARNING

Always make sure that the doors, all windows, the Panoramic sliding sunroof* and the rear lid are securely closed and locked ▸

to reduce the risk of injury when the vehicle is not being used.

– After closing the rear lid, always make sure that it is properly closed and locked.
– Never leave your vehicle unattended especially with the rear lid left open. A child could crawl into the vehicle through the luggage compartment and close the rear lid becoming trapped and unable to get out. Being trapped in a vehicle can lead to serious personal injury.
– Never let children play in or around the vehicle.
– Never let passengers ride in the luggage compartment. Vehicle occupants must always be properly restrained in one of the vehicle's seating positions.

Tips

– Air circulation helps to reduce window fogging. Stale air escapes to the outside through vents in the trim panel. Be sure to keep these slots free and open.
– The tire pressure must correspond to the load. The tire pressure is shown on the tire pressure label. The tire pressure label is located on the driver's side B-pillar. The tire pressure label lists the recommended cold tire inflation pressures for the vehicle at its maximum capacity weight and the tires that were on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured. For recommended tire pressures for normal load conditions, please see chapter ⇨ *page 251*.

Tie-downs

The luggage compartment is equipped with four tie-downs to secure luggage and other items.

Use the tie-downs to secure your cargo properly ⇨ *page 145, Loading the luggage compartment*.

In a collision, the laws of physics mean that even smaller items that are loose in the vehicle will become heavy missiles that can cause serious injury. Items in the vehicle possess energy which vary with vehicle speed and the weight of the item. Vehicle speed is the most significant factor.

For example, in a frontal collision at a speed of 30 mph (48 km/h), the forces acting on a 10-lb (4.5 kg) object are about 20 times the normal weight of the item. This means that the weight of the item would suddenly be about 200 lbs. (90 kg). You can imagine the injuries that a 200 lbs. (90 kg) item flying freely through the passenger compartment could cause in a collision like this.

WARNING

Weak, damaged or improper straps used to secure items to tie-downs can fail during hard braking or in a collision and cause serious personal injury.

– Always use suitable mounting straps and properly secure items to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment to help prevent items from shifting or flying forward as dangerous missiles.
– When the rear seat backrest is folded down, always use suitable mounting straps and properly secure items to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment to help prevent items from flying forward as dangerous missiles into the passenger compartment.
– Never attach a child safety seat tether strap to a tie-down.

Reporting Safety Defects

Applicable to U.S.A.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration ▶

(NHTSA) in addition to notifying Audi of America, Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defects exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Audi of America, Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at:

Tel.: 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153)

or write to:

Administrator
NHTSA
1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from:

http://www.safercar.gov

Applicable to Canada

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may telephone the toll free hotline:

Tel.: 1-800-333-0371 or
Tel.: 1-613-998-8616 if you are in the Ottawa area
TTY for hearing impaired:
1-888-675-6863

email comments/questions to:
roadsafetywebmail@tc.gc.ca

or contact Transport Canada by mail at:

Road Safety and Motor Vehicle Regulation Directorate
Transport Canada
Tower C, Place de Ville,
330 Sparks Street
Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0N5

For additional road safety information, please visit the Road Safety website at:

http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety/index.htm

Safety belts

General notes

Always wear safety belts!

Wearing safety belts correctly saves lives!

This chapter explains why safety belts are necessary, how they work and how to adjust and wear them correctly.

▸ Read all the information that follows and heed all of the instructions and WARNINGS.

WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

– Safety belts are the single most effective means available to reduce the risk of serious injury and death in automobile accidents. For your protection and that of your passengers, always correctly wear safety belts when the vehicle is moving.
– Pregnant women, injured, or physically impaired persons must also use safety belts. Like all vehicle occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts. The best way to protect a fetus is to protect the mother - throughout the entire pregnancy.
– Be sure everyone riding in the vehicle is properly restrained with a separate safety belt or child restraint.

Number of seats

Your Audi has a total of five seating positions: two in the front and three in the rear. Each seating position has a safety belt.

WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

– Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any belt. It is especially dangerous to place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.
– Never let more people ride in the vehicle than there are safety belts available.

Safety belt warning light

Your vehicle has a warning system for the driver and (on USA models only) front seat passenger to remind you about the importance of buckling-up.



Fig. 167 Safety belt warning light in the instrument cluster - enlarged

Before driving off, always:

▸ Fasten your safety belt and make sure you are wearing it properly.
▸ Make sure that your passengers also buckle up and properly wear their safety belts.
▸ Protect your children with a child restraint system appropriate for the size and age of the children.

The warning light in the instrument cluster lights up when the ignition is switched on as a reminder to fasten the safety belts. In addition, you will hear a warning tone for a certain period of time.

Fasten your safety belt now and make sure that your passengers also properly put on their safety belts.

WARNING

– Safety belts are the single most effective means available to reduce the risk of serious injury and death in automobile accidents. For your protection and that of your passengers, always correctly wear safety belts when the vehicle is moving.

▶

– Failure to pay attention to the warning light that come on, could lead to personal injury.

Why safety belts?

Frontal collisions and the law of physics

Frontal crashes create very strong forces for people riding in vehicles.

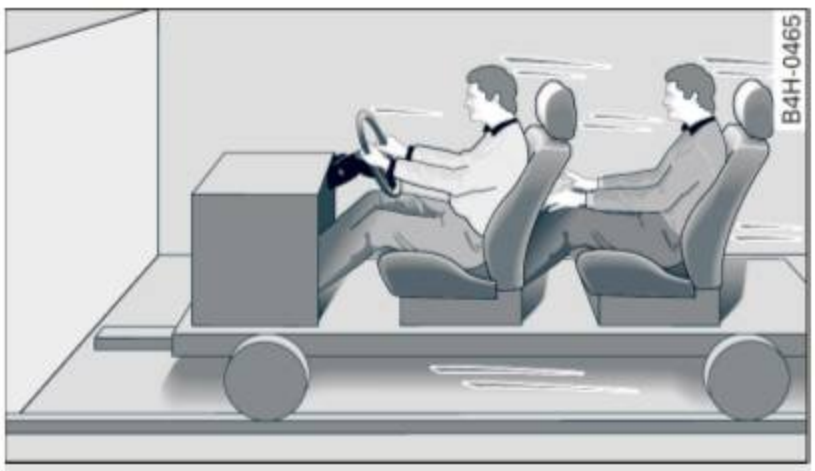


Fig. 168 Unbelted occupants in a vehicle heading for a wall



Fig. 169 The vehicle crashes into the wall

The physical principles are simple. Both the vehicle and the passengers possess energy which varies with vehicle speed and body weight. Engineers call this energy “kinetic energy.”

The higher the speed of the vehicle and the greater the vehicle's weight, the more energy that has to be “absorbed” in the crash.

Vehicle speed is the most significant factor. If the speed doubles from 15 to 30 mph (25 to 50 km/h), the energy increases 4 times!

Because the passengers of this vehicle are not using safety belts ⇨ *fig. 168*, they will keep moving at the same speed the vehicle was moving just before the crash, until something stops them - here, the wall ⇨ *fig. 169*.

The same principles apply to people sitting in a vehicle that is involved in a frontal collision. Even at city speeds of 20 to 30 mph (30 to 50 km/h), the forces acting on the body can reach one ton (2,000 lbs. or 1,000 kg) or more. At greater speeds, these forces are even higher.

People who do not use safety belts are also not attached to their vehicle. In a frontal collision they will also keep moving forward at the speed their vehicle was travelling just before the crash. Of course, the laws of physics don't just apply to frontal collisions, they determine what happens in all kinds of accidents and collisions.

What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts?

In crashes unbelted occupants cannot stop themselves from flying forward and being injured or killed. Always wear your safety belts!



Fig. 170 A driver not wearing a safety belt is violently thrown forward



Fig. 171 A rear passenger not wearing a safety belt will fly forward and strike the driver

Unbelted occupants are not able to resist the tremendous forces of impact by holding tight or bracing themselves. Without the benefit of safety restraint systems, the unrestrained ▶

occupant will slam violently into the steering wheel, instrument panel, windshield, or whatever else is in the way ⇨ *fig. 170*. This impact with the vehicle interior has all the energy they had just before the crash.

Never rely on airbags alone for protection. Even when they deploy, airbags provide only additional protection. Airbags are not supposed to deploy in all kinds of accidents. Although your Audi is equipped with airbags, all vehicle occupants, including the driver, must wear safety belts correctly in order to minimize the risk of severe injury or death in a crash.

Remember too, that airbags will deploy only once and that your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed. Unbelted occupants can also be thrown out of the vehicle where even more severe or fatal injuries can occur.

It is also important for the rear passengers to wear safety belts correctly. Unbelted passengers in the rear seats endanger not only themselves but also the driver and other passengers ⇨ *fig. 171*. In a frontal collision they will be thrown forward violently, where they can hit and injure the driver and/or front seat passenger.

Safety belts protect

People think it's possible to use the hands to brace the body in a minor collision. It's simply not true!



Fig. 172 Driver is correctly restrained in a sudden braking maneuver

Safety belts used properly can make a big difference. Safety belts help to keep passengers in their seats, gradually reduce energy levels applied to the body in an accident, and help prevent the uncontrolled movement that can cause serious injuries. In addition, safety belts reduce the danger of being thrown out of the vehicle.

Safety belts attach passengers to the car and give them the benefit of being slowed down more gently or "softly" through the "give" in the safety belts, crush zones and other safety features engineered into today's vehicles. By "absorbing" the kinetic energy over a longer period of time, the safety belts make the forces on the body more "tolerable" and less likely to cause injury.

Although these examples are based on a frontal collision, safety belts can also substantially reduce the risk of injury in other kinds of crashes. So, whether you're on a long trip or just going to the corner store, always buckle up and make sure others do, too. Accident statistics show that vehicle occupants properly wearing safety belts have a lower risk of being injured and a much better chance of surviving an accident. Properly using safety belts also greatly increases the ability of the supplemental airbags to do their job in a collision. For this reason, wearing a safety belt is legally required in most countries including much of the United States and Canada.

Although your Audi is equipped with airbags, you still have to wear the safety belts provided. Front airbags, for example, are activated only in some frontal collisions. The front airbags are not activated in all frontal collisions, in side and rear collisions, in roll overs or in cases where there is not enough deceleration through impact to the front of the vehicle. The same goes for the other airbag systems in your Audi. So, always wear your safety belt and make sure everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained!

Important safety instructions about safety belts

Safety belts must always be correctly positioned across the strongest bones of your body.

- ▸ Always wear safety belts as illustrated and described in this chapter.
- ▸ Make sure that your safety belts are always ready for use and are not damaged.

WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death. Safety belts can work only when used correctly.

- – Always fasten your safety belts correctly before driving off and make sure all passengers are correctly restrained.
- – For maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned properly on the body.
- – Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any belt.
- – Never place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.
- – Always keep feet in the footwell in front of the seat while the vehicle is being driven.
- – Never let any person ride with their feet on the instrument panel or sticking out the window or on the seat.
- – Never remove a safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed.
- – Never wear belts twisted.
- – Never wear belts over rigid or breakable objects in or on your clothing, such as eye glasses, pens, keys, etc., as these may cause injury.
- – Never allow safety belts to become damaged by being caught in door or seat hardware.
- – Do not wear the shoulder part of the belt under your arm or otherwise out of position.
- – Several layers of heavy clothing may interfere with correct positioning of belts and reduce the overall effectiveness of the system.
- – Always keep belt buckles free of anything that may prevent the buckle from latching securely.
- – Never use comfort clips or devices that create slack in the shoulder belt. However, special clips may be required for the proper use of some child restraint systems.
- – Torn or frayed safety belts can tear, and damaged belt hardware can break in an accident. Inspect belts regularly. If webbing, bindings, buckles, or retractors are damaged, have belts replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- – Safety belts that have been worn and loaded in an accident must be replaced with the correct replacement safety belt by an authorized Audi dealer. Replacement may be necessary even if damage cannot be clearly seen. Anchorages that were loaded must also be inspected.
- – Never remove, modify, disassemble, or try to repair the safety belts yourself.
- – Always keep the belts clean. Dirty belts may not work properly and can impair the function of the inertia reel ⇨ *page 226, Safety belts*.

Safety belts

Fastening safety belts

Seat first - everybody buckle up!



Fig. 173 Belt buckle and tongue on the driver's seat

To provide maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the wearer's body.

- ▸ Adjust the front seat and head restraint properly ⇨ *page 64, General recommendations*.
- ▸ Make sure the seatback of the rear seat bench is in an upright position and securely latched in place before using the belt ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Hold the belt by the tongue and pull it evenly across the chest and pelvis ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Insert the tongue into the correct buckle of your seat until you hear it latch securely ⇨ *fig. 173*.
- ▸ Pull on the belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle.

Automatic safety belt retractors

Every safety belt is equipped with an automatic belt retractor on the shoulder belt. This feature locks the belt when the belt is pulled out fast, during hard braking and in an accident. The belt may also lock when you drive up or down a steep hill or through a sharp curve. During normal driving the belt lets you move freely.

Safety belt pretensioners

The safety belts are equipped with a belt pretensioner that helps to tighten the safety belt and remove slack when the pretensioner is activated. The function of the pretensioner is monitored by a warning light ⇨ *page 16*.

Switchable locking feature

Every safety belt except the one on the driver seat is equipped with a switchable locking feature that **must** be used when the safety belt is used to attach a child safety seat. Be sure to read the important information about this feature ⇨ *page 187*.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious injury in an accident ⇨ *page 152, Safety belt position*.

– Safety belts offer optimum protection only when the seatback is upright and belts are properly positioned on the body.
– Always make sure that the rear seat backrest to which the center rear safety belt is attached is securely latched whenever the rear center safety belt is being used. If the backrest is not securely latched, the passenger will move forward with the backrest during sudden braking, in a sudden maneuver and especially in a crash.
– Never attach the safety belt to the buckle for another seat. Attaching the belt to the wrong buckle will reduce safety belt effectiveness and can cause serious personal injury.
– A passenger who is not properly restrained can be seriously injured by the safety belt itself when it moves from the stronger parts of the body into critical areas like the abdomen.
– Always lock the convertible locking retractor when you are securing a child safety seat in the vehicle ⇨ *page 189*.

Safety belt position

Correct belt position is the key to getting maximum protection from safety belts.

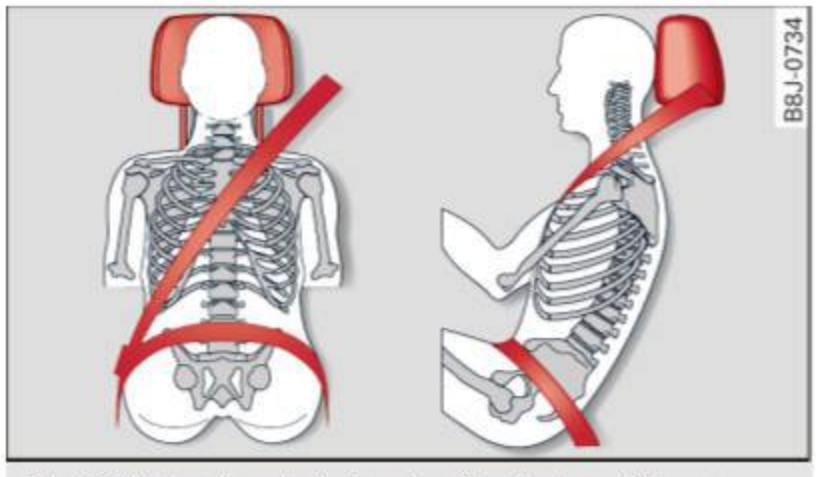


Fig. 174 Head restraint and safety belt position as seen from the side

Standard features on your vehicle help you adjust the position of the safety belt to match your body size.

– belt height adjustment for the front seats,
– height-adjustable front seats. ▶

WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

– The shoulder belt portion of the safety belt must be positioned over the middle of the occupant's shoulder and never across the neck or throat.
– The safety belt must lie flat and snug on the occupant's upper body ⇨ *fig. 174*. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
– The lap belt portion of the safety belt must be positioned as low as possible across pelvis and never over the abdomen. Make sure the belt lies flat and snug ⇨ *fig. 174*. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
– A loose-fitting safety belt can cause serious injuries by shifting its position on your body from the strong bones to more vulnerable, soft tissue and cause serious injury.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ *page 151*.

Pregnant women must also be correctly restrained

The best way to protect the fetus is to make sure that expectant mothers always wear safety belts correctly - throughout the pregnancy.



Fig. 175 Safety belt position during pregnancy

To provide maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the wearer's body ⇨ *page 152*.

- ▸ Adjust the front seat and head restraint correctly ⇨ *page 64, General recommendations*.
- ▸ Make sure the seatback of the rear seat bench is in an upright position and securely latched in place before using the belt.
- ▸ Hold the belt by the tongue and pull it evenly across the chest and pelvis ⇨ *fig. 175*, ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Insert the tongue into the correct buckle of your seat until you hear it latch securely ⇨ *page 151, fig. 173*.
- ▸ Pull on the belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle.

WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

– Expectant mothers must always wear the lap portion of the safety belt as low as possible across the pelvis and below the rounding of the abdomen.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ ⚠ *in Fastening safety belts on page 152*.

Unfastening safety belts

Unbuckle the safety belt with the red release button only after the vehicle has stopped.

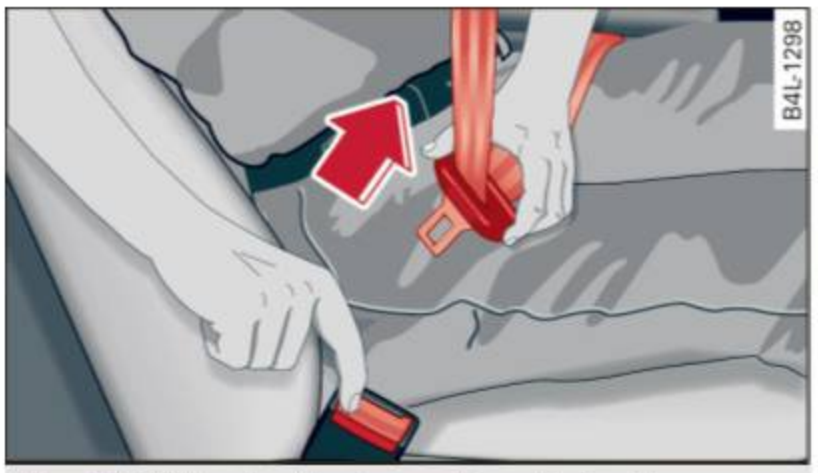


Fig. 176 Releasing the tongue from the buckle

- ▸ Push the red release button on the buckle ⇨ *fig. 176*. The belt tongue will spring out of the buckle ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Let the belt wind up on the retractor as you guide the belt tongue to its stowed position. ▶

WARNING

Never unfasten safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed.

Adjusting safety belt height

With the aid of the safety belt height adjustment, the three point safety belt strap routing can be fitted to the shoulder area, according to body size.

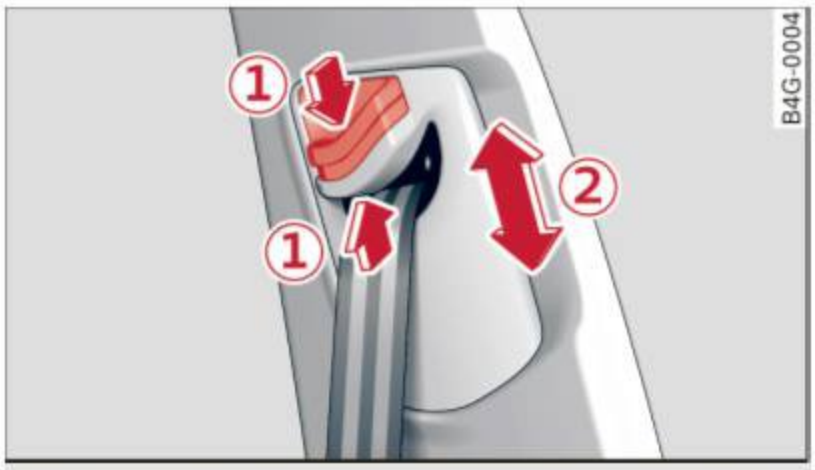


Fig. 177 Safety belt height adjustment for the front seats – loop-around fittings

- *Push* the loop-around fittings **up** ⇨ *fig. 177* ②, or
- *squeeze* together the ① button, and *push* the loop-around fittings **down** ②.
- Pull the belt to make sure that the upper attachment is properly engaged.

WARNING

Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ *page 151*.

Tips

– The shoulder belt part should route approximately over the middle of your shoulder – **under no circumstances should it route over your neck and throat area** ⇨ ⚠ *in Safety belt position on page 153*.
– With the front seats, the height adjustment of the seat can also be used to adjust the position of the safety belts.

Improperly worn safety belts

Incorrectly positioned safety belts can cause severe injuries.

Wearing safety belts improperly can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are correctly positioned on the body. Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and will even increase the risk of injury and death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury and death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not in the correct seating position. A driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants and especially for children. Therefore:

- Never permit anyone to assume an incorrect sitting position in the vehicle while traveling ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

Improperly worn safety belts increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.
– Always make sure that all vehicle occupants are correctly restrained and stay in a correct seating position whenever the vehicle is being used.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ *page 151*.

Safety belt pretensioners

How safety belt pretensioners work

In front, side and rear-end collisions above a particular severity and in a rollover, safety belts are tensioned automatically.

The safety belts are equipped with safety belt pretensioners. The system is activated by sensors in front, side and rear-end collisions of great severity and in a rollover. This tightens the belt and takes up belt slack ⇨ ⚠ *in Service* ▶

and disposal of safety belt pretensioner on page 155. Taking up the slack helps to reduce forward occupant movement during a collision.

Note

Never let the belt remain over a rear seatback that has been folded forward.

Tips

The safety belt pretensioner can only be activated once.

– In minor frontal and side collisions, in rear-end collisions and in accidents involving very little impact force, the safety belt pretensioner are not activated.
– When the safety belt pretensioners are activated, a fine dust is released. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle.
– The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the system are scrapped. An authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop is familiar with these regulations and will be pleased to pass on the information to you.
– Be sure to observe all safety, environmental and other regulations if the vehicle or individual parts of the system, particularly the safety belt or airbag, are to be disposed. We recommend you have your authorized Audi dealer perform this service for you.

Service and disposal of safety belt pretensioner

The safety belt pretensioners are parts of the safety belts on your Audi. Installing, removing, servicing or repairing of belt pretensioners can damage the safety belt system and prevent it from working correctly in a collision.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment.

WARNING

Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing a safety belt pretensioner from activating when needed or activating it unexpectedly:

– The belt pretensioner system can be activated only once. If belt pretensioners have been activated, the system must be replaced.
– Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the safety belt system.
– Safety belt systems including safety belt pretensioners cannot be repaired. Special procedures are required for removal, installation and disposal of this system.
– For any work on the safety belt system, we strongly recommend that you see your authorized Audi dealer or qualified technician who has an Audi approved repair manual, training and special equipment necessary.

For the sake of the environment

Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material -special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

Airbag system

Important things to know

Importance of wearing safety belts and sitting properly

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. For airbags to do their job, occupants must always properly wear their safety belts and be in a proper seating position.

For your safety and the safety of your passengers, before driving off, always:

- Adjust the driver's seat and steering wheel properly ⇨ *page 140*,
- Adjust the front passenger's seat properly ⇨ *page 65*,
- Wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 151*,
- Always properly use the proper child restraint to protect children ⇨ *page 178*.

In a collision airbags must inflate within the blink of an eye and with considerable force. The supplemental airbags can cause injuries if the driver or the front seat passenger is not seated properly. Therefore in order to help the airbag to do its job, it is important, both as a driver and as a passenger to sit properly at all times.

By keeping room between your body and the steering wheel and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate fully and completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions ⇨ *page 140, Proper occupant seating positions*. For details on the operation of the seat adjustment controls ⇨ *page 65*.

It's especially important that children are properly restrained ⇨ *page 178*.

There is a lot that the driver and the passengers can and must do to help the individual safety features installed in your Audi work together as a system.

Proper seating position is important so that the front airbag on the driver side can do its job. If you have a physical impairment or condition that prevents you from sitting properly on the driver seat with the safety belt properly fastened and reaching the pedals, special modifications to your vehicle may be necessary.

Contact your authorized Audi dealer, or call Audi Customer Relations at 1-800-822-2834.

When the airbag system deploys, a gas generator will fill the airbags, break open the padded covers, and inflate between the steering wheel and the driver and between the instrument panel and the front passenger. The airbags will deflate immediately after deployment so that the front occupants can see through the windshield again without interruption.

All of this takes place in the blink of an eye, so fast that many people don't even realize that the airbags have deployed. The airbags also inflate with a great deal of force and nothing should be in their way when they deploy. Front airbags in combination with properly worn safety belts slow down and limit the occupant's forward movement. Together they help to prevent the driver and front seat passenger from hitting parts of the inside the vehicle while reducing the forces acting on the occupant during the crash. In this way they help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and upper body in the crash. Airbags do not protect the arms or the lower parts of the body.

Both front airbags will not inflate in all frontal collisions. The triggering of the airbag system depends on the vehicle deceleration rate caused by the collision and registered by the electronic control unit. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage is not necessarily an indication of whether an airbag should inflate or not.

It is not possible to define a range of vehicle speeds that will cover every possible kind and ▶

angle of impact that will always trigger the airbags, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the object which the car hits, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. The front airbags will also not inflate in side or rear collisions, or in roll-overs.

Always remember: Airbags will deploy only once, and only in certain kinds of collisions. Your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those situations in which airbags are not supposed to deploy, or when they have already deployed; for example, when your vehicle strikes or is struck by another after the first collision.

This is just one of the reasons why an airbag is a supplementary restraint and is not a substitute for a safety belt. The airbag system works most effectively when used with the safety belts. Therefore, always properly wear your safety belts ⇨ *page 148*.

WARNING

Sitting too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel will decrease the effectiveness of the airbags and will increase the risk of personal injury in a collision.

– Never sit closer than 10 inches (25 cm) to the steering wheel or instrument panel.
– If you cannot sit more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel, investigate whether adaptive equipment may be available to help you reach the pedals and increase your seating distance from the steering wheel.
– If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
– You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag.
– To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 151, Safety belts*.

– Always make certain that children age 12 or younger always ride in the rear seat. If children are not properly restrained, they may be severely injured or killed when an airbag inflates.
– Never let children ride unrestrained or improperly restrained in the vehicle. Adjust the front seats properly.
– Never ride with the backrest reclined.
– Always sit as far as possible from the steering wheel or the instrument panel ⇨ *page 140*.
– Always sit upright with your back against the backrest of your seat.
– Never place your feet on the instrument panel or on the seat. Always keep both feet on the floor in front of the seat to help prevent serious injuries to the legs and hips if the airbag inflates.
– Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbag or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can become projectiles and cause injury when an airbag inflates.

WARNING

Airbags that have deployed in a crash must be replaced.

– Use only original equipment airbags approved by Audi and installed by a trained technician who has the necessary tools and diagnostic equipment to properly replace any airbag in your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.
– Never permit salvaged or recycled airbags to be installed in your vehicle.

Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know

▸ Be sure to read the important information and head the WARNINGS for important details about children and Advanced Airbags ⇨ *page 178*. ▶

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially those 12 years and younger, always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child safety seat. It can be a very dangerous place for an infant or a child in a rearward-facing seat.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to comply with the Requirements of United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The Standard requires the front airbag on the passenger side to be turned off ("suppressed") if a child up to about one year of age restrained in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified has been installed on the front passenger seat. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify compliance with the US Safety Standard ⇨ *page 180*.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the instrument panel tells you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit.

Each time you turn on the ignition, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on for a few seconds and:

– will stay on if the front passenger seat is not occupied,
– will stay on if there is a small child or child restraint on the front passenger seat,
– will go off if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the weight-sensing mat ⇨ *page 167, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when the control unit detects a total weight on the front passenger seat that requires the front airbag to be turned off.

If the total weight on the front passenger seat is more than that of a typical 1 year-old child but less than the weight of a small adult, the front airbag on the passenger side can deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on). If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on, the front airbag on the passenger side has not been turned off by the electronic control unit and can deploy if the control unit senses an impact that meets the conditions stored in its memory.

For example, the airbag may deploy if:

– a small child that is heavier than a typical 1 year-old child is on the front passenger seat (regardless of whether the child is in one of the child safety seats listed ⇨ *page 180*), or
– a child who has outgrown child restraints is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag is turned off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on in the instrument cluster and stays on.

The front airbag on the passenger side may *not* deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not illuminate and stay lit) even if a small adult or teenager, or a passenger who is not sitting upright with their back against a non-reclined backrest with their feet on the vehicle floor in front of the seat is on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 140, Proper seating position for the driver*.

If the front passenger airbag deploys, the Federal Standard requires the airbag to meet the "low risk" deployment criteria to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag. "Low risk" deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower decelerations as defined in the electronic control unit ⇨ *page 167, PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light*.

Always remember, a child safety seat or infant carrier installed on the front seat may be struck and knocked out of position by the rapidly inflating passenger's airbag in a frontal collision. The airbag could greatly reduce the effectiveness of the child restraint and even seriously injure the child during inflation. ▶

For this reason, and because the back seat is the safest place for children - when properly restrained according to their age and size - we strongly recommend that children always sit in the back seat ⇨ *page 178, Child Safety*.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Always install rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
– If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.
– Forward-facing child safety seats installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

– Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
– Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will be displayed whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 167, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on.
– Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately.
– Always carefully follow instructions from child restraint manufacturers when installing child restraints.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward or rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

– Improper installation of child restraints can reduce their effectiveness or even prevent them from providing any protection.
– An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.

▶

– Never place additional items on the seat that can increase the total weight registered by the weight-sensing mat and can cause injury in a crash.

Front airbags

Description of front airbags

The airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained front seat occupants.



Fig. 178 Location of driver airbag: in steering wheel



Fig. 179 Location of front passenger's airbag: in the instrument panel

Your vehicle is equipped with an “Advanced Airbag System” in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured. The system senses the position of the front seats and controls front airbag inflation with a valve, depending on the distance between the respective seat and the steering wheel or instrument panel. The safety belts for the seats have “pretensioners” that help to take slack out of the belt system. The pretensioners are also activated by the electronic control unit for the airbag system.

The front safety belts also have load limiters to help reduce the forces applied to the body in a crash.

The airbag for the driver is in the steering wheel hub ⇨ *fig. 178* and the airbag for the front passenger is in the instrument panel ⇨ *fig. 179*. The general location of the airbags is marked “AIRBAG”.

There is a lot you need to know about the airbags in your vehicle. We urge you to read the detailed information about airbags, safety belts and child safety in this and the other chapters that make up the owner's literature. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS - they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

WARNING

Never rely on airbags alone for protection.
– Even when they deploy, airbags provide only supplemental protection.
– Airbag work most effectively when used with properly worn safety belts.
– Therefore, always wear your safety belts and make sure that everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained.

WARNING

A person on the front passenger seat, especially infants and small children, will receive serious injuries and can even be killed by being too close to the airbag when it inflates.
– Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front passenger airbag if an infant or a small child is on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment under these special conditions is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.
– The Advanced Airbag System can deploy in accordance with the “low risk” option under the U.S. Federal Standard if a child that is heavier than the typical one-year ▶

old child is on the front passenger seat and the other conditions for airbag deployment are met.
– Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position.
– For their own safety, all children, especially 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back properly restrained for their age and size.

Advanced front airbag system

Your vehicle is equipped with a front Advanced Airbag System in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The front Advanced Airbag System supplements the safety belts to provide additional protection for the driver's and front passenger's heads and upper bodies in frontal crashes. The airbags inflate only in frontal impacts when the vehicle deceleration is high enough.

The front Advanced Airbag System for the front seat occupants is not a substitute for your safety belts. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you, if you are sitting upright, wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is why you and your passengers must always be properly restrained, not just because the law requires you to be.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to meet the “low risk” requirements for 3 and 6 year-old children on the passenger side and very small adults on the driver side. The low risk deployment criteria are intended to help reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the front airbag that can occur, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel and instrument panel when the airbag inflates.

In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the “suppression” requirements of the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag for infants 12 months old and younger who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child restraints that are listed in the Standard ⇨ *page 180, Child restraints and Advanced Airbags*.

“Suppression” requires the front airbag on the passenger side to be turned off if:

– a child up to about one year of age is restrained on the front passenger seat in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the US Safety Standard ⇨ *page 180*,
– weight less than a threshold level stored in the control unit is detected on the front passenger seat.

When a person is detected on the front passenger seat, weighing more than the total weight of a child that is about 1 year old restrained in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints (listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified), the front airbag on the passenger side may or may not deploy.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when the electronic control unit detects a total weight on the front passenger seat that requires the front airbag to be turned off. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on, the front airbag on the passenger side has not been turned off by the control unit and can deploy if the control unit senses an impact that meets the conditions stored in its memory.

If the total weight on the front passenger seat is more than that of a typical 1 year-old, but less than the weight of a small adult, the front airbag on the passenger side may deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on). ▶

For example, the airbag may deploy if:

– a small child that is heavier than a typical 1 year-old child is on the front passenger seat (regardless of whether the child is in one of the child safety seats listed ⇨ *page 180*),
– a child who has outgrown child restraints is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag is turned off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the center of the instrument panel will come on and stay on.

The front airbag on the passenger side may *not* deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not illuminate and stay lit) if:

– a small adult or teenager is on the front passenger seat
– a passenger who is not sitting upright with their back against a non-reclined backrest with their feet on the vehicle floor in front of the seat is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag deploys, the Federal Standard requires the airbag to meet the “low risk” deployment criteria to help reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag. “Low risk” deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower decelerations as defined in the electronic control unit. ⇨ *page 167*

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with Advanced Airbags, the safest place for children is properly restrained on the back seat. Please be sure to read the important information in the sections that follow and be sure to heed all of the WARNINGS.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly.
– If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
– You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag ⇨ *page 156*.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front airbag when a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door, or roof.
– Always install rearward-facing child restraints in the back seat.
– If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:
– Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel. ▶

– Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

Advanced Airbag System components

The front passenger seat in your vehicle has a lot of very important parts of the Advanced Airbag System in it. These parts include the weight-sensing mat, sensors, wiring, brackets, and more. The function of the system in the front passenger seat is checked by the electronic control unit when the ignition is on. The control unit monitors the Advanced Airbag System and turns the airbag indicator light on when a malfunction in the system components is detected. The function of the airbag indicator light is described in greater detail below. Because the front passenger seat contains important parts of the Advanced Airbag System, you must take care to prevent it from being damaged. Damage to the seat may prevent the Advanced Airbag for the front passenger seat from doing its job in a crash.

The front Advanced Airbag System consists of the following:

– Crash sensors in the front of the vehicle that measure vehicle acceleration/deceleration to provide information to the Advanced Airbag System about the severity of the crash.
– An electronic control unit, with integrated crash sensors for front and side impacts. The control unit “decides” whether to fire the front airbags based on the information received from the crash sensors. The control unit also “decides” whether the safety belt pretensioners should be activated.
– An Advanced Airbag with gas generator and control valve for the driver inside the steering wheel hub.
– An Advanced Airbag with gas generator and control valve inside the instrument panel for the front passenger.
– A weight-sensing mat under the upholstery padding of the front passenger seat cushion that measures the total weight on the seat. The information registered is sent continuously to the electronic control unit to regulate deployment of the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side.
– An airbag monitoring system and indicator light in the instrument cluster ⇨ *page 167*.
– A sensor in each front seat registers the distance between the respective seat and the steering wheel or instrument panel. The information registered is sent continuously to the electronic control unit to regulate deployment of the front Advanced Airbags.
– The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on in the center of the instrument panel ⇨ *page 167, fig. 181* and tells you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off.
– A sensor below the safety belt latch for the front seat passenger to measure the tension on the safety belt. The tension on the safety belt and the weight registered by the weight-sensing mat help the control unit “decide” whether the front airbag for the front passenger seat should be turned off or not ⇨ *page 157, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.
– A sensor in the safety belt latch for the driver and for the front seat passenger that senses whether that safety belt is latched or not and transmits this information to the electronic control unit.

WARNING

Damage to the front passenger seat can prevent the front airbag from working properly. ▶

– Improper repair or disassembly of the front passenger and driver seat will prevent the Advanced Airbag System from functioning properly.
– Repairs to the front passenger seat must be performed by qualified and properly trained workshop personnel.
– Never remove the front passenger or driver seat from the vehicle.
– Never remove the upholstery from the front passenger seat.
– Never disassemble or remove parts from the seat or disconnect wires from it.
– Never carry sharp objects in your pockets or place them on the seat. If the weight-sensing mat in the passenger seat is punctured it cannot work properly.
– Never carry things on your lap or carry objects on the passenger seat. Such items can increase the weight registered by the weight-sensing mat and send the wrong information to the airbag control unit.
– Never store items under the front passenger seat. Parts of the Advanced Airbag System under the passenger seat could be damaged, preventing them and the airbag system from working properly.
– Never place seat covers or replacement upholstery that have not been specifically approved by Audi on the front seats.
– Seat covers can prevent the Advanced Airbag System from recognizing child restraints or occupants on the front passenger seat and prevent the side airbag in the seat backrest from deploying properly.
– Never use cushions, pillows, blankets or similar items on the front passenger seat. The additional padding will prevent the weight-sensing mat in the seat from accurately registering the child restraint or person on the seat and prevent the Advanced Airbag System from functioning properly.
– If you must use a child restraint on the front passenger seat and the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the use of a towel, foam cushion or something else to properly position the child restraint, make certain that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever the child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install child restraint in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.

How the Advanced Airbag System components work together

The front Advanced Airbag System and the side airbags supplement the protection offered by the front three-point safety belts with pretensioners and load limiters and the adjustable head restraints to help reduce the risk of injury in a wide range of accident and crash situations. Be sure to read the important information about safety and heed the WARNINGS in this chapter.

Deployment of the Advanced Airbag System and the activation of the safety belt pretensioners depend on the deceleration measured by the crash sensors and registered by the electronic control unit. The amount of inflation of the front airbags can also be adapted to the front seat position, depending on the distance between the respective front seat and the steering wheel or instrument panel as registered by sensors in the seats. Crash severity depends on speed and deceleration as well as the mass and stiffness of the vehicle or object involved in the crash.

On the passenger side, regardless of safety belt use, the airbag will be turned off if the weight on the passenger seat is less than the amount programmed in the electronic control unit. The front airbag on the passenger side will also be turned off if one of the child safety seats that has been certified under Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 has been recognized on the seat. The **PASSENGER AIR** ▶

BAG OFF light comes on and stays on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off ⇨ *page 157, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know.*

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly.

– If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
– You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag ⇨ *page 156.*

More important things to know about front airbags



Fig. 180 Inflated front airbags

Safety belts are important to help keep front seat occupants in the proper seated position so that airbags can unfold properly and provide supplemental protection in a frontal collision.

The front airbags are designed to provide additional protection for the chest and face of the driver and the front seat passenger when:

– safety belts are worn properly,
– the seats have been positioned so that the occupant is properly seated as far as possible from the airbag,
– and the head restraints have been properly adjusted.

Because airbags inflate in the blink of an eye with great force, things you have on your lap or have placed on the seat could become dangerous projectiles, and be pushed into you if the airbag inflates.

When an airbag deploys, fine dust is released. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle. This dust is made up mostly of a powder used to lubricate the airbags as they deploy. It could irritate skin.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example swelling, bruising and minor abrasions, can also happen when airbags inflate. Airbags do not protect the arms or the lower parts of the body. Front airbags only supplement the three point safety belts in some frontal collisions in which the vehicle deceleration is high enough to deploy the airbags.

Front airbags will not deploy:

– if the ignition is switched off when a crash occurs,
– in side collisions,
– in rear-end collisions,
– in rollovers,
– when the crash deceleration measured by the airbag system is less than the minimum threshold needed for airbag deployment as registered by the electronic control unit.

The front passenger airbag will also not deploy:

– when the front passenger seat is not occupied,
– when the weight on the front passenger seat as sensed by the Advanced Airbag System indicates that the front airbag on the passenger side has to be turned off by the electronic control unit (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on).

WARNING

Sitting in the wrong position can increase the risk of serious injury in crashes.

– To reduce the risk of injury when the airbags inflate, the driver and passengers ▶

must always sit in an upright position, must not lean against or place any part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
– Occupants who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye ⇨ *page 157*.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Always install rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
– If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.

WARNING

Objects between you and the airbag will increase the risk of injury in a crash by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.
– Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is in use.
– Never transport items on or in the area of the front passenger seat. Objects could move into the area of the front airbags during braking or other sudden maneuver and become dangerous projectiles that can cause serious personal injury if the airbags inflate.
– Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cupholders, telephone brackets, large, heavy or bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked “AIRBAG” on the steering wheel, instrument panel, seat backrests or between those areas and yourself. These objects could cause injury in a crash, especially when the airbags inflate.
– Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbag or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can become projectiles and cause injury, particularly when the seat is reclined.

WARNING

The fine dust created when airbags deploy can cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing conditions.
– To reduce the risk of breathing problems, those with asthma or other respiratory conditions should get fresh air right away by getting out of the vehicle or opening windows or doors.
– If you are in a collision in which airbags deploy, wash your hands and face with mild soap and water before eating.
– Be careful not to get the dust into your eyes, or into any cuts or scratches.
– If the residue should get into your eyes, flush them with water.

Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

Airbag monitoring indicator light

Two separate indicators monitor the function of the Advanced Airbag System: the airbag monitoring indicator light and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** *light.*

The Advanced Airbag System (including the electronic control unit, sensor circuits and system wiring) is monitored continuously to make sure that it is functioning properly whenever the ignition is on. Each time you turn on the ignition, the airbag monitoring indicator light will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics).

The system must be inspected when the indicator light :

– does not come on when the ignition is switched on,
– does not go out a few seconds after you have switched on the ignition, or
– comes on while driving.

If an airbag system malfunction is detected, the indicator light will first start flashing to catch the driver's attention and then stay on continuously to serve as a constant reminder to have the system inspected immediately.

If a malfunction occurs that turns the front airbag on the passenger side off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on whenever the ignition is on.

WARNING

An airbag system that is not functioning properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.

– If the airbag indicator light comes on, it means that there may be something wrong with the Advanced Airbag System. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.
– Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer.

PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light



Fig. 181 Section from the instrument panel: PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light is located in the center of the instrument panel ⇨ *fig. 181*.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit. Each time you turn on the ignition, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will flash for a few seconds and:

– will stay on if the front passenger seat is not occupied,
– will stay on if there is a small child or child restraint on the front passenger seat,
– will go out if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the weight-sensing mat.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light must come on and stay on** if the ignition is on and

– a car bed has been installed on the front seat, or
– a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
– a forward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
– the weight registered on the front passenger seat is equal to or less than the combined weight of a typical 1 year-old restrained in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints listed in Federal Motor ▶

Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified.

If the front passenger seat is not occupied, the front airbag will not deploy, and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will stay on. Never install a rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, the safest place for a child in any kind of child restraint is at one of the seating positions on the rear seat ⇨ *page 157, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know* and ⇨ *page 178, Child Safety*.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on when one of the conditions listed above is met, be sure to check the light regularly to make certain that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light stays on continuously whenever the ignition is on. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not appear and not stay on all the time, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and

– reactivate the system by turning the ignition off and then turning it on again;
– remove and reinstall the child restraint. Make sure that the child restraint is properly installed and that the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been correctly routed around the child restraint as described in the child restraint manufacturer's instructions;
– make sure that the convertible locking feature on the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been activated and that the safety belt has been pulled tight. The belt must not be loose or have loops of slack so that the sensor below the safety belt latch on the seat can do its job ⇨ *page 187*.
– make sure that things that may increase the weight of the child and child safety seat are not being transported on the front passenger seat;
– make sure that the safety belt tension sensor is not blocked. Shake the safety belt latch on the front passenger seatback and forth;
– If a strap or tether is being used to tie the child safety seat to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light still does not come on and does not stay on continuously (when the ignition is switched on),

– take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions. Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately.
– move the child to a rear seat position and make sure that the child is properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for its size and age.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light should NOT come on when the ignition is on and an adult is sitting in a proper seating position on the front passenger seat. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on or flashes for about 5 seconds while driving, under these circumstances, make sure that:

– the adult on the front passenger seat is properly seated on the center of the seat cushion with his or her back up against the backrest and the backrest is not reclined ⇨ *page 140, Proper occupant seating positions*,
– the adult is not taking weight off the seat by holding on to the passenger assist handle above the front passenger door or supporting their weight on the armrest,
– the safety belt is being properly worn and that there is not a lot of slack in the safety belt webbing,
– accessory seat covers or cushions or other things that may cause an incorrect reading or impression on the weight-sensing mat under the upholstery of the seat have been removed from the front passenger seat,
– a safety belt extender has not been left in the safety belt latch for the front passenger seat.

▶

In addition to the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the center of the instrument panel, the message **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** or **PASSENGER AIR BAG ON** will briefly appear in the instrument cluster display. This is to inform the driver of the current front passenger airbag status.

Important safety instructions on monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

WARNING

An airbag system that is not functioning properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.

- If the airbag indicator light comes on, it means that there may be something wrong with the Advanced Airbag System. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.
- Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer.

WARNING

If the front airbag inflates, a child without a child restraint, in a rearward-facing child safety seat or in a forward-facing child restraint that has not been properly installed will be seriously injured and can be killed.

- Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially 12 years and younger, always ride on the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.
- Always install forward or rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
- If you must install a rearward-facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not appear and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.
- A tight tether or other strap on a rearward-facing child restraint attached to the front passenger seat can put too much pressure on the weight-sensing mat in the seat and register more weight than is actually on the seat. The heavier weight registered can make the system work as though an adult were on the seat and deploy the Advanced Airbag when it must be suppressed causing serious or even fatal injury to the child.
- If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, always move the seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position. Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

- If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not go out when an adult is sitting on the front passenger seat after taking the steps described above, make sure the adult is properly seated and restrained at one of the rear seating positions.
- Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer before transporting anyone on the front passenger seat.

Tips

If the weight-sensing mat in the front passenger seat detects an empty seat, the front airbag on the passenger side will be turned off, and **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** will stay on.

Repair, care and disposal of the airbags

Parts of the airbag system are installed at many different places on your Audi. Installing, ▶

removing, servicing or repairing a part in an area of the vehicle can damage a part of an airbag system and prevent that system from working properly in a collision.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment.

WARNING

Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing an airbag from deploying when needed or deploying an airbag unexpectedly:

- Never cover, obstruct, or change the steering wheel horn pad or airbag cover or the instrument panel or modify them in any way.
- Never attach any objects such as cupholders or telephone mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units.
- For cleaning the horn pad or instrument panel, use only a soft, dry cloth or one moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could damage the airbag cover or change the stiffness or strength of the material so that the airbag cannot deploy and protect properly.
- Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the airbag system.
- All work on the steering wheel, instrument panel, front seats or electrical system (including the installation of audio equipment, cellular telephones and CB radios, etc.) must be performed by a qualified technician who has the training and special equipment necessary.
- For any work on the airbag system, we strongly recommend that you see your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- Never modify the front bumper or parts of the vehicle body.
- Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference:
  - Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seatbacks that have not been specifically approved by Audi.
  - Never use additional seat cushions that cover the areas where the side airbags inflate.
  - Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.
- The airbag system can be activated only once. After an airbag has inflated, it must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified technician who has the technical information, training and special equipment necessary.
- The airbag system can be deployed only once. After an airbag has been deployed, it must be replaced with new replacement parts designed and approved especially for your Audi model version. Replacement of complete airbag systems or airbag components must be performed by qualified workshops only. Make sure that any airbag service action is entered in your Audi Warranty & Maintenance booklet under *AIRBAG REPLACEMENT RECORD*.
- In accidents when an airbag is deployed, the vehicle battery separates the alternator and the starter from the vehicle electrical system for safety reasons with a pyrotechnic circuit interrupter.
  - Work on the pyrotechnic circuit interrupter must only be performed by a qualified dealer - risk of an accident!
  - If the vehicle or the circuit interrupter is scrapped, all applicable safety precautions must be followed.

For the sake of the environment

Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material -special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the ▶

restraint system including airbag modules safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

Other things that can affect Advanced Airbag performance

Changing the vehicle's suspension system can change the way that the Advanced Airbag System performs in a crash. For example, using tire-rim combinations not approved by Audi, lowering the vehicle, changing the stiffness of the suspension, including the springs, suspension struts, shock absorbers etc. can change the forces that are measured by the airbag sensors and sent to the electronic control unit. Some suspension changes can, for example, increase the force levels measured by the sensors and make the airbag system deploy in crashes in which it would not deploy if the changes had not been made. Other kinds of changes may reduce the force levels measured by the sensors and prevent the airbag from deploying when it should.

The sensors in the safety belt buckle for the driver and front passenger seat tell the electronic control module if the safety belt is latched or not. If the safety belt is being used, the front airbag will deploy at a slightly higher rate of vehicle deceleration than if the safety belt is not being used. Therefore, in a particular collision, it is possible that an airbag will not deploy at a seating position where the safety belt is being used but will inflate at the position where the safety belt is not being used. It is important that nothing interfere with the safety belt buckles so that the sensors can send the correct information about safety belt use to the electronic control unit.

WARNING

Changing the vehicle's suspension including use of unapproved tire-rim combinations can change Advanced Airbag performance and increase the risk of serious personal injury in a crash.

- Never install suspension components that do not have the same performance characteristics as the components originally installed on your vehicle.
- Never use tire-rim combinations that have not been approved by Audi.

WARNING

Items stored between the safety belt buckle and the center console can cause the sensors in the buckle to send the wrong information to the electronic control module and prevent the Advanced Airbag System from working properly.

- Always make sure that nothing can interfere with the safety belt buckles and that they are not obstructed.

For the sake of the environment

Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material -special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

Side airbags

Description of side airbags

The airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained occupants.



Fig. 182 Side airbag location in the driver's seat

The side airbags are located in the sides of the front seat backrests ⇨ *fig. 182* and the rear backrest* facing the doors. They are identified by the word “AIRBAG”.

The side airbag system basically consists of:

– the electronic control module and external side impact sensors
– the two airbags located in the sides of the front backrests and the two airbags* located in the rear backrest
– the airbag warning light in the instrument cluster.

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make certain that it is functioning properly at all times. Each time you turn on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics).

The side airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury to the driver's and front passenger's upper torso on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision. The airbag deploys only in side impacts and only when the vehicle acceleration registered by the control unit is high enough. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the side airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. It is not possible to define an airbag triggering range that will cover every possible angle of impact, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the impacting object, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. ⇨ *page 173, Important safety instructions on the side airbag system*.

Aside from their normal safety function, safety belts work to help keep the driver or front passenger in position in the event of a side collision so that the side airbags can provide protection.

The airbag system is *not* a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the side airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is another reason why you should always wear your safety belts, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇨ *page 148, General notes*.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental side airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising, and minor abrasions can also be associated with deployed side airbags. Remember too, side airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection.

Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage are not necessarily an indication of over-sensitive or failed airbag activation. In some collisions, both front and side airbags may inflate. Remember too, that airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of collisions – your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed.

The side airbag system will not deploy:

– when the ignition is turned off
– in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low
– in front-end collisions ▶

– in rear-end collisions
– in rollovers.

In some types of accidents the front airbags, side curtain airbags and side airbags may be triggered together.

WARNING

– Safety belts and the airbag system will only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇨ *page 173*.
– If the airbag indicator light comes on when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. The airbag may not work properly when the vehicle acceleration in a side collision is high enough to activate the airbag.

How supplemental side airbags work

Side airbags deploy instantly and can help reduce the risk of upper torso injuries for occupants who are properly restrained.



Fig. 183 Inflated side airbags on left side of vehicle

When the system is triggered, the airbag is filled with propellant gas and breaks through a seam in the seat surface area marked "AIRBAG". It expands between the side trim panel and the passenger. In order to help provide this additional protection, the side airbag must inflate within a fraction of a second at very high speed and with great force. The supplemental side airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental side airbag expands. This applies especially to children ⇨ *page 178, Child Safety*. Supplemental side airbags inflate between the occupant and the door panel on the side of the vehicle that is struck in certain side collision ⇨ *fig. 183*.

Although they are not a soft pillow, they can "cushion" the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the upper part of the body.

A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

Important safety instructions on the side airbag system

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always properly wear safety belts and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and act accordingly to help the safety belts and airbags do their job to provide supplemental protection.

WARNING

An inflating side airbag can cause serious or fatal injury. Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

– In order to reduce the risk of injury when the supplemental side airbag inflates:
  – Always sit in an upright position and never lean against the area where the supplemental side airbag is located.
  – Never let a child or anyone else rest their head against the side trim panel in the area where the supplemental side airbag inflates.
  – Always make sure that safety belts are worn correctly,
  – Do not let anyone sitting in the front seat put their hand or any other parts of their body out of the window.
– Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference. ▶

– Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seatbacks that have not been specifically approved by Audi.
– Never use additional seat cushions that cover the areas where the side airbags deploy.
– Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.

– Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.
– Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cupholders, telephone brackets, or even large, bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked “AIRBAG” on the seat backrests.
– Such objects and accessories can become dangerous projectiles and cause injury when the supplemental side airbag deploys.
– Never carry any objects or pets in the deployment space between them and the airbags or allow children or other passengers to travel in this position.

– Always use the built-in coat hooks only for lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets that may interfere with side airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in an accident.
– Always prevent the side airbags from being damaged by heavy objects knocking against or hitting the sides of the seatbacks.
– The airbag system can only be triggered once. If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealership.
– Damage (cracks, deep scratches etc.) to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.
– If children are seated improperly, their risk of injury increases in the case of an accident ⇨ *page 178, Child Safety*.
– Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way.
– In a side collision, side airbags will not function properly if sensors cannot correctly measure increasing air pressure inside the doors when air escapes through larger, unclosed openings in the door panel.
– Never drive with interior door trim panels removed.
– Never drive when parts have been removed from the inside door panel and the openings they leave have not been properly closed.
– Never drive when loudspeakers in the doors have been removed unless the speaker holes have been properly closed.
– Always make certain that openings are covered or filled if additional speakers or other equipment is installed in the inside door panels.
– Always have work on the doors done by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.

Side curtain airbags

Description of side curtain airbags

The side curtain airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained occupants.



Fig. 184 Side curtain system, driver's side: side curtain airbag location

▶

The side curtain airbags are located on both sides of the interior above the front and rear side windows ⇨ *fig. 184*. They are identified by the word “AIRBAG” on the windshield frame and the center roof pillar.

The side curtain airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury for occupants' heads and upper torso on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision. The side curtain airbag inflates in side impacts and only when the vehicle acceleration registered by the control unit is high enough. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the side airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. It is not possible to define an airbag triggering range that will cover every possible angle of impact, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the impacting object, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. ⇨ *page 176, How side curtain airbags work*.

Aside from their normal safety function, safety belts work to help keep the driver or front passenger in position in the event of a collision so that the side curtain airbags can provide protection.

The airbag system is not a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is another reason why you should always wear your safety belts, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇨ *page 148, General notes*.

It is important to remember that while the side curtain airbag system is designed to help reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising, and minor abrasions can also be associated with these airbags. Remember too, these airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection.

The side curtain airbag system basically consists of:

– The electronic control module and external side impact sensors
– The side curtain airbags above the front and rear side windows
– The airbag indicator light in the instrument panel

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make certain it is functioning properly at all times. Each time you turn on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics).

The side curtain airbag is not activated:

– if the ignition is turned off,
– in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low,
– in rear-end collisions.

WARNING

– Safety belts and the airbag system will only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇨ *page 64, General recommendations*.
– If the airbag indicator light comes on when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. The side curtain airbag may not work properly even when the vehicle acceleration in a side collision is high enough to activate the airbag.

How side curtain airbags work

Side curtain airbags can work together with side airbags to help reduce the risk of head and upper torso injuries for occupants who are properly restrained.



Fig. 185 Illustration of principle: Inflated side curtain airbags on the left side

The side curtain airbags inflate between the occupant and the windows on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision ⇨ *fig. 185*.

When the system is triggered, the side curtain airbag is filled with propellant gas and breaks through a seam above the front and rear side windows identified by the AIRBAG label. In order to help provide this additional protection, the side curtain airbag must inflate within the blink of an eye at very high speed and with great force. The side curtain airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental side curtain airbag inflates. This applies especially to children ⇨ *page 178*.

Although they are not a soft pillow, side curtain airbags can "cushion" the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and the upper part of the body.

A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is quite normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

Important safety instructions on the side curtain airbag system

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always properly wear safety belts and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and do to help the safety belts and airbags do their job to provide supplemental protection.

WARNING

Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- Never let occupants place any parts of their bodies in the area from which the side curtain airbags inflate.
- Always make sure that the side curtain airbags can inflate without interference. Unsuitable accessories fitted inside the expansion range of a head airbag can dangerously interfere with its function. A deploying head airbag develops enough force to catapult any piece of add-on component out of its path of inflation and into the passenger compartment. An occupant hit by such a projectile can suffer serious injury or death ⇨ *page 294, Technical Modifications*.
- Do not swivel the sun visors to the side if you have any objects clipped onto them (for example pens). If the airbag should deploy, you could be injured by these objects.
- Use the built-in coat hooks only for lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets that may interfere with airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in an accident.
- Never use hangers to hang clothing from the hooks.
- Only use factory-installed sun shades or, in the case of shades installed after the vehicle leaves the factory, only Audi roll-up sunscreens may be used ⇨ *page 293,* ▶

Additional accessories and parts replacement.

– Always sit in proper seating position and wear safety belts while traveling so that the side curtain airbags can help provide protection.
– The airbag system can only be triggered once. If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
– Always have work involving the side curtain airbag system, removal and installation of the airbag components, or other repairs performed by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop. Otherwise the airbag system may not work correctly.
– Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way.

Child Safety

Important things to know

Introduction

The rear seat is generally the safest place in a collision.

The physical principles of what happens when your vehicle is in a crash apply also to children ⇨ *page 149, What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts?*. But unlike adults and teenagers, their muscles and bones are not fully developed. In many respects children are at greater risk of serious injury in crashes than adults.

Because children's bodies are not fully developed, they require restraint systems especially designed for their size, weight, and body structure. Many countries and all states of the United States and provinces of Canada have laws requiring the use of approved child restraint systems for infants and small children.

In a frontal crash at a speed of 20-35 mph (30-56 km/h) the forces acting on a 13-pound (6 kg) infant will be more than 20 times the weight of the child. This means the weight of the child would suddenly be more than 260 pounds (120 kg). Under these conditions, only an appropriate child restraint properly used can reduce the risk of serious injury. Child restraints, like adult safety belts, must be used properly to be effective. Used improperly, they can increase the risk of serious injury in an accident.

Consult the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions in order to be sure the seat is right for your child's size ⇨ *page 181, Important safety instructions for using child safety seats*. Please be sure to read and heed all of the important information and WARNINGS about child safety, Advanced Airbags, and the installation of child restraints in this chapter.

There is a lot you need to know about the Advanced Airbags in your vehicle and how they work when infants and children in child restraints are on the front passenger seat. Because of the large amount of important information, we cannot repeat it all here. We urge you to read the detailed information in this owner's manual about airbags and the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle and the very important information about transporting children on the front passenger seat. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS - they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

WARNING

- Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position. Always restrain any child age 12 and under in the rear.
- All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
- A suitable child restraint properly installed and used at one of the rear seating positions provides the highest degree of protection for infants and small children in most accident situations.

WARNING

Children on the front seat of any car even with Advanced Airbags can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates. A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.

- The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, or door.

▶

– Always install rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
– If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected immediately by your Audi dealer.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:
– Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Always follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.
– Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
– Always make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

Advanced front airbag system and children

Your vehicle is equipped with a front "Advanced Airbag System" in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The Advanced Airbag system in your vehicle has been certified to meet the "low-risk" requirements for 3- and 6-year old children on the passenger side and small adults on the driver side. The low risk deployment criteria are intended to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag that can occur, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel and instrument panel when the airbag inflates. In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the "suppression" requirements of the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag for infants up to 12 months who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child restraints that are listed in the Standard.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child safety seat. It can be a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

Advanced Airbags and the weight-sensing mat in the front seat

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle detects the presence of an infant or child in a child restraint on the front passenger seat using the weight-sensing mat in the seat cushion and the sensor below the safety belt latch on the front passenger seat that measures the tension on the safety belt.

The weight-sensing mat measures total weight of the child and the child safety seat and a child blanket on the front passenger seat. The weight on the front passenger seat is related to the design of the child restraint and its "footprint", the size and shape of the bottom of the child restraint as it sits on the seat. The weight of a child restraint and its "footprint" vary for different kinds of child restraints and for the different models of the same kind of child restraint offered by child restraint manufacturers.

The weight ranges for the individual types, makes and models of child restraints that the ▶

NHTSA has specified in the Safety Standard together with the weight ranges of typical infants and typical 1 year-old child have been stored in the control unit of the Advanced Airbag System. When a child restraint is being used on the front passenger seat with a typical 1 year-old child, the Advanced Airbag System compares the weight measured by the weight sensing mat with the information stored in the electronic control unit.

The electronic control unit also registers the tension on the front passenger safety belt. The tension on the safety belt for the front passenger seat will be different for an adult who is properly using the safety belt as compared to the tension on the belt when it is used to attach a child restraint to the seat. The sensor below the latch for the safety belt for the front seat passenger measures the tension on the belt. The input from this sensor is then used with the weight to “decide”, whether there is a child restraint with a typical 1 year-old child on the front passenger seat and whether or not the airbag must be turned off.

Child restraints and Advanced Airbags

Regardless of the child restraint that you use, make sure that it has been certified to meet United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards and has been certified by its manufacturer for use with an airbag. Always be sure that the child restraint is properly installed at one of the rear seating positions. If in exceptional circumstances you must use it on the front passenger seat, carefully read all of the information on child safety and Advanced Airbags and heed all of the applicable WARNINGS. Make certain that the child restraint is correctly recognized by the weight-sensing mat inside the front passenger seat, that the front passenger airbag is turned off and that the airbag status is always correctly signaled by the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light.

Many types and models of child restraints have been available over the years, new models are introduced regularly incorporating new and improved designs and older models are taken out of production. Child restraints are not standardized. Child restraints of the same type typically have different weights and sizes and different 'footprints,' the size and shape of the bottom of the child restraint that sits on the seat, when they are installed on a vehicle seat. These differences make it virtually impossible to certify compliance with the requirements for advanced airbags with each and every child restraint that has ever been sold in the past or will be sold over the course of the useful life of your vehicle.

For this reason, the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration has published a list of specific type, makes and models of child restraints that must be used to certify compliance of the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle with the suppression requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208. These child restraints are:

Subpart A – Car bed child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Angel Guard Angel Ride AA2403FOF	September 25, 2007

Subpart B – Rear-facing child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Century SmartFit 4543	December 1, 1999
Cosco Arriva 22-013PAW and base 22-999WHO	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Discovery Adjust Right 212	December 1, 1999
Evenflo First Choice 204	December 1, 1999
Graco Infant 8457	December 1, 1999
Graco Snugride	September 25, 2007
Peg Perego Primo Viaggio SIP IMUN00US	September 25, 2007

Subpart C – Forward-facing and convertible child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Britax Roundabout E9L02xx	September 25, 2007
Cosco Touriva 02519	December 1, 1999
Cosco Summit Deluxe High Back Booster 22-262	September 25, 2007
Cosco High Back Booster 22-209	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Tribute V 379xxxx	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Medallion 254	December 1, 1999
Evenflo Generations 352xxxx	September 25, 2007
Graco ComfortSport	September 25, 2007
Graco Toddler Safety Seat Step 2	September 25, 2007
Graco Platinum Cargo	September 25, 2007

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on.
– Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately.

Tips

The child seats listed in categories A to C have been tested by Audi only for the Advanced Airbag function.

Important safety instructions for using child safety seats

Correct use of child safety seats substantially reduces the risk of injury in an accident!

As the driver, you are responsible for the safety of everybody in the vehicle, especially children:

- Always use the right child safety seat for each child and always use it properly ⇨ *page 183*.
- Always carefully follow the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions on how to route the safety belt properly through the child safety seat.
- When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 187*.
- Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm).
- If a strap or tether is being used to tie the child safety seat to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

– All vehicle occupants and especially children must always be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. ▶

  - An unrestrained or improperly restrained child can be injured or killed by being thrown against the inside of the vehicle or by being ejected from it during a sudden maneuver or impact.
  - An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is at much greater risk of injury or death by being struck by an inflating airbag.
- Commercially available child safety seats are required to comply with U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 213 (in Canada CMVSS 213).
  - When buying a child restraint, select one that fits your child and the vehicle.
  - Only use child restraint systems that fully contact the flat portion of the seat cushion. The child restraint must not tip or lean to either side. Audi does not recommend using child safety seats that rest on legs or tube-like frames. They do not provide adequate contact with the seat.
  - Always heed all legal requirements pertaining to the installation and use of child safety seats and carefully follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the seat you are using.
- Never allow children under 57 inches (1.45 meters) to wear a normal safety belt. They must always be restrained by a proper child restraint system. Otherwise, they could sustain injuries to the abdomen and neck areas during sudden braking maneuvers or accidents.
- Never let more than one child occupy a child safety seat.
- Never let babies or older children ride in a vehicle while sitting on the lap of another passenger.
  - Holding a child in your arms is never a substitute for a child restraint system.
  - The strongest person could not hold the child with the forces that exist in an accident. The child will strike the interior of the vehicle and can also be struck by the passenger.
  - The child and the passenger can also injure each other in an accident.
- Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
- Forward-facing child safety seats installed on the front passenger's seat can interfere with the airbag when it inflates and cause serious injury to the child. Always install forward-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
- If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require that the following special precautions be taken:
  - Make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
  - Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.
  - Always move the front passenger seat into the rearmost position of the passenger seat's fore and aft adjustment range, and as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the child restraint.
  - Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
  - Always make sure that the backrest is in the upright position.
- Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. ▶

A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.

– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 148, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 156, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 178, Child Safety*.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on.
– Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately.

WARNING

A child in a child restraint installed with the LATCH lower anchorages or with the standard safety belt on the rear seat may play with unused rear seat safety belts and become entangled resulting in serious personal injury and even death.

– Always buckle unused rear seat safety belts out of reach of children in child seats and properly activate the convertible locking retractor so that the child cannot unreel the safety belt from the retractor.

Child safety seats

Infant seats

Babies and infants up to about one year old and 20 lbs. or 9 kg need special rearward-facing child restraints that support the back, neck and head in a crash.



Fig. 186 Schematic overview: rearward-facing infant seat, properly installed on the rear seat

▸ When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 187* or install the seat using the LATCH attachments.
▸ Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm).

Infants up to about one year (20 lbs. or 9 kg) are best protected in special infant carriers and child safety seats designed for their age group. Many experts believe that infants and small children should ride only in special restraints in which the child faces the back of the vehicle. These infant seats support the baby's back, neck and head in a crash ⇨ *fig. 186*.

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat. ▶

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a crash.

- Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat - even with an Advanced Airbag System. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the inflating airbag hits the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and smashes the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof ⇨ *page 157, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.
- Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
- Never install a rear-facing child restraint in the forward-facing direction. Such restraints are designed for the special needs of infants and very small children and cannot protect them properly if the seat is forward-facing.
- If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 148, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 156, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 178, Important things to know*.

Convertible child safety seats

Properly used convertible child safety seats can help protect toddlers and children over age one who weigh between 20 and 40 lbs. (9 and 18 kg) in a crash.

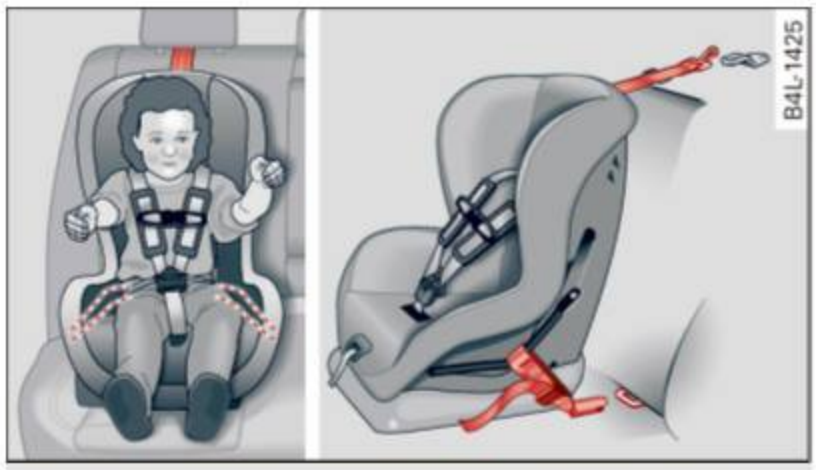


Fig. 187 Schematic overview: installation of the attachments applicable to a LATCH seat

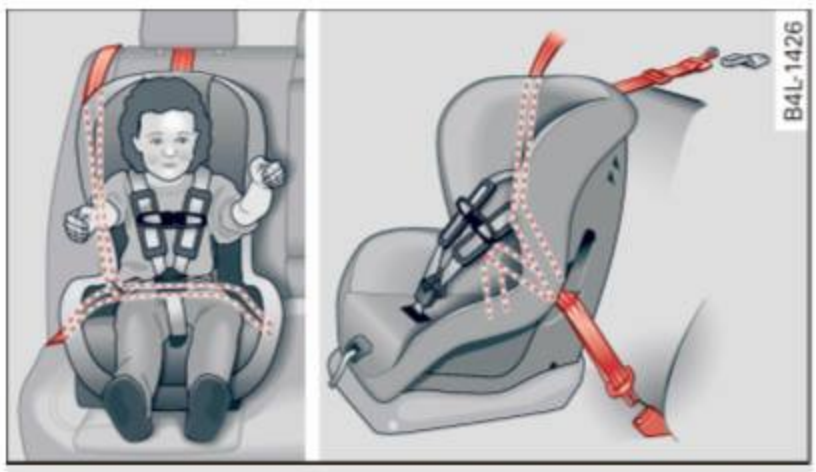


Fig. 188 Schematic overview: installation of the seat using the vehicle's safety belt system

- When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking feature on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 187* or install the seat using the LATCH attachments.
- Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm) ⇨ *page 187*.
- If the child safety seat is equipped with a tether strap, attach it to the tether anchors ⇨ *page 193*.

A toddler or child is usually too large for an infant restraint if it is more than one year old and weighs more than 20 lbs. (9 kg).

Toddlers and children who are older than one year up to about 4 years old and weigh more ▶

than 20 lbs. (9 kg) up to 40 lbs. (18 kg) must always be properly restrained in a child safety seat certified for their size and weight ⇨ *fig. 187* and ⇨ *fig. 188*.

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child safety seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation.

- Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates. A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- Always install rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
- If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 148, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 156, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 178, Important things to know*.

WARNING

If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require that the following special precautions be taken:

- Make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
- Always follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or infant carrier.
- Always move the front passenger seat into the rearmost position of the passenger seat's fore and aft adjustment range, and as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the child restraint.
- Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
- Always make sure the backrest is in an upright position.
- Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the light does not stay on, perform the checks ⇨ *page 167, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.

Booster seats and safety belts

Properly used booster seats can help protect children weighing between about 40 lbs. and 80 lbs. (18 kg and 36 kg) who are less than 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches/1.45 meters) tall.



Fig. 189 Rear seat: child properly restrained in a booster seat

The vehicle's safety belts alone will not fit most children until they are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches/1.45 meters) tall and weigh about 80 lbs. (36 kg). Booster seats raise these children up so that the safety belt will pass properly over the stronger parts of their bodies and the safety belt can help protect them in a crash.

- ► Do not use the convertible locking retractor when using the vehicle's safety belt to restrain a child on a booster seat.
- ► Always position the shoulder portion of the safety belt midway over the child's shoulder. If you must transport an older child in a booster seat on the front passenger seat, you can use the safety belt height adjustment to help adjust the shoulder portion properly.
- ► Always make sure that the shoulder portion of the safety belt never rests against or across the child's neck.
- ► Always make sure that the child can properly wear the lap portion of the belt low across the thighs or pelvis and *never* over the stomach or abdomen.

Children up to at least 8 years old (over 40 lbs. or 18 kg) are best protected in child safety seats designed for their age and weight. Experts say that the skeletal structure, particularly the pelvis, of these children is not fully developed, and they must not use the vehicle safety belts without a suitable child restraint.

It is usually best to put these children in appropriate booster seats. Be sure the booster seat meets all applicable safety standards.

Booster seats raise the seating position of the child and reposition both the lap and shoulder parts of the safety belt so that they pass across the child's body in the right places. The routing of the belt over the child's body is very important for the child's protection, whether or not a booster seat is used. Children age 12 and under must always ride in the rear seat.

Children who are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches/1.45 meters) tall can generally use the vehicle's three point lap and shoulder belts. Never use the lap belt portion of the vehicle's safety belt alone to restrain any child, regardless of how big the child is. Always remember that children do not have the pronounced pelvic structure required for the proper function of lap belt portion of the vehicle's three point lap and shoulder belts. The child's safety absolutely requires that a lap belt portion of the safety belt be fastened snugly and as low as possible around the pelvis. Never let the lap belt portion of the safety belt pass over the child's stomach or abdomen.

In a crash, airbags must inflate within a blink of an eye and with considerable force. In order to do its job, the airbag needs room to inflate so that it will be there to protect the occupant as the occupant moves forward into the airbag.

A vehicle occupant who is out of position and too close to the airbag gets in the way of an inflating airbag. When an occupant is too close, he or she will be struck violently and will receive serious or possibly even fatal injury.

In order for the airbag to offer protection, it is important that all vehicle occupants, especially any children, who must be in the front seat because of exceptional circumstances, be properly restrained and as far away from the airbag as possible. By keeping room between ►

the child's body and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions.

WARNING

Not using a booster seat, using the booster seat improperly, incorrectly installing a booster seat or using the vehicle safety belt improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury and/or death:

- Always make sure to position the shoulder portion of the three-point belt over the middle of child's shoulder.
- Never let the shoulder portion of the belt rest against or across the neck, face, chin, or throat of the child.
- Always make sure the lap belt portion of the three-point belt is worn snug and passes as low as possible across the child's pelvis. Never let the belt pass over the soft abdomen.
- Failure to properly route safety belts over a child's body will cause severe injuries in an accident or other emergency situation ⇨ *page 148*.
- The rear side of the booster seat should be positioned as close as possible to the backrest on the vehicle seat. Adjust or remove the rear seat head restraint if it is difficult to install the child seat with the head restraint in place ⇨ *page 68*. Install the head restraint again immediately once the child seat is removed. Driving without head restraints or with head restraints that are not properly adjusted increases the risk of serious or fatal neck injury dramatically.
- Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates.
- Never let a child stand or kneel on any seat, for example the front seat.
- Never let a child ride in the cargo area of your vehicle.
- Always remember that a child leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way during an accident can be struck by a deploying airbag. This will result in serious personal injury or death.
- If you must install a booster seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light must come on and stay on, whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 167, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 148, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 156, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 178, Important things to know*.

Installing a child safety seat

Securing a child safety seat using a safety belt

Safety belts for the rear seats and the front passenger can be locked with the convertible locking retractor to properly secure child safety seats.

The safety belts emergency locking retractors for the rear seats safety belts and for the front passenger's seat safety belt have a convertible locking retractor for child restraints. The safety belt must be locked so that belt webbing cannot unreel. The retractor can be activated to lock the safety belt and prevent the safety belt webbing from loosening up during normal driving. A child safety seat can only be properly installed when the safety belt ▶

is locked so that the child and child safety seat will stay in place.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

WARNING

Improperly installed child safety seats increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.

- Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child safety seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child safety seat in place during normal driving or in a crash.
- Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
- Always make sure that the rear seat backrest to which the center rear safety belt is attached is securely latched whenever the rear center safety belt is being used to secure a child restraint.
- If the backrest is not securely latched, the child and the child restraint will be thrown forward together with the backrest and will strike parts of the vehicle interior. The child can be seriously injured or killed.
- Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
- Forward-facing child safety seats or infant carriers installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious injury to the child.
- It is safer to install a forward-facing child safety seat on the rear seat.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 178*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 157, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.

WARNING

Always take special precautions if you must install a forward or rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat in exceptional situations:

- Whenever a forward or rearward-facing child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light must come on and stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 167, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
- Improper installation of child restraints can reduce their effectiveness or even prevent them from providing any protection.
- An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child.
- Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.
- Never place additional items on the seat that can increase the total weight registered by the weight-sensing mat and can cause injury in a crash.

▶

WARNING

Forward-facing child restraints:

– Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Never put the forward-facing child restraint up, against or very near the instrument panel.
– Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

Rearward-facing child restraints:

– A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Always be especially careful if you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances.
– A tight tether strap on a rearward-facing child restraint attached to the front passenger seat can put too much pressure on the weight-mat in the seat and register a heavier weight in the Advanced Airbag System. The heavier weight registered can make the system work as though an adult were on the seat and deploy the Advanced Airbag when it must be suppressed causing serious or even fatal injury to the child.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

Activating the convertible locking retractor

Use the convertible locking retractor to secure a child restraint.

Always heed the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions when installing a child restraint in your vehicle. To activate the convertible locking retractor:

▸ Place the child restraint on a seat, preferably on the rear seat.
▸ Slowly pull the belt **all the way out**.
▸ Route it around or through the child restraint belt path ⇨ ⚠.
▸ Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight.
▸ Insert the belt tongue into the buckle for that seating position.
▸ Guide the safety belt back into the retractor until the belt lies flat and snug on the child safety seat.
▸ You should hear a “clicking” noise as the belt winds back into the inertia reel. Test the convertible locking retractor by pulling on the belt. You should no longer be able to pull the belt out of the retractor. The convertible locking retractor is now activated.
▸ Make sure that the red release button is facing away from the child restraint so that it can be unbuckled quickly.
▸ Pull on the belt to make sure the safety belt is properly tight and fastened so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm). ▶

WARNING

Using the wrong child restraint or an improperly installed child restraint can cause serious personal injury or death in a crash.

– Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child safety seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child safety seat in place during normal driving or in a crash.
– Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a crash.
– Always make sure the seat backrest to which the child restraint is installed is in an upright position and securely latched into place and cannot fold forward. Otherwise, the seatback with the child safety seat attached to it could fly forward in the event of an accident or other emergency situation.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 178*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 157, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.

Deactivating the convertible locking retractor

The convertible locking retractor for child restraints will be deactivated automatically when the belt is wound all the way back into the retractor.

- ▸ Press the red button on the safety belt buckle. The belt tongue will pop out of the buckle.
- ▸ Guide the safety belt all the way back into its stowed position.

Always let the safety belt retract completely into its stowed position. The safety belt can now be used as an ordinary safety belt without the convertible locking retractor for child restraints.

If the convertible locking retractor should be activated inadvertently, the safety belt must be unfastened and guided completely back into its stowed position to deactivate this feature. If the convertible locking retractor is not deactivated, the safety belt will gradually become tighter and uncomfortable to wear.

WARNING

Improperly installed child safety seats increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.

– Never unfasten the safety belt to deactivate the convertible locking retractor for child restraints while the vehicle is moving. You would not be restrained and could be seriously injured in an accident.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 178*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 157, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.

LATCH Lower anchorages and tethers for children

Child Restraint System anchors and how are they related to child safety

To provide a simpler and more practicable way to attach the child restraint on the vehicle seat, Federal regulations require special lower anchorages in vehicles and devices on new child restraints to attach to the vehicle anchorages.

The combination of the tether anchorages and the lower anchorages is now generally called the **LATCH** system for "**L**ower **A**nchorages and **T**ethers for **Ch**ildren."

Forward-facing child restraints manufactured after September 1, 1999, are required by U.S. federal regulations to comply with new child head movement performance requirements. ▶

These new performance requirements make a tether necessary on most new child seats.

Installing a child restraint that requires a top tether without one can seriously impair the performance of the child restraint and its ability to protect the child in a collision. Installing a child restraint that requires a top tether without the top tether may be a violation of state law.

Child restraint manufacturers offer LATCH lower anchorages on their child seats with hook-on or push-on connectors attached to adjustable straps.

In addition to the LATCH lower anchorages, these child restraint systems usually require the use of tether straps to help keep the child restraint firmly in place.

WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury and death in a crash.

- Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint you intend to install in your vehicle.
- Never install a child restraint without a properly attached top tether strap if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap to be used.
- Improper use of child restraint LATCH lower anchorage points can lead to injury in a collision. The LATCH lower anchorage points are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints.
- Never mount two child restraint systems on one LATCH lower anchorage point.
- Never secure or attach any luggage or other item to the LATCH lower anchorages.

Tips

- In Canada, the terms “top tether” with “lower universal anchorages” (or “lower universal anchorage bars”) are used to describe the system.
- In other countries, the term “ISOFIX” is used to describe the lower anchorages.

Location

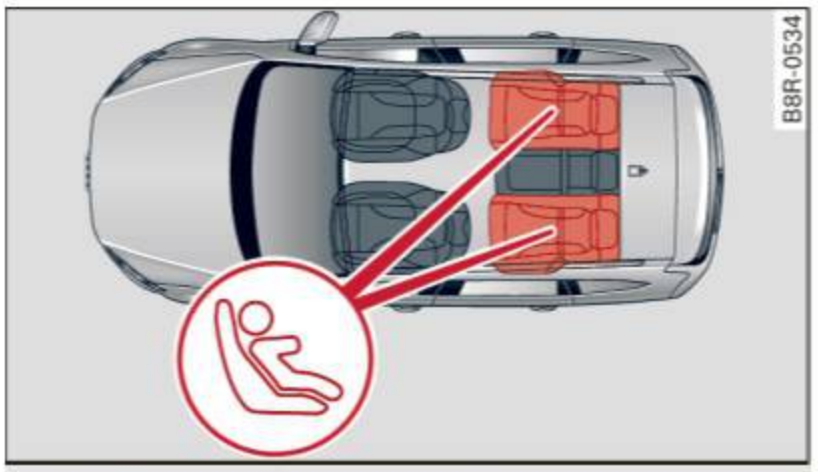


Fig. 190 Schematic overview: LATCH anchorage point locations

The illustration shows the seating locations in your vehicle which are equipped with the lower anchorages system.

Description

The lower anchorage positions are marked for quick locating.



Fig. 191 Lower anchorages, covers marked



Fig. 192 Rear seats: lower anchorage bracket locations

Lower anchorages

The lower anchorage attachment points are located between the rear seatback and rear seat cushion.

Remove the covers ⇨ *fig. 191* to access the lower anchorage attachment points.

The lower anchorage attachment points are visible ⇨ *fig. 192*.

Lower anchorages secure the child restraint in the seat without using the vehicle's safety belts. Anchorages provide a secure and easy-to-use attachment and minimize the possibility of improper child restraint installation.

All child restraints manufactured after September 1, 2002, must have lower anchorage attachments for the *LATCH* system.

Remember that the lower anchorage points are only intended for installation and attachment of child restraints specifically certified for use with *LATCH* lower anchorages. Child restraints that are not equipped with the lower anchorage attachments can still be installed in compliance with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions on using vehicle safety belts.

WARNING

Improper use of LATCH lower anchorages can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

- Always carefully follow the child restraints manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraint and proper use of the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.
- Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the *LATCH* lower anchorages.
- Always read and heed the important information about child restraints in this chapter and WARNINGS ⇨ *page 178, Child Safety*.

Installing a child restraint with LATCH lower anchorages

Whenever you install a child restraint always follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

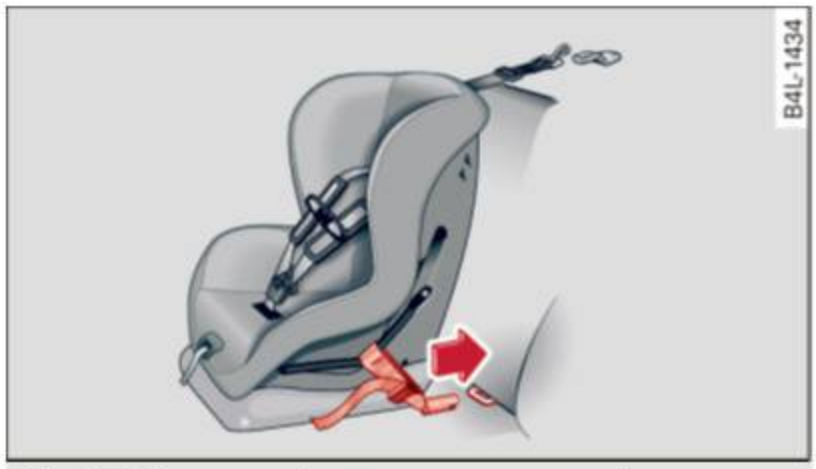


Fig. 193 Lower anchorages: proper mounting

Mounting

- ▸ Make sure the seatback of the rear seat bench is in the upright position and securely latched in place.
- ▸ Attach both hook-on connectors with the spring catch release on the child safety seat onto the LATCH lower anchorage so that the connectors lock into place ⇨ *fig. 193*.
- ▸ Pull on the connector attachments to make sure they are properly attached to the LATCH lower anchorage.
- ▸ Pull straps tight following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

Releasing

- ▸ Loosen the tension on the straps following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- ▸ Depress the spring catches to release the anchorage hooks from the lower anchorages.

Remember: Use tether straps to help keep the child restraint firmly in place.

WARNING

Improper use of the LATCH system can increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in an accident. ▶

– These anchors were developed only for child safety seats using the “LATCH” system.
– Never attach other child safety seats, belts or other objects to these anchors.
– Always make sure that you hear a click when latching the seat in place. If you do not hear a click the seat is not secure and could fly forward and hit the interior of the vehicle, or be ejected from the vehicle.

WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury in an accident.

– Always follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraint system and proper use of tether straps as well as the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.
– Always read and heed the important information and WARNINGS about child safety and the installation of child restraint systems ⇨ *page 178, Child Safety*.

Tether anchors and tether straps

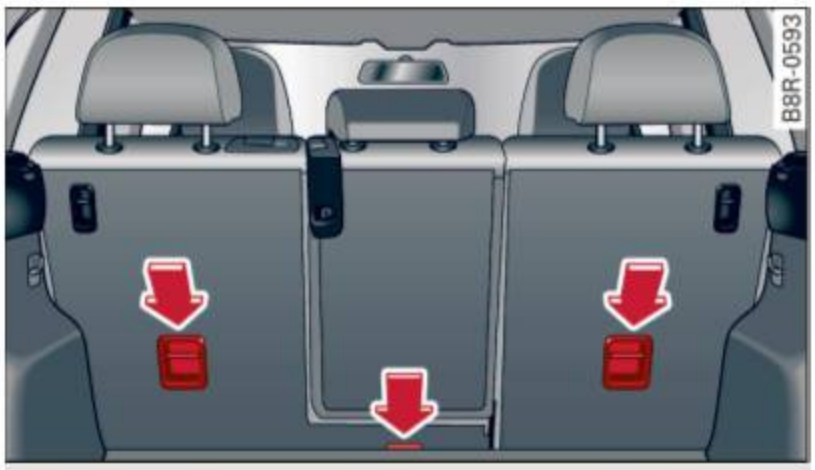


Fig. 194 Tether anchors: attachment hook locations behind the rear seatbacks

The tether anchors for the rear seating positions are located on the backside of the rear seatbacks ⇨ *fig. 194*.

A tether is a straight or V-shaped strap that attaches the top part of a child restraint to special anchorage points in the vehicle.

The purpose of the tether is to reduce the forward movement of the child restraint in a crash, in order to help reduce the risk of head injury that could be caused by striking the vehicle interior.

Forward facing child restraints manufactured after September 1, 1999, are required by U.S. federal regulations to comply with new child head movement performance requirements. These new performance requirements make a tether necessary on most new child safety seats.

WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury and death in a crash.

– Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint you intend to install in your Audi.
– Improper use of child restraint anchors (including tether anchors) can lead to injury in a collision. The anchors are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints.
– Never mount two child restraint systems on one LATCH lower anchor point.
– Never attach two child restraint systems to one tether strap or tether anchorage.
– Never attach a tether strap to a tie-down hook in the luggage compartment.
– Never use child restraint tether anchorages to secure safety belts or other kinds of occupant restraints.
– Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the LATCH lower anchorages or to the tether anchors.
– If a tether or other strap is used to attach a child restraint to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight, that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.
– The heavier weight registered can make the Advanced Airbag System work as though an adult were on the seat and deploy the Advanced Airbag when it must ▶

be suppressed causing serious or even fatal injury to the child.
– If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

Installing the upper tether strap on the anchorage

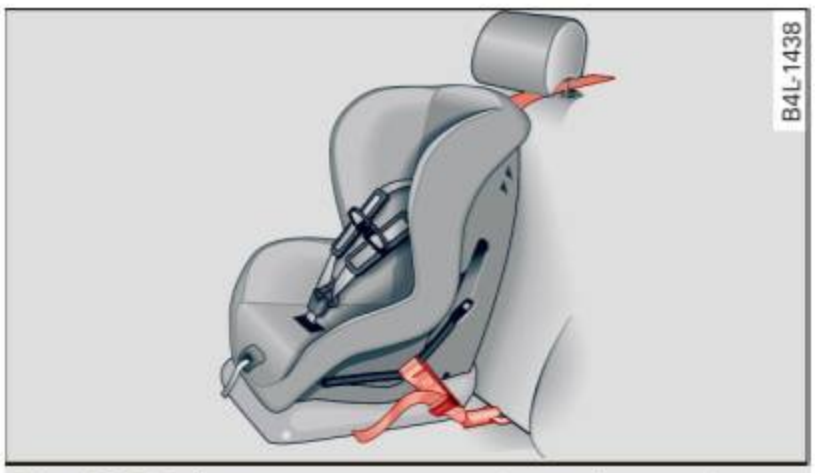


Fig. 195 Tether strap: proper routing and mounting



Fig. 196 Tether strap: proper routing and mounting

Installing the tether strap

- ▸ Release or deploy the tether strap on the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- ▸ Guide the upper tether strap **under** the rear head restraint and into the rear cargo area ⇨ *fig. 196* (raise the head restraint if necessary).
- ▸ Slide the tether strap hook over the anchor bracket.
- ▸ Pull on the tether strap hook so that the spring catch of the hook engages.
- ▸ Tighten the tether strap firmly following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

Attaching to the center seating position

- ▸ Slide the rear seat forward ⇨ *page 67*.
- ▸ Pull the anchor bracket forward and connect the tether strap hook.
- ▸ Tighten the tether strap and move the seat backward.

Releasing the tether strap

- ▸ Loosen the tension following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- ▸ Depress the spring catch on the hook and release it from the anchorage.

Note

If you leave the child restraint with the tether strap firmly installed for several days, this could leave a mark on the upholstery on the seat cushion and backrest in the area where the tether strap was installed. The upholstery would also be permanently stretched around the tether strap. This applies especially to leather seats.

Using tether straps on rearward-facing child restraints

Currently, few rear-facing child restraint systems come with a tether. Please read and heed the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions carefully to determine how to properly install the tether.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, or door.

▶

– A tight tether or other strap on a rearward-facing child restraint attached to the front passenger seat can put too much pressure on the weight-mat in the seat and register a heavier weight in the Advanced Airbag System. The heavier weight registered can make the system work as though an adult were on the seat and deploy the Advanced Airbag when it must be suppressed causing serious or even fatal injury to the child.
– If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

Additional Information

Sources of information about child restraints and their use

There are a number of sources of additional information about child restraint selection, installation and use:

NHTSA advises that the best child safety seat is the one that fits your child and fits in your vehicle, and that you will use correctly and consistently.

Try before you buy!

U.S National Highway Traffic Safety Administration
Tel.: 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153)
www.nhtsa.gov

National SAFE KIDS Campaign
Tel.: (202) 662-0600
www.safekids.org

Safety BeltSafe U.S.A
Tel.: (800) 745-SAFE (English)
Tel.: (800) 747-SANO (Spanish)
www.carseat.org

Transport Canada Information Centre
Tel.: 1 (800) 333-0371 or call
1 (613) 998-8616 if you are in the Ottawa area
www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety

Audi Customer CARE
Tel.: (800) 822-2834

Intelligent technology

Notice about data recorded by vehicle control modules

Your vehicle is not equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR), installed by some manufacturers for the express purpose of capturing data for retrieval after an accident or crash event. EDR's are sometimes called "crash recorders".

Some state laws restrict the retrieval or downloading of data stored by EDR's that were installed in a vehicle for the express purpose of retrieving data after an accident or crash event without the owner's consent.

Although your vehicle is not equipped with an EDR, it is equipped with a number of electronic control modules for various vehicle systems such as, for example, engine function, emission control, as well as for the airbags and safety belts.

These electronic control modules also record vehicle-related data during normal vehicle operation for diagnostic and repair purposes. The recording capacity of the electronic control modules is limited to data (no sound is recorded) and only a small amount of data is actually recorded over a very limited period of time and stored when a system fault or other condition is sensed by a control unit. Some of the data then stored may relate to vehicle speed, direction, braking as well as restraint system use and performance in the event of a crash or other condition. Stored data can only be read and downloaded with special equipment.

Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP)

General information

The ESP improves the vehicle stability.



Fig. 197 Version A: at the bottom of the center console, OFF button



Fig. 198 Version B: at the top of the center console, OFF button

ESP is designed to help you maintain vehicle control in situations where the car approaches the limits of "grip", especially when accelerating and cornering. ESP reduces the risk of skidding and improves stability under all road conditions.

The system operates across the entire speed range in combination with the ABS system. If the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) malfunctions, the ESP will also shut down.

How the system works

The Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS), Electronic Differential Lock (EDL) and the Anti-Slip Regulation System (ASR) are integrated in the electronic stabilization program. In addition to the data provided by these functions, the ESP control unit requires additional measurement data provided by high performance sensors. The rotational speed of the vehicle about its ▶

vertical axis, vehicle acceleration in the fore-and-aft and lateral directions, the brake pressure, and the steering angle are all measured.

The direction in which the driver wishes to travel is determined with the aid of the steering angle and vehicle speed and is continually compared with the actual behavior of the vehicle. If the two do not match, for example, when the vehicle starts hydroplaning on a wet road, ESP will automatically brake the appropriate wheel to correct the problem.

The vehicle is then stabilized by the forces acting on the wheel during braking. If the vehicle is *oversteering* (the vehicle turns too sharply and the rear wheels slide toward the outside of a curve), the brakes are mainly applied on the wheel that is on the outside of the curve. In the case of a vehicle that is *understeering* (the vehicle does not turn sharply enough and pushes out of a curve), the brakes are applied as needed on the wheel that is on the inside of the curve or additionally on the other wheels. An acoustic signal indicates when ESP brake application cuts in ⇨ ⚠.

The system operates across the entire speed range in combination with the ABS system ⇨ *page 201*. If the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) malfunctions, the ESP will be out of action as well.

Activating

When you turn on the engine, ESP will automatically be activated and will perform a self-test. As soon as the test is completed, the system is in normal operating mode.

ESP Offroad mode

The ESP Offroad mode was developed especially for offroad driving. In order to maintain maximum traction and optimal braking when driving offroad, the conditions for the ESP to work are reduced to such a degree, that the vehicle wheels could start to spin. The stabilizing effects start to work later which results in limited vehicle stability.

The ESP Offroad mode should then be used under the following situations:

- rocking the vehicle when it is stuck
- driving in deep snow or on loose ground
- driving on uneven roads with the wheel heavily loaded (axle limitation)
- driving with snow chains
- driving downhill while braking on loose ground

For your safety, switch off the ESP offroad mode in advance.

Switching on the ESP Offroad mode

Press the OFF button ⇨ *fig. 197* or ⇨ *fig. 198*. The indicator light illuminates and **Offroad control Warning! Restricted stability** appears in the driver information system display.

Switching off the ESP Offroad mode

Press OFF button again to switch the ESP back on. The indicator light goes out and **Stabilisation program on** appears in the driver information system display.

Dynamic steering*

Vehicles with dynamic steering* ESP helps stabilize the steering in critical situations.

WARNING

- The Electronic Stabilization Program is nevertheless subject to the laws of physics. It is particularly important to pay attention to this fact on wet and slippery roads. It is therefore important that you always adapt your driving to the condition of the road and traffic conditions. Do not allow the increased safety provided by the Electronic Stabilization Program system to lull you into accepting additional safety risks.
- You should switch on the ESP Offroad mode only when you are driving offroad or when driving with snow chains.
- Please note that the driving wheels can spin and the vehicle can swerve when ESP Offroad mode is switched on.
- Driving stability is reduced in the ESP Offroad mode.

▶

Tips

When installing a factory-supplied roof rack system on the roof railing, the ESP will adapt itself to a different center of gravity.

Hill descent assist

The hill descent assist makes it possible to drive down an incline at a constant speed.



Fig. 199 Top of the center console: hill descent assist button



Fig. 200 Top of the center console: hill descent assist button

- ▸ Press the button in the center console ⇨ *fig. 199* or on the shift gate. The button will illuminate.
- ▸ Press the button again to switch it off. The diode in the button will go out.

Hill descent assist brakes all four wheels automatically in order to limit speed when driving either forward or reverse on hills with a grade up to approximately 50%.

When the hill descent assist is on, the current driving speed, when your vehicle entered the incline is maintained. It is only possible to switch on the assist when driving slower than 37 mph (60 km/h). The assist works between approximately 2 and 19 mph (4 and 30 km/h). The driver can increase or decrease the vehicle speed within these limits by depressing the accelerator or brake pedal In addition, vehicle steerability is increased due to the braking distribution when driving in reverse.

There must be however sufficient ground adhesion. The hill descent assist can **not** do its job if the incline is icy or if the incline ground is loose ⇨ ⚠.

The system does not work at speeds between 19 and 37 mph (30 and 60 km/h). The system in then in the ready-mode. The diode in the button will come on. The system automatically switched off when you drive faster than 37 mph (60 km/h). The diode will go out in this case.

Active control at a specific speed up to approximately 19 mph (30 km/h) will appear in the instrument cluster display ⇨ *fig. 200*. Two dashes "**--**" will appear in the ready mode.

Hill descent assist is automatically activated under the following conditions:

– the diode in the button illuminates,
– vehicle speed is below approximately 19 mph (30 km/h)
– the incline is 10%.

WARNING

– Always adapt your speed to the weather, road and traffic conditions. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt you into taking risks.
– The hill descent assist system cannot overcome the laws of physics. Your driving style must always be adapted to the current road and traffic conditions.
– The hill descent assist may not be able to hold your vehicle at a constant speed under all conditions while driving on an incline (for example if ground under the vehicle is loose).

Electronic differential lock (EDL)

The electronic differential lock monitors the rotational speed of the drive wheels.

General notes

The electronic differential lock (EDL) helps the car to start moving, accelerate and climb a gradient on surfaces providing poor or almost no grip. Without EDL, this would be difficult, if not impossible.

How the system works

The EDL operates automatically. It monitors the rotational speed of wheels with the help of the ABS sensors ⇨ *page 201*. If a noticeable *slip* is detected at the wheels (e.g. on slippery ground *on one side*), the spinning wheels are braked and power is transferred to the other wheels. This is done up to a speed of about 78 mph (125 km/h). Noises from the brake system signal that wheel spin is being controlled.

Driving off

When driving off, always be sure to keep road conditions in mind as you accelerate. If one drive wheel spins because it is on a surface with less grip, apply *plenty of* throttle until the car starts to move.

Overheating of brakes

To prevent the disc brake of the braked wheel from overheating if subjected to excessive loads on this wheel, the EDL cuts out temporarily. The vehicle remains operational and behaves in the same way as a vehicle without EDL.

As soon as the brake has cooled down, EDL switches on again automatically.

WARNING

– When accelerating on slippery surfaces, such as on ice or snow, always be careful when depressing the accelerator pedal. Even with the EDL working, the drive wheels can spin and reduce your ability to control your car. Risk of crash!
– The increased safety afforded by EDL does not mean that you can take safety risks. Always adapt your driving style to the road conditions and traffic situation.

Tips

If a fault occurs in the ABS, the EDL is also not functioning. This is indicated by the ABS warning light ⇨ *page 17*.

Anti-Slip Regulation System (ASR)

The Anti-Slip Regulation System prevents the driven wheels from spinning when the car is accelerating.

General notes

The Anti-Slip Regulation System (ASR) is integrated in the electronic stabilization program (ESP). When the vehicle starts up and accelerates, the wheels are prevented from spinning by adjusting the engine power to match the amount of grip available from the road surface.

How the system works

ASR performs automatically, i.e. without the driver's intervention. With the aid of the ABS sensors ⇨ *page 201*, ASR monitors the speed of the driven wheels. If the wheels start to spin, engine torque is reduced automatically until the tires find enough grip to lock onto the road surface. The system is active across the entire speed range.

The ASR works in conjunction with the ABS. If a malfunction should occur in the ABS, the ASR will also be out of action.

WARNING

The increased safety afforded by ASR does not mean that you can take safety risks. Always adapt your driving style to the road conditions and traffic situation.

Tips

To ensure that the ASR works properly, all four wheels must be fitted with identical tires. Any differences in rolling radius of the tires can cause the system to reduce engine power when this is not desired. See also ⇨ *page 258, New tires and replacing tires and wheels*.

Braking

General information

What affects braking efficiency?

Operating conditions and driving habits

The brakes on today's automobiles are still subject to wear, depending largely on operating conditions and driving habits ⇨ ⚠. On vehicles that are either driven mostly in stop-and-go city traffic or are driven hard, the brake pads should be checked by your authorized Audi dealer more often than specified in the **Warranty & Maintenance booklet**. Failure to have your brake pads inspected can result in reduced brake performance.

On steep slopes, you should use the braking effect of the engine. This way, you prevent unnecessary wear on the brake system. If you must use your brakes, do not hold the brakes down continuously. Pump the brakes at intervals.

Noises may occur when braking depending on the speed, braking force and outside conditions such as temperature and humidity.

Moisture or road salt

If you are driving faster than 50 mph (80 km/h) and the windshield wipers are on, the brake pads will briefly touch the brake discs in regular intervals so as to improve reaction time when braking on wet surfaces. You, the driver, will not notice anything.

Under certain conditions, for example, when driving through water or very heavy rain, or even after washing your vehicle, the braking effect can be reduced due to moisture (or in freezing conditions ice) on the brake pads. A few careful brake applications should dry off the brake pads or remove any ice coatings.

The effectiveness of the brakes can be reduced when the vehicle is driven on a salt-covered road and the brakes are not used. Here too, you should clean off accumulated salt coating from brake discs and pads with a few careful applications of the brake ⇨ ⚠.

Corrosion

There may be a tendency for dirt to build up on the brake pads and corrosion to form on the discs if the car is not driven regularly or only for short trips with little use of the brakes.

If the brakes are not used frequently, or if corrosion has formed on the discs, it is advisable to clean off the pads and discs by braking firmly a few times from a moderately high speed ⇨ ⚠.

Faults in the brake system

If you should notice a *sudden* increase in brake pedal travel, then one of the two brake circuits may have failed ⇨ ⚠.

Low brake fluid level

Malfunctions can occur in the brake system if the brake fluid level is too low. The brake fluid level is monitored electronically.

Brake lining wear status

Brake lining wear may be checked by visual inspection of the condition of the brake pads through the openings in the wheel. If necessary, the wheel may be removed for this inspection ⇨ *page 271, Changing a wheel*.

WARNING

– You should perform braking maneuvers for the purpose of cleaning the brake system only if road conditions permit. Other road users must not be put at risk - you may cause an accident!

▶

– Before descending a steep grade, reduce speed and shift transmission into a lower gear or lower driving range. Do not ride the brakes or hold the pedal down too long or too often. This could cause the brakes to get hot and diminish braking efficiency.
– Do not "ride the brakes" by resting your foot on the pedal when you do not intend to brake. This may cause the brakes to overheat, premature wear and increased stopping distance.
– Under certain climatic and operating conditions such as passing through water, driving in heavy rain or after washing the vehicle, the effectiveness of the brakes can be reduced. In winter, ice can accumulate on the brake pads, linings, discs and drums. Carefully apply brakes for a test. Brakes will dry and ice coatings will be cleaned off after a few careful brake applications.
– Driving for an extended period of time on salt-covered roads without using your brakes can also affect braking efficiency. Clean off accumulated salt coating from brake discs and pads with a few careful brake applications.
– If you damage the front spoiler, or if you install a different spoiler, be sure the air flow to the front brakes is not obstructed. Otherwise the brake system could overheat reducing the effectiveness of the entire brake system.
– Failure of one brake circuit will impair the braking capability resulting in an increased stopping distance. Avoid driving the vehicle and have it towed to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.

Brake booster

The brake booster adds extra braking power.

The brake booster works with vacuum pressure which is created only when the engine is running ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

– Never let the vehicle roll to a stop with the engine shut off.
– If the brake booster is not working, for example when towing your vehicle, or because the brake booster has somehow been damaged, the brake pedal must be pressed considerably harder to make up for the lack of booster assistance.

Functioning of Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS)

ABS prevents the wheels from locking up under braking.

The ABS contributes effectively to vehicle control since it prevents the wheels from *locking* when the brakes are applied. This means that the vehicle remains steerable and is less likely to skid.

With ABS you do not need to *pump* the brake. Just hold the brake pedal down.

However, do not expect the ABS to shorten braking distance under *all* circumstances. When driving on gravel or on newly fallen snow on top of icy surfaces, braking distance may be even longer, therefore, under these circumstances, it is especially important that you drive slowly and with great care.

How the ABS system works

An automatic check is made when a speed of about 12 mph (20 km/h) is reached. When this happens, a pumping noise can be heard.

If an individual wheel begins to rotate too slowly in relation to vehicle speed and tends to lock, the ABS automatically reduces brake pressure to prevent that wheel from locking.

This automatic adjustment process will cause a **slight vibration** of the brake pedal and some noises to alert you that vehicle speed must be adapted to existing road and traffic conditions. ▶

WARNING

Although the ABS is very effective, always remember that braking capability is limited by tire traction. Always adjust your driving speed according to the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the extra safety afforded by the ABS tempt you into taking extra risks. The ABS cannot overcome the laws of physics.

Tips

– If ABS is not functioning properly, a warning light will come on. See ⇨ *page 17*.
– If a fault occurs in the ABS, the EDL is also not functioning. This is indicated by the ABS warning light.

Brake assist

Brake assist is designed to achieve the optimum braking effect.

Brake assist helps to increase the *effective* braking power and thus to achieve a shorter stopping distance. If the driver presses the brake pedal very quickly, brake assist automatically boosts the braking force to the maximum level, up to the point where the anti-lock brake function (ABS) intervenes to stop the wheels from locking. You should then keep the brake pedal pressed until the vehicle has braked to the required speed. Brake assist switches itself off as soon as you release the brake pedal.

WARNING

Please remember that the accident risk always increases if you drive too fast, especially in corners or on a slippery road, or if you follow the vehicle ahead of you too closely. Increased risk of an accident cannot be compensated for even by brake assist, so always maintain a safe speed.

Servotronic® - advanced power steering system

The power steering systems uses the power of the running engine to allow precise steering with little effort.

The advanced *Servotronic*® power steering system senses the road speed and electronically adjusts power assistance to provide comfortable and safe steering response exactly matched to the vehicle speed.

Power steering will not work if the engine is off. As a result, the steering wheel will be hard to turn.

The power steering fluid level is checked during the scheduled maintenance services.

Note

If there is an electronic malfunction, *servotronic* will still function like a conventional power steering system, providing a constant steering support force that is no longer proportionate to the vehicle speed. This is most noticeable when turning the steering wheel at low speeds (for example when parking), - more effort will be required than usual.
– Be aware of the different than usual steering response and adjust your steering force accordingly.
– Have the problem checked and set right by an Audi dealer as soon as possible.

Tips

– When the engine is running, never hold the steering wheel turned all the way to the right or to the left for longer than 15 seconds. The power steering pump will overheat the hydraulic fluid if you keep holding the steering wheel turned all the way. This is likely to damage the power steering system.
– If the power steering system should fail entirely, or if the engine is not running (for example, while being towed), you ▶

will still be able to steer the vehicle. However, *considerably* more effort will be required to do so.

– If the power steering system should have a leak, or is not functioning properly, contact your authorized Audi dealer immediately.
– The power steering system requires a specially formulated hydraulic fluid. The power steering reservoir is the one located farthest to the rear on the left side of the engine compartment ⇨ *page 234*. The correct fluid level in the reservoir is important for proper functioning of the power steering.

Driving with your quattro®

With all wheel drive, all four wheels are driven.

General information

With all wheel drive , power is distributed to all four wheels. This happens automatically depending on your driving style and the road conditions at the time. See also ⇨ *page 199, Electronic differential lock (EDL)*.

Winter tires

When driving in the winter, your vehicle with all wheel drive has an advantage, even with regular tires. In winter road conditions it may be advisable to mount winter tires (or all-season tires) for improved driveability and braking: these tires must be mounted on **all four wheels**. See also ⇨ *page 262, Winter tires*.

Tire chains

Where tire chains are mandatory on certain roads, this normally also applies to vehicles with all wheel drive ⇨ *page 263, Snow chains*.

Replacing wheels/tires

Vehicles with all wheel drive must always have tires of the same size. Also avoid tires with different tread depths. For details see page ⇨ *page 258, New tires and replacing tires and wheels*.

WARNING

Always adjust your driving to road and traffic conditions. Do not let the extra safety afforded by all wheel drive tempt you into taking extra risks.

– Although the all wheel drive is very effective, always remember that braking capacity is limited by tire traction. You should therefore not drive at excessive speeds on icy or slippery road surfaces.
– On wet road surfaces, be careful not to drive too fast because the front wheels could begin to slide on top of the water (aquaplaning). If this should occur, you will have no warning from a sudden increase in engine speed as with a front-wheel drive vehicle. Always drive at speeds which are suited to the road conditions – risk of crash.

Energy management

Starting ability is optimized

Energy management controls the distribution of electrical energy and thus optimizes the availability of electrical energy for starting the engine.

If a vehicle with a conventional energy system is not driven for a long period of time, the battery is discharged by idling current consumers (e.g. immobilizer). In certain circumstances it can result in there being insufficient energy available to start the engine.

Intelligent energy management in your vehicle handles the distribution of electrical energy. Starting ability is markedly improved and the life of the battery is extended.

Basically, energy management consists of **battery diagnosis**, **idling current management** and **dynamic energy management**. ▶

Battery diagnosis

Battery diagnosis continuously determines the state of the battery. Sensors determine battery voltage, battery current and battery temperature. This determines the current state of charge and the power of the battery.

Idling current management

Idling current management reduces energy consumption while the vehicle is standing. With the ignition switched off, it controls the energy supply to the various electrical components. Data from battery diagnosis is considered.

Depending on the battery's state of charge, individual consumers are gradually turned off to prevent excessive discharge of the battery and thus maintain starting capability.

Dynamic energy management

While the vehicle is being driven, dynamic energy management distributes the energy generated according to the needs of the individual components. It regulates consumption, so that more electrical energy is not being used than is being generated and ensures an optimal state of charge for the battery.

Tips

- But even energy management cannot negate the limits of physics. Consider that the power and life of a battery are limited.
- If starting ability is threatened, you are informed by a warning ⇨ *page 205, Driver notification in the instrument cluster display*.

What you should know

The highest priority is given to maintaining starting capability.

The battery is severely taxed in short-distance driving, in city traffic and during the cold time of year. Abundant electrical energy is required, but only a little is generated. It is also critical if the engine is not running and electrical components are turned on. In this instance energy is being consumed but none is being generated.

It is in precisely these situations that you will notice energy management actively regulating the distribution of energy.

Vehicle stands for an extended period

If you do not drive your vehicle over a period of several days or weeks, electrical components are gradually cut back or switched off. This reduces energy consumption and maintains starting capability over a longer period.

Take into consideration that when you unlock your vehicle, some convenience functions, such as the remote key or power seat adjustment, may not be available. The convenience functions will be available again when you turn on the ignition and start the engine.

With the engine turned off

If you listen to the radio, for example, with the engine turned off or use other MMI* functions, the battery is being discharged.

If starting capability is jeopardized due to energy consumption, the following warning appears in the radio or MMI* display:

Please start engine, otherwise system will switch off in 3 minutes.

The warning indicates that the system will be turned off automatically after 3 minutes. If you wish to continue using the functions, you have to start the engine.

With the engine running

Although electrical energy is generated when the vehicle is being driven, the battery can become discharged. This happens mostly when little energy is being generated and a great deal consumed and the battery's state of charge is not optimal.

To bring the energy balance back into equilibrium, consumers which require especially large amounts of energy are temporarily cut back or switched off. Heating systems in particular require a great deal of energy. If you ▶

notice, for example, that the heated seats* or the heated rear window are not heating, they have been temporarily cut back or switched off. These systems will be available again as soon as the energy balance has been restored.

You will also notice that engine idle speed has been increased slightly. This is normal and not a cause for concern. By increasing engine idle speed the additional energy required is generated and the battery is charged.

Driver notification in the instrument cluster display

If battery power drops into the range where it can limit the ability of the engine to start, this is shown in the instrument cluster display with the following driver message:

Low battery charge: battery will be charged while driving

This notification reminds you that the starting capability of the engine may be limited. As soon as you start driving again, the battery will be recharged and the notification will go out.

Driver notification appears and goes out again

If this driver notification appears after the ignition is turned on or while driving and it goes out again after a while, the battery has been adequately recharged.

Driver notification appears and does not go out again

If this driver notification appears after the ignition is turned on or while driving and does not go out again, the battery's state of charge is not in the optimal range. Starting ability is restricted. Have the battery checked as soon as possible by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.

Driving and environment

The first 1,000 miles (1,500 km) and afterwards

New engine

The engine needs to be run-in during the first 1,000 miles (1,500 km).

For the first 600 miles (1,000 kilometers):

- Do not use full throttle.
- Do not drive at engine speeds that are more than 2/3 of the maximum permitted RPM.

From 600 to 1,000 miles (1,000 to 1,500 kilometers):

- Speeds can *gradually* be increased to the maximum permissible road or engine speed.

During and after break-in period

- Do not rev the engine up to high speeds when it is cold. This applies whether the transmission is in N (Neutral) or in gear.

After the break-in period

- Do not exceed maximum engine speed under any circumstances.
- Upshift into the next higher gear *before* reaching the red area at the end of the tachometer scale ⇨ *page 10*.

During the first few hours of driving, the engine's internal friction is higher than later when all the moving parts have been broken in. How well this break-in process is done depends to a considerable extent on the way the vehicle is driven during the first 1,000 miles (1,500 kilometers).

Note

Extremely high engine speeds are automatically reduced. However, these rpm limits are programmed for an engine well run-in, not a new engine.

For the sake of the environment

Do not drive with unnecessarily high engine speeds - upshifting early saves fuel, reduces noise and protects the environment.

New tires

If your vehicle is running on new tires, drive very carefully for the first 350 miles (500 kilometers) after fitting.

WARNING

New tires tend to be slippery and must also be "broken-in". Be sure to remember this during the first 350 miles (500 kilometers). Brake gently. Avoid following closely behind other vehicles or other situations that might require sudden, hard braking.

New brake pads

Remember that new brake pads do not have a full braking effect during the first 250 miles (400 kilometers) after they are installed.

New brake pads have to be "burnished in" before they have optimal grab ⇨ ⚠.

During the break-in period, you should avoid putting severe loads on the brakes. Severe loads include, for example, sudden hard braking, in particular at very high speeds or, for example, on mountain passes.

WARNING

New brake pads don't have the best stopping power and must be "broken-in" during the initial 100 to 150 miles (150 to 200 kilometers) of normal city driving. You can compensate for this by pressing the brake pedal more firmly. This also applies later when new pads are installed.

Catalytic converter

It is very important that your emission control system (catalytic converter) is functioning properly to ensure that your vehicle is running in an environmentally sound manner.

- ▸ Always use lead-free gasoline ⇨ *page 228, Fuel supply*.
- ▸ Never run the tank down all the way to empty.
- ▸ Never put too much motor oil in your engine ⇨ *page 237, Adding engine oil*.
- ▸ Never try to push- or tow-start your vehicle.

The catalytic converter is an efficient "clean-up" device built into the exhaust system of the vehicle. The catalytic converter burns many of the pollutants in the exhaust gas before they are released into the atmosphere.

The exclusive use of unleaded fuel is critically important for the life of the catalytic converter and proper functioning of the engine.

WARNING

- Do not park or operate the vehicle in areas where the hot exhaust system may come in contact with dry grass, brush, fuel spill or other material which can cause a fire.
- Do not apply additional undercoating or rustproofing on or near the exhaust manifold, exhaust pipes, catalytic converter or heat shields. During driving, the substance used for undercoating could overheat and cause a fire.

Note

- Be aware that just one tank filling with **leaded** fuel will already seriously degrade the performance of the catalytic converter.
- Do not exceed the correct engine oil level ⇨ *page 237*.
- Do not drive until the fuel tank becomes completely empty. The engine could misfire. Unburned fuel could also get into the exhaust system and this could cause the catalytic converter to overheat.
- Do not turn off the ignition while the vehicle is moving.
- Do not continue to operate your vehicle under these conditions, as otherwise fuel can reach the catalytic converter. This could result in overheating of the converter, requiring its replacement.
- To assure efficient operation of the Emission Control System:
  - Have your vehicle maintained properly and in accordance with the service recommendations in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet.
  - Lack of proper maintenance as well as improper use of the vehicle will impair the function of the emission control system and could lead to damage.

For the sake of the environment

Even when the Emission Control System is operating properly, the exhaust gas can have a sulfur-like exhaust gas smell under some operating states. This depends on the sulfur content of the fuel being used. Using a different brand of fuel may help, or filling the tank with lead-free super grade gasoline.

Avoid damaging the vehicle

When you are driving on poor roads, or over curbs, steep ramps, etc., make certain that low-lying parts such as spoilers and exhaust system parts do not bottom out and get damaged.

This is especially true for vehicles with low-slung chassis (sports chassis)* and fully loaded vehicles.

Operate your vehicle economically and minimize pollution

General

Your personal style of driving will determine the economy of your vehicle, as well as exhaust and noise levels.

Fuel economy, environmental impact, and wear on your engine, brakes and tires largely depend on three factors:

– your personal driving style
– operating conditions
– technical limitations

If you anticipate what you need to do next and drive economically, you can easily cut your fuel consumption by 10-15 percent. This section will give you some tips on how you can help the environment and your pocketbook.

Tips

The consumption estimates as published by ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY (EPA) and Transport Canada may not correspond to your actual consumption on the road, which will vary depending upon vehicle load and speed, road and weather conditions, trip length, etc.

Drive smoothly and keep a lookout ahead

Vehicles use the most fuel when they are accelerating.

▸ Avoid unnecessary accelerating and braking.

Vehicles use the most fuel when they are accelerating. If you anticipate what is going to happen next, you will need to brake less and, thus, accelerate less. Let the vehicle coast whenever possible - for example when you see that the next traffic light is red.

Avoid full throttle

Driving at moderate speeds saves fuel and improves your mileage.

▸ Try and keep well below your car's maximum speed.

Accelerating gently reduces fuel consumption, engine wear, and does not disturb the environment.

Fuel consumption, exhaust emissions and engine noise increase disproportionately at high speeds. If you drive at approximately three quarters of top speed, fuel consumption will be reduced by one half. Never drive faster than the posted speed limit and weather conditions permit.

Reducing unnecessary idling

Even when your car is just idling it burns up fuel.

▸ Shut the engine off when you are not driving the vehicle.

▸ Do not warm up the vehicle by letting the engine run at idle.

It makes sense to shut off the engine in traffic jams, when waiting for trains to pass at railroad crossings, or at traffic lights that have long waits on red. Turning the engine off for just 30-40 seconds saves more fuel than is burned starting the engine again.

It takes a long time for the engine to warm up fully when it is running at idle. However, wear and noxious emissions are especially high when the engine is warming up. So you should drive away as soon as you start the engine and avoid running at high rpms while the engine is still warming up.

Note

Do not leave engine idling unattended after starting. If warning lights should come on to indicate improper operation, they would go unheeded. Extended idling also ▶

produces heat, which could result in overheating or other damage to the vehicle or other property.

Regular maintenance

A badly tuned engine unnecessarily wastes a lot of fuel.

▸ Have your vehicle serviced at regular intervals.

By having your vehicle regularly serviced by an authorized Audi dealer helps to ensure that it runs properly and economically. The condition of your vehicle not only affects its safety and ability to hold its value, it also affects **fuel consumption**.

Check your oil each time you fill your tank.

The amount of oil used is related to engine load and speed.

It is normal for the oil consumption of a new engine to reach its lowest value after a certain mileage has been driven.

You must drive your vehicle about 3,000 miles (5,000 kilometers) before you can properly assess oil consumption.

This also applies to fuel consumption and engine output.

Note

– Have your vehicle maintained properly and in accordance with the service recommendations in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet. Lack of proper maintenance as well as improper use of the vehicle will impair the function of the emission control system and could lead to damage.
– Do not alter or remove any component of the Emission Control System unless approved by the manufacturer.
– Do not alter or remove any device, such as heat shields, switches, ignition wires, valves, which are designed to protect your vehicle's Emission Control System and other important vehicle components.

Fewer short trips

Fuel consumption will always be relatively high on short trips.

▸ Try to avoid driving short distances with a cold engine.

The engine and catalytic converter have to reach their optimal **operating temperature** to reduce fuel consumption and noxious emissions effectively.

Just after starting, a cold engine in a mid-size car only achieves a fuel economy of 6-8 miles per gallon (30-40 l/100 km). After about a half a mile, fuel economy climbs to 12 mpg (20 l/100 km). After about *2.5* miles (4 km), the engine is at its proper operating temperature and fuel economy has reached a normal level. So you can see that you should avoid short trips whenever possible.

The **outside temperature** is also critical in this regard. Your car consumes more fuel in the winter than in the summer.

Driving off road

Driving in difficult road conditions and offroad

General information

The operation of the Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP) is expanded for operation away from paved roads. In situations where slip or a differential locking function is required, the ESP offroad mode can be activated ⇨ *page 196*. Your Audi also has permanent all-wheel drive in addition.

However, your Audi is not a pure offroad vehicle. It was not built for driving under extreme conditions, e.g. for trips that are in the nature of an expedition.

Drive only on roads and offroad sections which match the design of your vehicle and your abilities as a driver. Never take risks!

Before driving offroad

– Check the engine oil level, tire pressure, coolant level, and the fluid level in the windshield washer reservoir.
– Stow luggage items and other objects in the luggage compartment, and secure them against sliding around.

After driving offroad

– After trips offroad, remove any twigs and other foreign objects from the grill, the underbody and the wheels. Pay special attention to foreign objects (stones) which have become lodged in the tire tread.
– Clean the body and the vehicle underside, and inspect the vehicle for possible damage.
– Clean dirty windows, headlamp lenses, rear lights, and license plates.
– Perform a brake check (particularly after travelling through water).

WARNING

– Drive especially attentively and plan ahead in difficult road conditions and when offroad. Excessive speed or incorrect maneuvers can cause injuries and damage to the vehicle.
– Always adapt your speed and driving style to road, offroad, traffic, and weather conditions. Drive especially slowly offroad when your view is restricted.
– Please be aware that in ESP offroad mode, particularly on a smooth and slippery road, the wheels may have an increased tendency to spin and the vehicle may break away - danger of skidding!
– Stability is limited in the ESP offroad mode.

For the sake of the environment

Avoid damage to the environment and respect nature.

Tips

Only drive where it is permitted and stay on marked roads and paths.

Explanation of some technical terms

The following data refer to ideal conditions. Depending on vehicle load and ground conditions and the environment, the numbers may vary. It is the driver's responsibility to decide whether a vehicle can overcome a specific situation ⇨ ⚠.

Gradient angle

The number of meters in altitude gained over a distance of 109.4 yards or 100 meters (grade) are given as a percentage or degrees. Information about the gradient the vehicle can climb under its own power (depends in part on the road surface and engine power). Maximum permitted grade: 31°

Lateral angle (slope of vehicle)

Indicates the angle up to which the vehicle can be driven diagonally or across the fall line on a slope without the vehicle tipping over sideways (depends on center of gravity). Maximum permitted lateral angle: 25° ▶

Breakover angle

Indicates the angle up to which the vehicle can drive over a ramp at low speed without the underside of the vehicle hitting the edge of the ramp. Maximum permitted breakover angle: 17°

Approach/departure angle

Transition from the horizontal plane to a gradient or from a grade back to level ground. Indicates the angle up to which the vehicle can drive onto or off a slope at low speed without striking the bumper or the underbody. Maximum permitted approach/departure angle: 25° (front), 20° (rear)

Ground clearance

The distance between the road surface and the lowest point of the vehicle underbody. Ground clearance 7.9 in (200 mm)

⚠ WARNING

Exceeding the stated maximum figures can result in severe injuries or vehicle damage.

– All the information was gathered on level, firm and non-slippery road surfaces, and under dry weather conditions.
– Ideal conditions do not prevail offroad. Never utilize the maximum readings to their fullest, always leave a safety reserve.

Driving tips

On poor road and offroad, there is always only one motto: Plan ahead and drive slowly!

Please observe the following when driving away from paved roads:

- ▸ Drive only on roads and offroad sections which match the design of your vehicle and your abilities as a driver. Never take risks!
- ▸ Drive slowly and plan ahead!
- ▸ Take into consideration the **ground clearance** of your vehicle.
- ▸ Activate the **ESP offroad mode** ⇨ *page 196* as needed.
- ▸ Use the **hill descent assist** ⇨ *page 198* when driving down steep sections on hills.

Unpaved roads and offroad

Drive slowly on unfamiliar roads and unknown offroad sections, and look out for unexpected obstacles (e.g. potholes, rocks, tree stumps, etc.).

To prevent the vehicle from bottoming and avoid damage to the underbody, you should drive straight across severe bumps in the ground with only one side of the vehicle so that only two of your wheels cross the bumps.

Drive briskly through sandy or marshy offroad sections and do not stop, if at all possible.

Driving through water

Note the following to avoid vehicle damage when driving through water, for example on flooded roads:

– The water must not be any higher than the bottom of the vehicle body.
– Do not drive faster than walking speed.

Driving on a slope

If you ever find yourself **not** able to climb a slope, do not try to turn around, drive back down in **reverse**. Otherwise, you run the risk of tipping over.

If the vehicle threatens to tip over when driving across a slope, you must immediately steer downhill in the direction of the slope.

Do **not** park your vehicle on steep slopes or grades.

To reduce the risk of tipping over, drive on slopes in the direction of the downward slope (fall line) - **not crosswise**.

Driving on snow-covered ground

The standard tires fitted to your vehicle are not snow tires. So you should mount wheels with snow tires in good time where winter road conditions prevail. Before driving on unplowed stretches of deep snow, install tire chains. For technical reasons, tire chains may ▸

only be installed on the rear wheels - never on the front wheels.

WARNING

After driving through water, mud, slush, etc., the brakes may be slow to take effect because of wet brake rotors and pads. Dry the brakes first by braking carefully to restore the full braking effect.

Note

Vehicle components such as the engine, transmission, suspension or electrical system can be severely damaged by driving through water.

Tips

– Check the depth of the water before driving through it.
– Do not stop the vehicle, drive in reverse or switch the engine off when driving through water.
– Keep in mind that oncoming vehicles may create waves that raise the water level and make it too deep for your vehicle to drive through safely.
– Avoid driving through salt water because it can cause corrosion.

Trailer towing

Driving with a trailer

General information

Your Audi was designed primarily for passenger transportation.

If you plan to tow a trailer, please remember that the additional load will affect durability, economy and performance.

Trailer towing not only places more stress on the vehicle, it also calls for more concentration from the driver.

For this reason, always follow the operating and driving instructions provided and use common sense.

Technical requirements

Trailer hitch

Use a weight-carrying hitch conforming to the gross trailer weight. The hitch must be suitable for your vehicle and trailer and must be mounted securely on the vehicle's chassis at a *technically sound* location. Use only a trailer hitch with a removable ball mount. Always check with the trailer hitch manufacturer to make sure that you are using the correct hitch.

Do not use a bumper hitch.

The hitch must be installed in such a way that it does not interfere with the impact-absorbing bumper system. No modifications should be made to the vehicle exhaust and brake systems. From time to time, check that all hitch mounting bolts remain securely fastened.

When you are not towing a trailer, remove the trailer hitch ball mount. This prevents the hitch from causing damage should your vehicle be struck from behind ⇨ ⚠.

Trailer brakes

If your trailer is equipped with a braking system, check to be sure that it conforms to all regulations.

The trailer hydraulic brake system must not be directly connected to the vehicle's hydraulic brake system ⇨ ⚠.

Safety chains

Always use safety chains between your vehicle and the trailer.

Trailer lights

Trailer lights must meet all regulations. Be sure to check with your authorized Audi dealer for correct wiring, switches, and relays.

Mirrors

If you are unable to see the traffic behind you using the regular outside mirrors, then you *must* install extended mirrors. It is important that you *always* have clear vision to the rear.

⚠ WARNING

- If a trailer has electrical brakes please note that these brakes are not activated by the factory-fitted control unit - risk of accident!
- After removing the trailer hitch, do not store it in your vehicle. In case of sudden braking, the hitch could fly forward and injure you or your passengers.
- The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating for your Audi Q5 vehicle, found on the safety compliance label on the driver's side B-pillar, must never be exceeded under any circumstances. Exceeding the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating of your vehicle is likely to damage your vehicle, and such damage will not be covered by your Limited New Vehicle Warranty. Exceeding the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating will also change the performance and handling characteristics of your vehicle, which could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Operating instructions

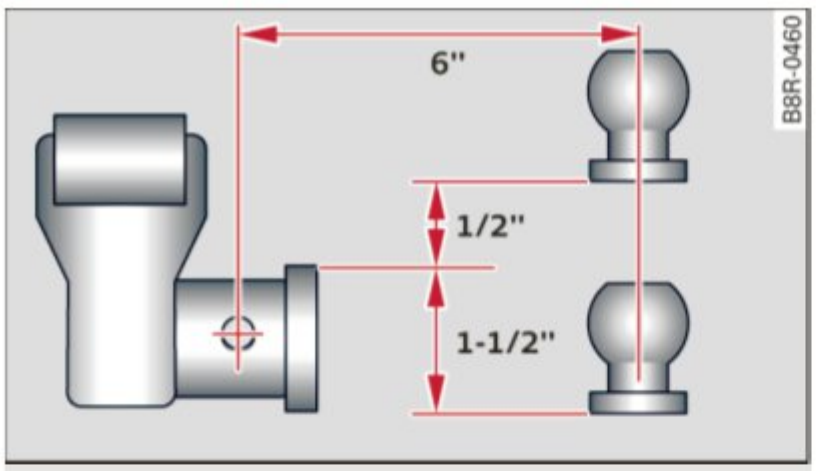


Fig. 201 Permitted ball position of the trailer hitch

Trailer towing weights

With a **factory-installed** or an **aftermarket** trailer hitch, the maximum permissible trailer weight is 4,410 lbs (2,000 kg). The maximum permissible unbraked trailer weight is 1,650 lbs (750 kg). These specifications apply when driving on roads having an incline of less than 12%.

Permissible tongue load

For best vehicle handling under these changed conditions, adjust the trailer load so that the tongue load is at the maximum allowable or slightly lower. You can get an approximation of the tongue load with a bathroom scale or you can measure the load at a trucking company or weighing station.

With a **factory-installed** or an **aftermarket** trailer hitch, the maximum permissible load on the ball hitch may not exceed 441 lbs (200 kg). It is recommended to use the maximum permissible load.

Trailer load distribution

Be sure the load in the trailer is held securely in place to prevent it from shifting forward, backward or sideways.

Never allow a passenger to ride in a trailer
⇨ ⚠ *in Driving instructions on page 215*.

Ball mount

The trailer hitch may only be used with suitable ball mount and ball ⇨ *fig. 201*. Installation of the hitch ball must be carried out in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

Engine cooling system

Towing a trailer makes the engine work harder. It is important that the cooling system's performance is up to the additional load. Make sure that the cooling system has enough fluid.

Tire pressure

When towing a trailer, inflate the tires of your vehicle to the cold tire pressure listed under “Full load” on the tire pressure label. The tire pressure label is located on the driver's side B-pillar. Inflate trailer tires to trailer and tire manufacturers’ specifications.

Lights

The headlight settings should be checked with the trailer attached before driving off. Check to make sure both vehicle and trailer lights are working properly.

Safety chains

Be sure trailer safety chains are properly connected from the trailer to the hitch on the vehicle. Leave enough slack in the chains to permit turning corners. When you install safety chains, make sure they will not drag on the road when you are driving.

The chains should cross under the trailer tongue to prevent it from dropping in case of separation from the hitch.

Driving instructions

Driving with a trailer always requires extra care and consideration.

To obtain the best possible handling of vehicle and trailer, please note the following:

- Do not tow a loaded trailer when your car itself is not loaded.
- Be especially careful when passing other vehicles.
- Observe speed limits. ▶

- ▸ Do not drive at the maximum permissible speed.
- ▸ Always apply brakes early.
- ▸ Monitor the temperature gauge.

Weight distribution

Towing a loaded trailer with an empty car results in a highly unstable distribution of weight. If this cannot be avoided, drive at very low speeds only to avoid the risk of losing steering control.

A “balanced” rig is easier to operate and control. This means that the tow vehicle should be loaded to the extent possible and permissible, while keeping the trailer as light as possible under the circumstances. Whenever possible, transfer some cargo to the luggage compartment of the tow vehicle while observing tongue load requirements and vehicle loading considerations.

Speed

The higher the speed, the more difficult it becomes for the driver to control the rig. Do not drive at the maximum permissible speed. Reduce your speed even more if load, weather or wind conditions are unfavorable - particularly when going downhill.

Reduce vehicle speed **immediately** if the trailer shows the slightest sign of swaying. **Do not try to stop the swaying by accelerating.**

Observe speed limits. In some areas, speeds for vehicles towing trailers are lower than for regular vehicles.

Always apply brakes early. When driving downhill, shift into a lower gear to use the engine braking effect to slow the vehicle. Use of the brakes alone can cause them to overheat and fail.

Coolant temperature

The coolant temperature gauge ⇨ *page 10* must be observed carefully. If the needle moves close to the upper end of the scale, reduce speed immediately and/or turn off the air conditioner.

If the coolant temperature warning light in the instrument cluster starts flashing, pull off the road, stop and let the engine *idle* for about two minutes to prevent heat build-up.

WARNING

Anyone not properly restrained in a moving vehicle is at a much greater risk in an accident. Never let anyone ride in your car who is not properly wearing the restraints provided by Audi.

Trailer towing tips

Important to know

Your vehicle handles differently when towing a trailer because of the additional weight and different weight distribution. Safety, performance and economy will greatly depend on how carefully you load your trailer and operate your rig.

Before you actually tow your trailer, practice turning, stopping and backing up in an area away from traffic. Keep practicing until you have become completely familiar with the way your vehicle-trailer combination behaves and responds.

Backing up is difficult and requires practice. Backing up with a trailer generally requires steering action opposite to that when backing up your vehicle without a trailer.

Maintain a greater distance between your vehicle and the one in front of you. You will need more room to stop. To compensate for the trailer, you will need a larger than normal turning radius.

When passing, remember that you cannot accelerate as fast as you normally would because of the added load. Make sure you have enough room to pass. After passing, allow plenty of room for your trailer before changing lanes again.

Avoid jerky starts, sharp turns or rapid lane changes. ▸

Tips

– Do not tow a trailer during the break-in period of your vehicle.
– If you tow a trailer, your Audi may require more frequent maintenance due to the extra load ⇨ *page 291*.

Parking on a slope

Do not park on a slope with a trailer. If it cannot be avoided, do so only after doing the following:

When parking:

- ▸ Apply the foot brake.
- ▸ Have someone place chocks under both the vehicle and the trailer wheels.
- ▸ With chocks in place, slowly release the brakes until the wheel chocks absorb the load.
- ▸ Turn the wheels towards the curb.
- ▸ Apply the parking brake.
- ▸ Move the selector lever to **P**.

When restarting after parking:

- ▸ Apply the foot brake.
- ▸ Start the engine.
- ▸ Move the selector lever to **D**.
- ▸ Release the parking brake and slowly pull out and away from the wheel chocks.
- ▸ Stop and have someone retrieve the wheel chocks.

Tips

If you move the selector lever of the automatic transmission to **P** before applying the parking brake and before blocking the wheels, you may have to use more force later to move the lever out of the **P** position.

Cleaning and protection

General information

Regular care preserves vehicle value.

Any automobile is exposed to industrial fumes, corrosive road salt, etc. A well cared for Audi can look like new many years after purchase. Regular and correct care will contribute to maintaining the beauty and value of your Audi.

Furthermore, good care may be a condition for substantiating a warranty claim should corrosion damage or paint defects occur.

Your authorized Audi dealer has a variety of **dedicated vehicle-care products** and can advise which ones to use for cleaning the exterior and interior of your vehicle.

Whether you use products recommended by Audi or other commercially available cleaning agents, please make sure you apply them correctly.

WARNING

- Cleaning agents may be poisonous. Keep them out of the reach of children.
- Heed all caution labels.
- Always read directions on the container before using any product. Follow the directions carefully.
- Most chemical cleaners are concentrated and have to be diluted.
- Use spot removing fluids only in well ventilated areas.
- Do not use gasoline, kerosene, diesel fuel, nail polish remover or other volatile fluids. They may be toxic, flammable or hazardous in other ways. Do not wash, wax or dry the vehicle with the ignition on or the engine running.
- Do not clean the undersides of chassis, fenders, wheel covers, etc. without protecting your hands and arms. You may cut yourself on sharp-edged metal parts.
- Moisture and ice on brakes may impair braking efficiency ⇨ *page 200, General information*. Test the brakes carefully each time you wash the vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Select only environmentally friendly cleaning products. Leftover cleaning products should not disposed of in the household waste.

Care of exterior

Washing

Frequent washing protects the vehicle.

The best protection against environmental influences is *frequent* washing and waxing. How often this is required depends on:

- How much the vehicle is used
- Where the vehicle is parked (garage, in the open under trees, etc.)
- The seasonal and weather conditions
- Environmental influences

The longer bird droppings, insects, tree resin, road and industrial grime, tar, soot, road salt and other materials remain on the vehicle body, the more lasting their destructive effects will be. High temperatures caused by exposure to intense sunlight intensify the corrosive effect, particularly when humidity is high as well.

Under certain circumstances, **weekly** washing may be necessary. Under other conditions, a monthly washing and waxing may be adequate.

After the winter, the underside of the vehicle should be thoroughly washed, preferably in a professional car wash.

WARNING

Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information ⇨ *page 217*.

Automatic car wash

The vehicle can be washed in almost any modern automatic car wash.

The vehicle paint is so durable that the vehicle can normally be washed without problems in an automatic car wash. However, the effect on the paint depends to a large extent on the design of the facility, the filtering of the wash water, the type of wash and care material, etc. If the paint has a dull appearance after going through the car wash or is scratched, bring this to the attention of the operator immediately. If necessary, use a different car wash.

Before going through a car wash, be sure to take the usual precautions such as closing the windows and the roof. Factory installed antennas must not be removed.

If you have installed additional accessories on the vehicle - such as spoilers, roof rack, etc. - it is best to ask the car wash operator if these should be removed.

WARNING

Please take note of the following points before going through an automatic car wash with your vehicle, so that you can avoid damage to your vehicle.

– Compare the track of your vehicle with the distance between the guide rails of the facility - there is a risk of damage to the wheels and tires.
– Compare the height and width of your vehicle with the height and width of the tunnel at the facility.
– Fold the exterior mirrors flat - there is a risk of damaging the exterior mirrors. Power folding exterior mirrors* must not be folded in or out by hand. Use the power function!
– Do not allow the wiper blade to fall onto the windshield after the vehicle is dried - there is a risk of damaging the paint on the hood.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information ⇨ *page 217*.

Washing the vehicle by hand

A lot of water is needed when washing a vehicle by hand.

- Before you start washing, make sure you have read and understood the WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 217*.
- First soak all dried dirt until it is soft, then rinse it off.
- As you clean your vehicle, start with the roof and work your way down to the bottom, using a sponge, a sponge glove or a clean brush.
- Rinse the sponge or the sponge glove often, flushing it clean each time.
- Use special car shampoo only for very persistent dirt.
- Rinse the car thoroughly with water.
- Use a chamois leather to gently wipe the exterior dry.

Use a separate sponge for cleaning the wheels, door sills and other regions exposed to road dirt. In this way, you will not scratch the paint with coarse particles imbedded in the sponge the next time you wash the car.

WARNING

– Do not clean the underside of the chassis, fenders, wheel covers, or other hard to reach parts without protecting your hands and arms. You may cut yourself on sharp-edged metal parts.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information ⇨ *page 217*.

Note

– Never try to remove dirt, mud or dust if the surface of the vehicle is dry. Never use a dry cloth or sponge, since this could scratch your vehicle's paint or windows.
– Never wash your car in bright sunlight. Drops of water act as magnifying lenses and may damage your paint.
– When you wash your car in the winter: if you rinse your vehicle with a hose, be careful not to aim the stream of water ▶

directly at locks, or at door or hatch openings - they can freeze shut.
– Never use sponges designed to remove insects, or any kitchen scouring sponges or similar products. They can damage your paint finish.
– You should remove debris (such as insects) from the headlight lenses on a regular basis, for example when refueling your vehicle. Never use a dry cloth or sponge to clean the headlights. Only use wet cloths or sponges to prevent scratches. It is best to use soapy water.

For the sake of the environment

In the interest of the environment, the vehicle should only be washed in special wash bays.

Washing your vehicle with a power washer

Cleaning the exterior of your car with a high-pressure power washer is safe as long as you observe a few simple rules.

- Before using the power washer, make sure you have read and understood the WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 217*.
- Always follow the operating instructions for the power washer.
- Make sure that the jet on the spray hose produces a “fan shaped spray”.
- Do *not* hold the spray nozzle *too close* to soft materials.

When cleaning the vehicle with a power washer *always* follow the operating instructions. This applies particularly to the **operating pressure** and the **spraying distance**. Maintain a sufficient distance to soft materials such as rubber hoses and sound/vibration deadening materials (particularly on the underside of the engine hood). Do not use a jet which sprays water in a **direct stream** or one that has a **rotating** jet.

Water temperature should not exceed 140 °F (60 °C).

WARNING

Never wash tires with a jet that sprays water in a direct stream. This could cause invisible damage to the tires and weaken them, even if the spray is from a relatively long distance and for a short time. Damaged and weakened tires can fail and cause accidents and personal injury.

Note

To avoid damaging your vehicle, always make sure that there is sufficient distance between the spray head and soft materials like rubber hoses, plastic parts and sound-deadening materials. Never aim the spray head at the same point for a long time. This also applies to cleaning headlights and painted bumpers. Remember: the closer the nozzle is to the surface of the material, the greater the stress on the material.

Waxing

Wax protects the vehicle's paint.

- Use a manually applied car wax occasionally to protect the paint.

A good wax coating protects the vehicle paint to a large extent against the environmental factors listed under ⇨ *page 217, Washing* and even against slight scratches.

You can use a liquid car wax to protect your paint as soon as one week after your vehicle has been delivered.

Even if you regularly use a **waxing** process in automatic car washes, we recommend that you manually apply a coat of wax to give the paint extra protection, particularly if water no longer beads on the clean paint.

Protect plastic body parts with car wax in the same way as the vehicle body.

During warm weather dead insects tend to collect on the front bumper and on the forward area of the hood. They are much easier to remove from paint that is waxed *often*. ▶

WARNING

Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information ⇨ *page 217*.

Note

Do not use car wax on
– matte or anodized metal trim
– rubber or rubber-like trim.

Polishing

Polishing restores the gloss to the paint.

Polish your vehicle only if the paint has lost its shine and the gloss cannot be brought back with wax.

If the polish used does not contain preservative compounds, the paint must be waxed afterwards ⇨ *page 219, Waxing*.

WARNING

Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information ⇨ *page 217*.

Note

Do not treat matte anodized metal trim, plastic or rubber parts with polish or wax.

Trim strips

Metal trim needs special care.

For environmental reasons, Audi fabricates the bright trim strips and trim pieces from pure chromium-free aluminum.

Dirt and marks on the trim strips should be removed with a **pH-balanced** cleaning agent (do not use a chrome cleaner). Authorized Audi dealers carry cleaning products which have been tested for use on your vehicle and are not harmful to the environment.

To avoid corrosion on the exterior trim strips, only a pH-balanced solution should be used for the windshield washer.

WARNING

Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information ⇨ *page 217*.

Plastic and vinyl

Plastic needs special care.

Use a clean, damp cloth or sponge to remove dust and light surface dirt. For other soil, use a lukewarm all-purpose cleaning solution or a mild saddle soap for vinyl trim. Remove water spots and traces of soap with a clean, damp cloth or sponge. Use a clean, soft cloth to rub dry.

Grease, tar or oil stains can be removed with a clean cloth or sponge soaked with all-purpose cleaner or with a solvent designed especially to clean vinyl.

Occasionally apply a colorless vinyl or leather preservative to retain the material's luster and pliability.

WARNING

Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information ⇨ *page 217*.

Aluminum trim

Use only **neutral-pH** products to remove spots and deposits from aluminum surfaces. Chrome care products and alkaline cleaners will attack aluminum surfaces and can damage them over time.

WARNING

Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information ⇨ *page 217*.

Touch-up paint

Minor paint damages should be touched up immediately.

▸ Use either a touch-up paint stick or spray paint to cover minor scratches and nicks. ▶

Your authorized Audi dealer has touch-up paint for minor scratches and stone chips. Scratches should be touched up soon after they occur to prevent corrosion.

If a spot starts to rust, however, a simple touch-up job will not be enough. The affected surface must be sanded smooth and coated with an anti-rust primer before the painted finish can be restored.

The number for the original vehicle paint can be found on the vehicle identification label ⇨ *page 287*.

WARNING

Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information ⇨ *page 217*.

Windows

Clear vision to all sides.

Clean all windows regularly to remove road film and car wash wax buildup.

- ▸ Remove snow from windows using a brush.
- ▸ Use a plastic ice scraper to remove ice from windows and mirrors.
- ▸ Remove other residue on the windows with a spray-on glass cleaner.
- ▸ Wipe the windows dry with a clean piece of cloth or kitchen paper towel.

The best way to remove snow from windows and mirrors is to use a brush. Use a non-abrasive **plastic ice scraper** - better still, a spray deicer - to remove **ice** from windows and mirrors.

The windows must not be cleaned with insect remover or wax since these can interfere with the function of the windshield wiper blades (chatter).

Oil, grease, or silicone residue can be removed with **glass cleaner** or **silicone remover**. However, wax residue requires the use of a specially formulated solvent. Please contact your authorized Audi dealer for advice on safe products for wax removal.

Windows should also be cleaned on the inside at regular intervals.

Never dry windows with the same chamois that you use to dry painted surfaces. Wax residue on the chamois can impair vision through the windows.

WARNING

- Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information ⇨ *page 217*.
- The windshield must not be treated with water-repellent materials. They can increase glare under poor visibility conditions such as wetness, darkness, or when the sun is low on the horizon. In addition, they can cause the windshield wipers to chatter.

Note

- Never use warm or hot water to remove snow and ice from windows and mirrors. This could cause the glass to crack.
- To prevent damage to the wires of the rear defogger, do not place any adhesive stickers on the inside of the rear window over the wires.
- To help prevent dirt from scratching the window, always scrape in a forward direction - pushing the scraper away from you - never back and forth.
- Water leaking from the inside of the rear windows may damage sensitive electrical components located either under the rear parcel shelf or in the rear trunk area. Always ensure that water never leaks through the body section of the vehicle. You can do this by using waterproof protection over the vehicle's electrical components (e.g. , when installing window tinting).
- Damage or malfunction of electrical components due to water damage or any other outside influence is not covered by the Audi New Vehicle Limited Warranty. See your Warranty & Maintenance booklet for additional details about your warranty.

Weatherstrips

Complete car care includes the weatherstrips as well.

- ▸ Apply a suitable rubber conditioner to the weatherstrips from time to time.

To be able seal properly, the weatherstrips around the hood, doors, rear lid, etc. must remain pliable. Spray the weatherstrips with silicone or coat them with talcum powder or glycerin to retain the flexibility of the rubber and to protect them against freezing in the winter.

WARNING

Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information ⇨ *page 217*.

Tips

Keep silicone sprays off the windshield to avoid wiper smear in rain.

Cast (light) alloy wheels

Cast (light) alloy wheels require special care.

- ▸ Wash the wheels with a sponge or hose brush every other week.
- ▸ For deep cleaning afterwards, use only a dedicated **acid-free** cast alloy wheel cleaner.
- ▸ Rub a coat of **liquid wax** onto the rims every three month. Be sure to reach and treat all parts of the rim.

To preserve the decorative appearance of the cast alloy wheels, some special care is necessary. In addition to road dirt and salt, brake dust is also corrosive. If left on for too long, brake dust can cause pitting.

Use only special *acid-free* cleaners formulated for alloy rims. Safe products are available at your authorized Audi dealer. Never leave the cleaner on the rims longer than specified on the label. If not rinsed off promptly, the acid contained in some cleaners can attack the threads on the wheel bolts.

Never use abrasive or metal polishing cleaning agents. If the protective coating has been chipped, e.g. by kicked up road dirt, touch it up as soon as possible.

WARNING

- Moisture and ice on brakes may affect braking efficiency ⇨ *page 200, General information*. Test the brakes carefully each time you wash the vehicle.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information ⇨ *page 217*.

Body cavity sealing

The body cavity sealing does not need to be checked.

All body cavities which could be affected by corrosion have been thoroughly protected at the factory.

This sealing does not require any inspection or additional treatment. If any wax should seep out of the cavity when the ambient temperature is high, it can be removed with a plastic scraper and a suitable solvent.

WARNING

Solvents can be dangerous.

- Benzine is flammable and toxic. If you use benzine for removing the wax, keep sparks, flame and lighted cigarettes away. Never dump benzine on the ground, into open streams or down sewage drains.
- Be sure to observe all safety and environmental regulations. Follow all instructions on the container.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information ⇨ *page 217*.

Chassis

Have the undercoating checked for damage from time to time.

The lower body shell of your Audi is also thoroughly protected against corrosion. ▸

Any damage to the undercoating caused by road hazards should be repaired promptly.

WARNING

Too much undercoating in the wrong places can cause a fire.

– Do not apply additional undercoating or rustproofing on or near the exhaust manifold, exhaust pipes, catalytic converter or heat shields. While driving, the substance used for undercoating could overheat and cause a fire.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information ⇨ *page 217*.

Exhaust tail pipes

Road salt and other corrosive materials will damage the material in the exhaust tail pipes if they are not cleaned regularly. Do not clean the tail pipes with wheel cleaner, paint polish, chrome polish or other abrasive cleaners. Clean the tail pipes with car care products that are suitable for stainless steel.

Your authorized Audi dealer can provide cleaning products that have been tested and approved for your vehicle.

Care of interior

Radio and MMI* display

▸ Clean the display with a soft clean cloth and an LCD cleaner.

The display can be cleaned with a professionally available “LCD cleaner”. The cloth should be slightly dampened with the cleaning fluid to clean the display.

Note

To avoid scratching the display, you should never clean it dry.

MMI control console

Applies to vehicles: with MMI

▸ First clean the MMI control console with a brush to remove dust from the housing.
▸ Then wipe the MMI control console with a clean, soft, slightly damp cloth.

The MMI control console should be cleaned with a brush first so that no dirt is trapped between the buttons and the housing. We recommend giving the MMI control console a final wipe with a cloth moistened with water and dish washing detergent.

Note

To prevent damage, make sure that no fluid ever gets into the MMI control console.

Aluminum trim

Use only **neutral-pH** products to remove spots and deposits from aluminum surfaces. Chrome care products and alkaline cleaners will attack aluminum surfaces and can damage them over time.

WARNING

Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information ⇨ *page 217*.

Fabrics and fabric coverings

Fabrics and fabric coverings (e.g. seats, door trim panels, etc.) should be cleaned at regular intervals with a vacuum cleaner. This removes surface dirt particles which could become embedded in the fabric through use. Steam cleaners should not be used, because the steam tends to push the dirt deeper into the fabric and lock it there.

Normal cleaning

Generally, we recommend using a soft sponge or a lint-free microfiber cloth to the clean fabric. Brushes should only be used for carpets and floor mats, since other fabric surfaces could be harmed by brushes.

Normal surface stains can be cleaned using a commercially available foam cleaner. Spread the foam on the surface of the fabric with a soft sponge and work it in gently. Do not saturate the fabric. Then pat the foam dry using ▶

absorbent, dry cloths (e.g. microfiber cloth) and vacuum it after it has dried completely.

Cleaning stains

Stains caused by beverages (e.g. coffee, fruit juice, etc.) can be treated with a mild detergent solution. Apply the detergent solution with a sponge. In the case of stubborn stains, a detergent paste can be applied directly to the stain and worked into the fabric. Afterwards, use copious amounts of clean water to remove the remaining detergent. Apply the water with a damp cloth or sponge and pat the fabric dry with an absorbent, dry cloth.

Stains from chocolate or makeup should have detergent paste rubbed into them. Afterwards, remove the soap with water (damp sponge).

Alcohol can be used to treat stains from grease, oil, lipstick or a ballpoint pen. Melted grease or dye must be patted off using absorbent material. It may be necessary to retreat the areas with detergent paste and water.

In the case of general soiling of the upholstery and cover material, we recommend hiring a specialist that has the equipment to clean the seat covers and other fabric surfaces by shampooing and spray extraction.

WARNING

Always read and heed all WARNINGS and the information ⇨ *page 217*.

Tips

Open Velcro fasteners on your clothing can damage the seat cover. Please make sure that Velcro fasteners are closed.

Plastic parts and instrument panel

Always use a clean cloth moistened in clear water to clean these areas. For persistent dirt use an Audi approved **solvent-free** plastic cleaner/protectant.

WARNING

Solvents can change the properties of some plastics and make it harder for the airbag to deploy.

- Never clean the instrument panel or the surface of airbag modules with cleaning products that contain solvents.
- Products containing solvents will make the surface of this part porous.
- Serious injuries can result if plastic parts come loose when the airbag is deployed.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information ⇨ *page 217*.

Note

Cleaning agents containing solvents will attack the material and can change the way it behaves.

Natural leather

Applies to vehicles: with natural leather

Audi makes great efforts to maintain the properties, natural look and feel of interior leather.

General

We offer many different types of leather on our vehicles. Most are different types of nappa leather, which has a smooth surface and comes in various colors.

The intensity of the color determines the visual characteristics and appearance. If the surface of the leather has a typical natural look, then the leather is a nappa leather that has been left in a relatively natural condition. This leather offers particularly good comfort and breathes well. Fine veins, closed grains, insect bites, skin folds, and subtle variations in color remain visible. These characteristics demonstrate that the material is natural.

Natural nappa leather is not covered by a color finish. It is therefore more sensitive to soiling and wear, which is something you need to consider if children, animals or other factors might prove to be particularly hard on the leather. ▶

By contrast, leather types that are covered by a colored finish layer are more durable. This has a positive effect on the leather's resistance to wear and soiling in daily use. On the other hand, the typical characteristics of natural leather are barely or not apparent. However, this does not mean that the leather itself is of inferior quality.

Care and handling

Because of the exclusive nature of the types of leather that Audi uses and their unique properties (such as sensitivity to oils, grease, soiling, etc.), you will need to be somewhat careful with these leathers, and a certain type of care is required. For example, dark clothing materials can discolor leather seats (especially if such clothing is damp and was not dyed correctly). Dust and dirt particles in pores, folds, and seams can have an abrasive effect and can damage the leather surface as well as weaken seams.

The leather should be cleaned regularly as needed. After having been used for a relatively long time, your leather seats will acquire a rich aged finish. This is a characteristic of natural leather and a sign of true quality.

In order to maintain the value of this natural product over the life of your vehicle, you should follow the recommendations below:

Note

– To keep your leather from bleaching out, do not allow it to be exposed to bright sunlight for long periods of time. If you have to leave the vehicle parked outside for long periods, cover the leather to protect it from direct exposure to sunlight.
– Sharp objects on clothing, such as zippers, rivets or sharp pieces on belts can leave permanent scratches or scrape marks on the surface of the leather.

Tips

– After each time you clean the leather and at regular intervals, use a leather preservative cream that contains UV-blockers and that works into the leather. This cream will nourish and moisturize the leather, helping it to breathe and stay supple. It also helps to build up a protective coating on the surface.
– Clean the leather every 2 - 3 months, and clean any areas that get soiled.
– Remove fresh marks made by ballpoint pens, ink, lipstick, shoe polish, etc. as soon as possible.
– Preserve the color of the leather as needed by using a special colored leather care cream to touch up areas of uneven color.

Cleaning and caring for leather upholstery and trim

Applies to vehicles: with natural leather

Natural leather requires special care and attention.

Normal cleaning

▸ Clean soiled areas with a slightly moistened cotton or woolen cloth.

More stubborn dirt

▸ More stubborn dirt can be removed using a cloth saturated with a mild soap solution (2 tablespoons mild liquid soap).
▸ Never allow the soap solution to saturate the leather, and make certain that no water soaks into the seams.
▸ Wipe off the soap solution with a soft, dry cloth.

Cleaning spots

▸ Remove fresh **water-based** spots (such as coffee, tea, juices, blood) with an absorbent cloth or paper towel.
▸ Remove fresh **grease or oil-based spots** (such as butter, mayonnaise, chocolate) with an absorbent cloth or paper towel, or use the cleaner from the leather care kit if the spot has not yet penetrated into the surface of the leather.
▸ Use an oil/grease dissolving spray, if **oil/grease spots have dried on.** ▶

- ▸ Remove specific kinds of spots (ballpoint pen, felt marker, fingernail polish, water-based paint, shoe polish, etc.) with a spot remover specifically formulated for leather.

Leather care

- ▸ Every half year use an approved leather care product (available from your authorized Audi dealer) to care for the leather.
- ▸ Apply the product very sparingly.
- ▸ Wipe it off with a damp cloth.

If you have any questions about cleaning and caring for the leather in your vehicle, it is best to contact your authorized Audi dealer, who will be glad to help you and tell you about our full range of leather care products, such as:

– Leather cleaning and care kit
– Creams to care for colored leather
– Spot removers for ballpoint pens, shoe polish, etc.
– Oil/grease dissolving spray
– New and upcoming products.

WARNING

Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information ⇨ *page 217*.

Note

– Never use chemical solvents (e.g. lighter fluid, turpentine), waxes, shoe polish or similar products on the leather surfaces in your Audi.
– To avoid damage, have stubborn stains removed by a commercial cleaning specialist.

Safety belts

Only well-maintained safety belts work reliably when needed.

- ▸ Keep belts clean.
- ▸ For cleaning, use a mild soap and water solution. Let belts dry thoroughly and away from direct sunlight.
- ▸ Do not allow inertia reel safety belts to retract before they are completely dry.
- ▸ Check the condition of your safety belts *regularly*.

Heavily soiled safety belts may not retract properly.

WARNING

Damaged safety belts can break in a crash.
– Anything that might damage your safety belts could mean that you and your passengers would not be adequately protected in an accident.
– Safety belt performance depends on correct installation. Never remove belts from the vehicle to clean them.
– Do not use chemical cleaning agents, bleach or dyes. They have corrosive properties which weaken the webbing.
– When cleaning your safety belts, inspect them for damage. If you discover damage, see your authorized Audi dealer.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information ⇨ *page 217*.

Engine compartment

Be especially careful when cleaning the engine compartment.

Always switch off the ignition before cleaning the engine ⇨ ⚠.

Plenum panel

Remove leaves from the plenum panel in front of the windshield under the engine hood. This prevents the water drain holes from becoming blocked, and it prevents debris from entering the vehicle interior through the heating and ventilation ducts.

Corrosion protection

The engine compartment and transmission have been corrosion-protected at the factory.

Good anti-corrosion treatment is very important, particularly in the winter. If the vehicle is frequently driven on salt treated roads, the entire engine compartment and plenum panel should be thoroughly cleaned at the end of winter and retreated to prevent salt damage. ▶

At the same time, the underside of the vehicle should be washed as well.

If the engine compartment is cleaned at any time with grease removing solutions[1)], or if you have the engine washed, the anti-corrosion treatment is almost always removed as well. It is therefore essential to have a long-lasting corrosion protection reapplied to all surfaces, seams, joints and components in the engine compartment.

WARNING

Be aware: The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area.

- Before working in the engine compartment, be sure to read the information ⇨ *page 226*.
- Before reaching into the front plenum panel, always remove the ignition key. Otherwise, the windshield wiper system could unintentionally be switched on, possibly causing personal injury from the moving wiper linkage.
- Never reach into the area around or touch the radiator fan. The auxiliary fan is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly - even when the ignition is off.
- Do not wash, wax or dry the engine with the engine running. Moving or hot parts could injure you.
- Do not clean the underside of the chassis, fenders, wheel covers, or other hard to reach parts without protecting your hands and arms. You may cut yourself on sharp-edged metal parts.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other information ⇨ *page 217*.

1) Use only the correct cleaning solutions. Never use gasoline or diesel fuel.

Fuel supply and filling your fuel tank

Gasoline

Fuel supply

Using the right fuel helps keep the environment clean and prevents engine damage.

Fuel recommendation

The fuel recommended for your vehicle is **unleaded premium** grade gasoline. See also ⇨ *page 289, Data*. Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline with a minimum octane rating of 91 AKI (95 RON). For more information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, please go to the official website (www.toptiergas.com).

The recommended gasoline octane rating for your engine can also be found on a label located on the inside of the fuel filler flap. This rating may be specified as AKI or RON.

Your vehicle may also be operated using unleaded regular gasoline with a minimum octane rating of 87 AKI/91 RON. However, using 87 AKI/91 RON octane fuel will slightly reduce engine performance.

Use unleaded gasoline only. Unleaded gasoline is available throughout the USA, Canada, and in most European countries. We recommend that you do not take your vehicle to areas or countries where unleaded gasoline may not be available.

For more information on refueling your vehicle, see ⇨ *page 229*.

Octane rating

Octane rating indicates a gasoline's ability to resist engine damaging "knock" caused by premature ignition and detonation. Therefore, buying the correct grade of gasoline is very important to help prevent possible engine damage and a loss of engine performance.

Gasoline most commonly used in the United States and Canada has the following octane ratings that can usually be found on the filler pump:

– Premium Grade: 91 - 96 AKI

– Regular Grade: 87 - 90 AKI

Explanation of the abbreviations:

AKI = **A**nti **K**nock **I**ndex = (R+M)/2 = (RON +MON)/2

RON = **R**esearch **O**ctane **N**umber

MON = **M**otor **O**ctane **N**umber.

Note

– Do not use any fuel with octane ratings lower than 87 AKI or 91 RON otherwise expensive engine damage will occur.
– Do **not** use leaded gasoline. The use of leaded gasoline will severely damage your vehicle's catalytic converter and its ability to control exhaust emissions.

Blended gasoline

Use of gasoline containing alcohol or MTBE (methyl tertiary butyl ether)

You may use unleaded gasoline blended with alcohol or MTBE (commonly referred to as oxygenates) if the blended mixture meets the following criteria:

Blend of gasoline methanol (wood alcohol or methyl alcohol)

– Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
– Blend must contain no more than 3% methanol.
– Blend must contain more than 2% co-solvents.

Blend of gasoline and ethanol (grain alcohol or ethyl alcohol)

– Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
– Blend must not contain more than 10% ethanol.

Blend of gasoline and MTBE

– Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher. ▶

– Blend must contain not more than 15% MTBE.

Seasonally adjusted gasoline

Many gasoline grades are blended to perform especially well for winter or summer driving. During seasonal change-over, we suggest that you fill up at busy gas stations where the seasonal adjustment is more likely to be made in time.

Note

– Methanol fuels which do not meet these requirements may cause corrosion and damage to plastic and rubber components in the fuel system.
– Do not use fuels that fail to meet the specified criteria in this chapter.
– If you are unable to determine whether or not a particular fuel blend meets the specifications, ask your service station or its fuel supplier.
– Do not use fuel for which the contents cannot be identified.
– Fuel system damage and performance problems resulting from the use of fuels different from those specified are not the responsibility of Audi and are not covered under the New Vehicle or the Emission Control System Warranties.
– If you experience a loss of fuel economy or driveability and performance problems due to the use of one of these fuel blends, we recommend that you switch to unblended fuel.

Gasoline additives

A major concern among many auto manufacturers is carbon deposit build-up caused by the type of gasoline you use.

Although gasoline grades differ from one manufacturer to another, they have certain things in common. All gasoline grades contain substances that can cause deposits to collect on vital engine parts, such as fuel injectors and intake valves. Although most gasoline brands include additives to keep engine and fuel systems clean, they are not equally effective.

Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. For more information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, please go to the official website (www.toptiergas.com).

After an extended period of using inadequate fuels, built-up carbon deposits can rob your engine of peak performance.

Note

Damage or malfunction due to poor fuel quality is not covered by the Audi New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Fuel tank

Fuel filler neck

The fuel filler neck is located on the right rear side panel behind the fuel filler flap.

If the power locking system should fail, you can still open the flap manually - for detailed instructions see ⇨ *page 231*.

You can find the fuel tank capacity of your vehicle in **Technical Data** ⇨ *page 289*.

The label on the inside of the fuel filler flap tells you the correct fuel for your vehicle. For more information about fuel specifications, see ⇨ *page 228*.

Your vehicle fuel tank has an on-board refuelling vapor recovery system. This feature helps to prevent fuel vapors from escaping from the tank and polluting the environment while you refuel your vehicle. In order to fill the tank properly while protecting the environment, please follow this refueling procedure carefully.

WARNING

Under normal operating conditions, never carry additional fuel containers in your car. Gas canisters and other containers used to transport fuel can be dangerous. Such containers, full or empty, may leak and could cause a fire in a collision. If you must ▶

transport fuel to use for your lawn mower, snow blower, etc., be very careful and always observe local and state laws regarding the use, transportation and storage of such fuel containers. Make certain the container meets industry standards (ANSI/ ASTM F852 - 86).

Note

Never drive your vehicle until the fuel tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. Gasoline could enter the exhaust system and damage the catalytic converter.

Refuelling



Fig. 202 Right rear vehicle side: Opening the fuel filler flap



Fig. 203 Fuel filler flap with attached fuel cap

When activating the central locking, the fuel filler flap is automatically unlocked or locked. Refuel the vehicle with the ignition turned *off*.

Taking the fuel cap off

- Press the left side of the fuel filler flap to open it ⇨ *fig. 202* -arrow-.
- Unscrew fuel cap counter-clockwise and hang it on the fuel filler flap ⇨ *fig. 203*.

Refuelling procedure

- Insert the fuel nozzle from the gasoline pump into the fuel filler neck as far as it will go.
- Select a medium refuelling rate so that the nozzle switches off automatically when the tank is full.

Putting the fuel cap back on

- After filling your tank, twist the fuel cap clockwise as far as it will go.
- Close the fuel filler flap.

To avoid fuel spilling or evaporating from the fuel tank always close fuel cap properly and completely. An improperly closed fuel filler cap may also cause the MIL lamp ⇨ *page 25* to come on.

WARNING

Improper refueling or handling of fuel can cause fire, explosion and severe burns.

– Fuel is highly flammable and can cause severe burns and other injuries.
– Failure to shut the engine off while refueling and/or to insert the pump nozzle fully into the fuel filler neck could cause fuel to spray out of filler neck or to overflow. Fuel spray and overflowing fuel can cause a fire.
– Never use a cellular telephone while refueling. The electromagnetic radiation can cause sparks that can ignite fuel vapors and cause a fire.
– Never get back into your vehicle while refueling. If in exceptional circumstances you must get back in your vehicle while refueling, make certain that you close the door and touch metal to discharge static electricity before touching the filler nozzle again. Static electricity can cause sparks that can ignite fuel vapors released during refueling.
– Never smoke or have an open flame anywhere in or near your vehicle when refueling or filling a portable fuel container. ▶

– For your safety, we strongly recommend that you do not travel with a portable fuel container in your vehicle. The container, full or empty may leak and could cause a fire, especially in a crash.
– If, under exceptional circumstances, you must transport a portable fuel container, please observe the following:
  – Never fill a portable fuel container while it is anywhere in or on the vehicle (for example, in the luggage compartment, or on the trunk). Static electricity can build up while filling and can ignite fuel vapors causing a fire.
  – Always place a portable fuel container on the ground before filling.
  – Always keep the filler nozzle completely inside the portable container before and during filling.
  – If filling a portable container made of metal, the filler nozzle must always be in contact with the container. This will help prevent static electricity from discharging and cause a fire.
  – Never spill fuel inside the vehicle or luggage compartment. Fuel vapors are highly flammable.
  – Always observe local and state/provincial laws regarding the use, storage and transportation of fuel containers.
  – Make certain the fuel container meets industry standards (ANSI / ASTM F852–86).

Note

If any fuel has spilled onto the car, it should be removed immediately to prevent damage to the paint.

For the sake of the environment

As soon as the correctly operated nozzle switches off automatically for the first time, the tank is full. Do not try to add more fuel because fuel may spill out. In addition, the expansion space in the fuel tank will be filled - causing the fuel to overflow when it becomes warm and pollute the environment.

Tips

– Running your engine while refuelling may cause vapors to escape or even cause fuel to spill out of the tank. This would then shut off the fuel nozzle before the tank is full.
– Do not refuel your vehicle with the ignition turned on. The fuel gauge may otherwise not indicate the correct fuel level after refuelling.
– The fuel filler flap of your vehicle is not locked when you lock the vehicle from the inside.

Unlocking the fuel filler flap by hand

You can open the fuel filler flap by hand if the power locking system should fail.

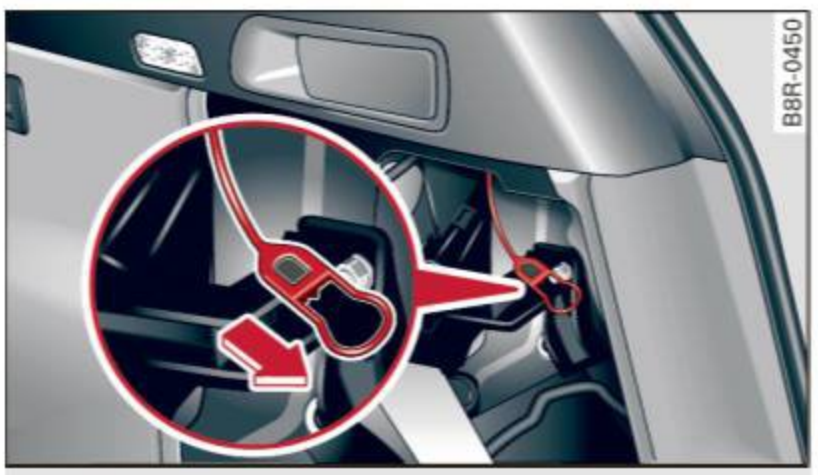


Fig. 204 Luggage compartment: Emergency opening of fuel filler flap

The emergency opening mechanism is located behind the right side trim panel in the luggage compartment.

▸ Open the right side trim panel.
▸ Loosen the strap from its bracket and pull on it ⇨ *fig. 204*. Now you can open the fuel filler flap as usual.

Checking and filling

Engine hood

Releasing the engine hood

The engine hood is released from inside the vehicle.

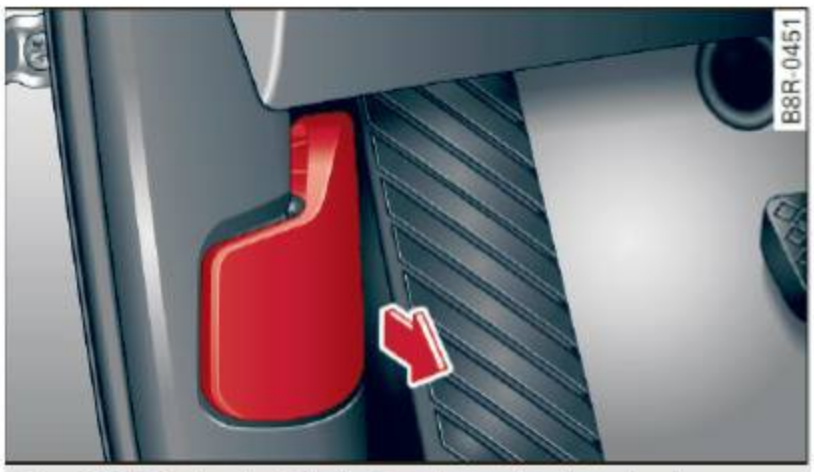


Fig. 205 Driver's side footwell: engine hood release lever

- ▸ Open the driver's door.
- ▸ Pull the release lever on the left under the instrument panel ⇨ *fig. 205* in the direction of the arrow.

The hood pops up slightly under spring pressure.

Opening the engine hood



Fig. 206 Release lever under the engine hood

Before opening the engine hood, make sure that the windshield wipers are flat against the windshield. Otherwise, they could damage the paint on the hood.

- ▸ Pull up on the release under the hood ⇨ *fig. 206*. This releases the catch.
- ▸ Open the hood all the way ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Hot engine coolant can burn you.

– To reduce the risk of being burned, never open the hood if you see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen or heard before carefully opening the hood.

Closing the engine hood

- ▸ Pull the hood down until the pressure from the struts is reduced.
- ▸ Let the hood *drop down* and latch in place. *Do not try to push it shut*; it may fail to engage ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

A hood that is not completely latched could fly up and block your view while driving.

– When you close the engine hood, check it to make sure the safety catch has properly engaged. The hood should be flush with the surrounding vehicle body parts.

– If you notice while driving that the hood is not secured properly, stop at once and close it.

Working in the engine compartment

Be especially careful whenever you work in the engine compartment.

Whenever you must perform any work in the engine compartment, for example checking and filling different fluids, there is a risk of injury, burns and accidents. To prevent personal injury always observe the following WARNINGS. The engine compartment of any vehicle is a hazardous area ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

To help avoid injury, before you check anything under the hood:

– Turn off the engine.

– Remove the ignition key. ▸

– Apply the parking brake.
– Move selector lever of automatic transmission to “P” (Park).
– Always let the engine cool down. Hot components will burn skin on contact.
– To reduce the risk of being burned, never open the hood if you see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen or heard before carefully opening the hood.
– Keep children away from the engine compartment.
– Never spill fluids on hot engine components. They can cause a fire.
– Never touch the radiator fan. The auxiliary electric fan is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly.
– Never open the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is still warm. The coolant system is pressurized and hot coolant could spray out.
– Protect your face, hands and arm from steam or hot engine coolant by placing a thick rag over the cap when you open the coolant reservoir.
– If work on the fuel system or the electrical system is necessary:
  – Always disconnect the battery.
  – Never smoke or work near heaters or open flames. Fluids in the engine compartment could start a fire.
  – Keep an approved fire extinguisher immediately available.
– To avoid electrical shock and personal injury while the engine is running or being started, never touch:
  – Ignition cables
  – Other components of the high voltage electronic ignition system.
– If you must perform a check or repair with the engine running:
  – First, fully apply the parking brake, move selector lever of automatic transmission to “P” (Park).
  – Always use extreme caution to prevent clothing, jewelry, or long hair from getting caught in the radiator fan, V-belts or other moving parts, or from contacting hot parts. Tie back hair before starting, and do not wear clothing that will hang or droop into the engine.
– Minimize exposure to emission and chemical hazards ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning:
– Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.
– Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harms. Wash hands after handling.

Note

When adding fluids, always make sure that they are poured into the proper container or filler opening, otherwise serious damage to vehicle systems will occur.

For the sake of the environment

To detect leaks in time, inspect the vehicle floor pan from underneath regularly. If you see spots from oil or other vehicle fluids, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Audi dealer.

Engine compartment

Engine compartment

These are the most important items that you can check.

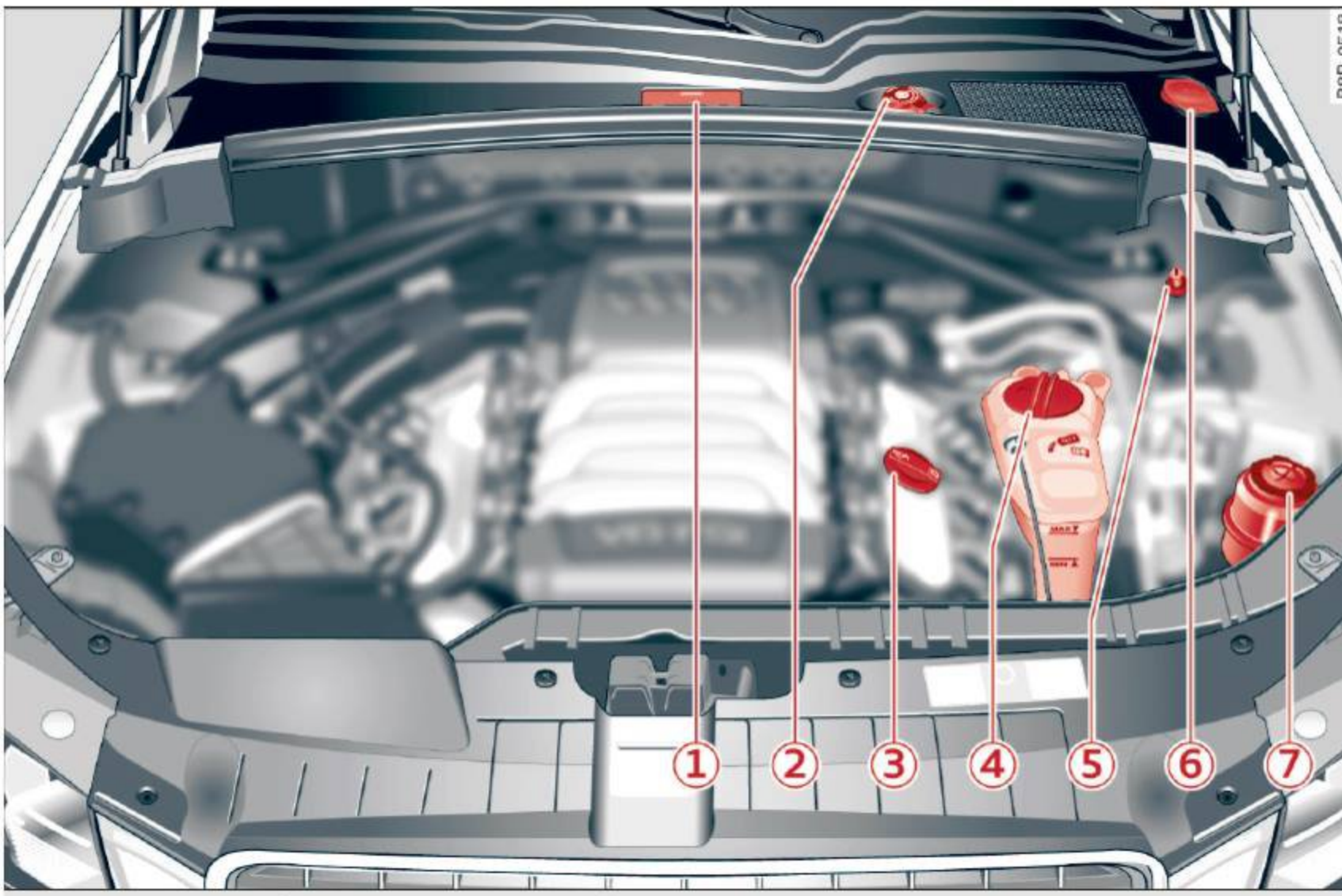


Fig. 207 Typical layout for containers and engine oil filler cap

① Jump start point (+) under a cover 244, 282
② Brake fluid reservoir ( ) 241
③ Engine oil filler cap ( ) 237
④ Coolant expansion tank ( ) . . . 239
⑤ Jump start point (-) with hex head screw 244, 282
⑥ Windshield/headlight washer container ( ) 246
⑦ Power steering reservoir 202

The position of the engine oil filling hole ⇨ *fig. 207* (item ③) can differ depending on the engine design.

WARNING

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 232.*

Engine oil

Engine oil specifications

The engine oil used in your Audi needs the right kind of oil.

The engine in your Audi is a sophisticated power plant that was built to exacting specifications. This engine needs the right kind of engine oil that meets specifications regarding quality and viscosity so that it can run smoothly and reliably. Choosing the right oil and changing oil within the time and mileage intervals printed in your vehicle's Warranty & Maintenance booklet matters a lot more today than it did years ago. Audi has developed a special quality standard for engine oil that will help assure that your vehicle's engine will get the lubrication it needs for proper operation. ▶

Modern engine lubrication has taken a quantum leap in the last few years. Many synthetic oils available today provide better engine lubrication that can outlast traditional petroleum-based oils, making them a smart choice for use throughout the life of your Audi.

Whether you use synthetic or petroleum-based engine oil, the oil that you use must conform to Audi's oil quality standard VW 502 00 to help keep your vehicle's engine running smoothly and help prevent the formation of harmful deposits, sometimes called “sludge”, that over time can lead to expensive repairs.

At the time of printing, engine oils available in the U.S. and Canada that meet the exacting specifications of Audi oil standard VW 502 00 are synthetic engine oils. This does not mean, however, that every synthetic engine oil will meet Audi oil standard VW 502 00. So always be sure that you use an approved oil.

To help prevent the formation of harmful deposits use only oil with the following specifications printed on the oil container:

Audi oil standard VW 502 00

Oil container labels may carry the specification singly or in combination with other designations and oil quality standards.

Viscosity

Engine oils are graded according to their viscosity. The proper viscosity grade oil for your engine depends on climactic or seasonal conditions where you drive. You can use oil with a viscosity grade of SAE 5W40 across all temperature ranges for normal driving conditions.

However, if engine oil viscosity grade SAE 5W40 is not available, you can also use viscosity grade SAE 5W-30 or SAE 0W-40 as long as it meets Audi oil quality standard VW 502 00 specifications.

Because engine oil that meets the Audi oil standard may not be available everywhere when you need it, we strongly recommend that you always carry with you an extra quart (liter) of oil that expressly conforms to the VW 502 00 specification, in case you have to top off the oil while on the road.

Only if the bar of the oil level indicator is near “Min” - and no oil that expressly conforms to Audi oil standard VW 502 00 specifications is available - may you top off with a high quality engine oil, preferably synthetic-based, that meets ACEA A3, ACEA A5 or ACEA B5 or API SL specifications, but even then, only in viscosity grades SAE 5W-40, SAE 5W-30, or SAE 0W-40. However, during the entire time between oil change intervals, never top off with more than a total of 0.5 qt/liter engine oil that does not conform to Audi oil specification VW 502 00.

For more information about engine oil that has been approved for your vehicle, please contact either your authorized Audi dealer or Audi Customer Relations at 1 (800) 822-2834 or visit our web site at www.audiusa.com or www.audicanada.ca. Here you will also find a current list of oils (manufacturers, brand names etc.) that conform to Audi oil standard VW 502 00.

Changing the engine oil

The engine oil and oil filter must be changed according to the mileage (kilometers) and time intervals specified in your vehicle’s Warranty & Maintenance booklet. Do not exceed these intervals – harmful deposits from old engine oil can reduce engine performance and can lead to expensive engine repairs.

Changing the oil at the recommended intervals is so very important because the lubricating properties of oil decrease gradually during normal vehicle use. If you are not sure when you have your oil changed, ask your authorized Audi Service Advisor.

Under some circumstances the engine oil should even be changed more frequently. Change oil more often if you drive mostly short distances, operate the vehicle in dusty areas or mostly under stop-and-go traffic conditions, or when you use your vehicle where ▶

temperatures stay below freezing point for long periods.

Detergent additives in the oil will make fresh oil look dark after the engine has been running for a short time. This is normal and is not a reason to change the oil more often than recommended.

Damage or malfunctions due to lack of maintenance

It is essential that you change your oil at the recommended intervals using only engine oil that complies with Audi oil standard VW 502 00. Your Limited New Vehicle Warranty does not cover damage or malfunctions due to failure to follow recommended maintenance and use requirements as set forth in the Audi Owner's Manual and Warranty & Maintenance booklet. Your dealer will have to deny warranty coverage unless you present to the dealer proof in the form of Service or Repair Orders that all scheduled maintenance was performed in a timely manner.

Engine oil consumption

The engine in your vehicle depends on an adequate amount of oil to lubricate and cool all of its moving parts.

In order to provide effective lubrication and cooling of internal engine components, all internal combustion engines consume a certain amount of oil. Oil consumption varies from engine to engine and may change significantly over the life of the engine. Typically, engines with a specified break-in period (see ⇨ *page 206*) consume more oil during the break-in period than they consume after oil consumption has stabilized.

Under normal conditions, the rate of oil consumption depends on the quality and viscosity of the oil, the RPM (revolutions per minute) at which the engine is operated, the ambient temperature and road conditions. Further factors are the amount of oil dilution from water condensation or fuel residue and the oxidation level of the oil. As any engine is subject to wear as mileage builds up, the oil consumption may increase over time until replacement of worn components may become necessary.

With all these variables coming into play, no standard rate of oil consumption can be established or specified. There is no alternative to regular and frequent checking of the oil level, see **Note**.

If the yellow engine oil level warning symbol in the instrument cluster lights up, you should check the oil level as soon as possible ⇨ *page 237*. Top off the oil at your earliest convenience ⇨ *page 237*.

WARNING

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 232*.

Note

Driving with an insufficient oil level is likely to cause severe damage to the engine.

Tips

- **The oil pressure warning display is not an indicator of the oil level. Do not rely on it. Instead, check the oil level in your engine at regular intervals, preferably each time you refuel, and always before going on a long trip.**
- If you have the impression your engine consumes excessive amounts of oil, we recommend that you consult an authorized Audi dealer to have the cause of your concern properly diagnosed. Keep in mind that the accurate measurement of oil consumption requires great care and may take some time. An authorized Audi dealer has instructions about how to measure oil consumption accurately.

Checking the engine oil level

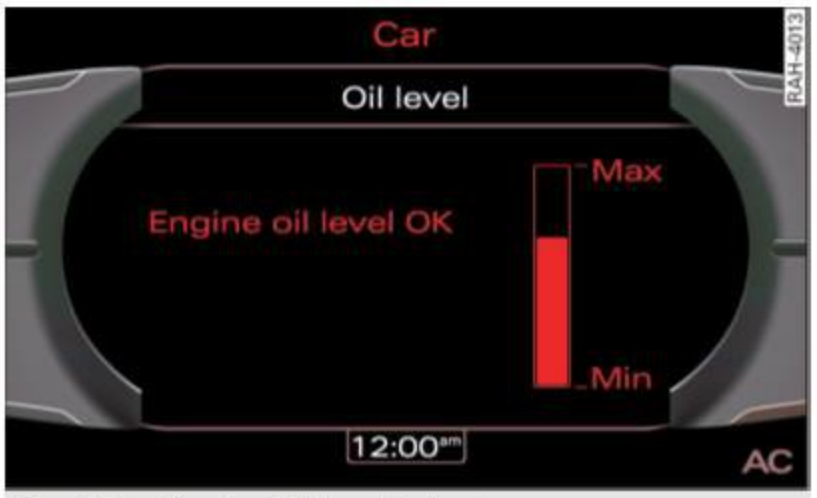


Fig. 208 Display: Oil level indicator

Read oil level

- ▸ Park your vehicle so that it is horizontally level.
- ▸ Shut the engine off when it is at operating temperature.
- ▸ Switch only the ignition back on.
- ▸ Wait approx. two minutes.
- ▸ Select: Function button CAR > **Oil level**.
- ▸ Read the oil level in the radio or MMI* Display ⇨ *fig. 208*. Add engine oil if the bar of the oil level indicator is near "Min" ⇨ *page 237*.

The oil level needs to be checked at regular intervals. The best times to do this are whenever you refuel and prior to long trips.

Depending on the way the vehicle is driven and the operating conditions, oil consumption can be up to a 1/2 quart per 600 miles (0.5 liter per 1,000 km). Consumption may be higher within the first 3,000 miles (5,000 km).

Tips

The oil level indicator in the radio or MMI* Display is only an information display. If the oil level is too low, a minimum oil warning appears in the instrument cluster. Add oil ⇨ *page 237*. If the hood has been opened, the current oil level is shown in the instrument cluster the next time the ignition is switched on.

Adding engine oil



Fig. 209 Engine compartment: Oil filler cap location

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 232*.

- ▸ Unscrew the cap to the engine oil filling hole ⇨ *fig. 209*.
- ▸ Carefully top off with the appropriate oil in 0.5 liter doses.
- ▸ Check the oil level again after two minutes ⇨ *page 237*.
- ▸ Top off the oil, if necessary.
- ▸ Screw the cap back on the filling hole.

WARNING

- – While topping off, the oil must not come in contact with hot engine parts - fire hazard!
- – The oil filler cap must be properly secured to prevent oil from being sprayed on the hot engine and exhaust system when the engine is running - fire hazard!
- – If your skin has come in contact with the engine oil, you must subsequently cleanse it thoroughly.

Note

- – Check the oil level using the radio or the MMI*. If the message **Please reduce oil level** appears, contact your authorized Audi dealer or other qualified workshop to have excess oil extracted if necessary.
- – **Audi does not recommend the use of oil additives. They may damage the engine and adversely affect your New Vehicle Warranty.**

For the sake of the environment

– Under no circumstances can the oil come in contact with the sewage network or the soil.
– Observe and follow legal regulations when disposing of empty oil containers.

Changing the engine oil

We recommend that have your oil changed by an authorized Audi dealer or a qualified service station.

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 232*.

The engine oil must be changed according to the intervals specified in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet. This is very important because the lubricating properties of oil diminish gradually during normal vehicle use.

Under some circumstances the engine oil should be changed more frequently. Change oil more often if you drive mostly short distances, operate the vehicle in dusty areas or under predominantly stop-and-go traffic conditions, or have your vehicle where temperatures remain below freezing for extended periods.

Detergent additives in the oil will make fresh oil look dark after the engine has been running for a short time. This is normal and is not a reason to change the oil more often than recommended.

Because of the problem of proper disposal, along with the special tools and necessary expertise required, we strongly recommend that you have your oil changed by an authorized **Audi dealer** or a qualified service station.

If you choose to change your oil yourself, please note the following important information:

WARNING

To reduce the risk of personal injury if you must change the engine oil in your vehicle yourself:
– Wear eye protection.
– To reduce the risk of burns from hot engine oil, let the engine cool down to the touch.
– When removing the oil drain plug with your fingers, stay as far away as possible. Always keep your forearm parallel to the ground to help prevent hot oil from running down your arm.
– Drain the oil into a container designed for this purpose, one large enough to hold at least the total amount of oil in your engine.
– Engine oil is poisonous. Keep it well out of the reach of children.
– Continuous contact with used engine oil is harmful to your skin. Always protect your skin by washing oil off thoroughly with soap and water.

Note

Never mix oil additives with your engine oil. These additives can damage your engine and adversely affect your Audi Limited New Vehicle Warranty.

For the sake of the environment

– Before changing your oil, first make sure you know where you can properly dispose of the used oil.
– Always dispose of used engine oil properly. Do not dump it on garden soil, wooded areas, into open streams or down sewage drains.
– Recycle used engine oil by taking it to a used engine oil collection facility in your area, or contact a service station.

Engine cooling system

Coolant

The engine coolant performs two functions: it keeps the engine from overheating and it protects the engine from freezing in the winter.

The cooling system is sealed and generally requires little attention.

The cooling system has been filled at the factory with a permanent coolant which does not need to be changed. The coolant consists of a mixture of water and the manufacturer's glycol-based coolant additive G12++ antifreeze with anticorrosion additives (50% for USA models; 60% for Canadian models). This mixture both assures the necessary frost protection and protects metal components in the engine's cooling system from corrosion and scaling. It also raises the boiling point of the coolant.

Do not reduce the concentration of the coolant in the summer by adding plain water. **The proportion of coolant additive must be at least 50% but not more than 60%** to maintain antifreeze protection and cooling efficiency. If the coolant frost protection is too low, the coolant could freeze and damage the vehicle heating and engine cooling system.

For year-round driving, antifreeze is added at the factory for temperatures down to:

– - 31°F (- 35°C) USA
– - 40°F (- 40°C) Canada.

You can mix the G12++ coolant additive with other additives (G12+ or G12). Always check with your authorized Audi dealer.

WARNING

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 232*.

Note

– Before winter sets in, have the coolant checked to see if the coolant additive in your vehicle is sufficient to meet the climate conditions. This is especially important if you live in a region where the winter is extremely cold. If necessary, increase the proportion of coolant additive to 60%.
– When adding coolant additive to your cooling system, remember:
  – We recommend using only coolant additive G12++ (check the label) for your vehicle. This coolant additive is available at authorized Audi dealers. Other types of antifreeze can significantly reduce corrosion protection. The resulting corrosion can cause a loss of coolant and serious engine damage.
– Do not add any type of radiator leak sealant to your vehicle's engine coolant. Adding radiator repair fluid may adversely affect the function and performance of your cooling system and could result in damage not covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Checking the engine coolant level

The engine coolant level can be checked with a quick glance.

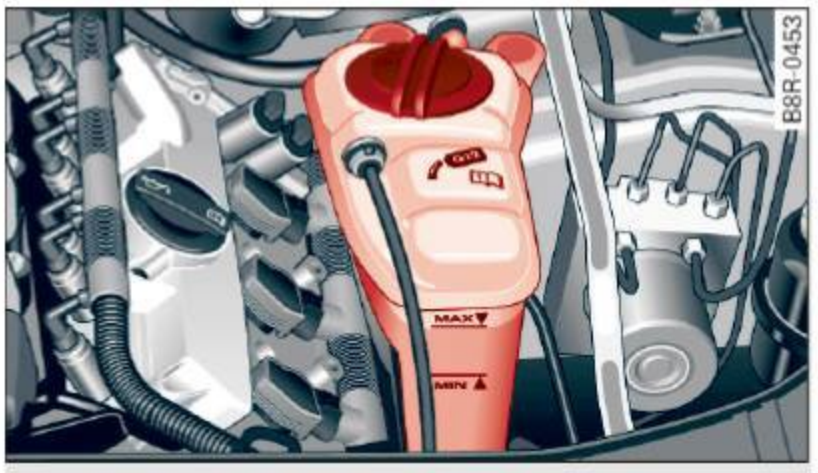


Fig. 210 Engine compartment: Coolant expansion tank

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 232*.

▸ Turn off the ignition.
▸ Read the engine coolant level from the coolant expansion tank ⇨ *fig. 210*. With a cold engine, the coolant level should be between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings. When the ▶

engine is warm, the level may be slightly above the “MAX” marking.

The location of the coolant expansion tank can be seen in the engine compartment illustration ⇨ *page 234*.

To obtain an accurate reading, the engine must be switched off.

The expansion tank in your vehicle is equipped with an electric coolant level sensor.

When the coolant level is too low, the warning light in the Auto-Check System ⇨ *page 30* will blink until you add coolant and the level has been restored to normal. Even though there is an electric coolant level sensor, we still recommend you check the coolant level from time to time.

Coolant loss

Coolant loss may indicate a **leak** in the cooling system. In the event of coolant loss, the cooling system should be inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is not enough merely to add coolant.

In a **sealed** system, losses can occur only if the boiling point of the coolant is exceeded as a result of overheating.

Note

Do not add any type of radiator leak sealant to your vehicle's engine coolant. Adding radiator repair fluid may adversely affect the function and performance of your cooling system and could result in damage not covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Adding coolant

Be very careful when adding engine coolant.

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 232*.

- ▸ Turn off the engine.
- ▸ Let the engine cool down.
- ▸ Place a thick rag over the coolant expansion tank ⇨ *page 239, fig. 210* and **carefully** turn the cap counter-clockwise ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Add coolant.
- ▸ Twist the cap on again *tightly*.

Replacement engine coolant must conform to exact specifications ⇨ *page 239, Coolant*. Even in an emergency, if coolant additive G12++, G12+ or G12 is **not** available, do **not** use a different additive. Use plain water instead until you can get the correct additive and can restore the correct ratio. This should be done as soon as possible.

If you have lost a considerable amount of coolant, then you should add cold antifreeze and cold water only when the engine is cold.

Always use *new* engine coolant when refilling.

Do not fill coolant above the “MAX” mark. Excess coolant will be forced out through the pressure relief valve in the cap when the engine becomes hot.

WARNING

– The cooling system is under pressure and can get very hot. Reduce the risk of scalding from hot coolant by following these steps.
  – Turn off the engine and allow it to cool down.
  – Protect your face, hands and arms from escaping fluid and steam by covering the cap with a large, thick rag.
  – Turn the cap slowly and very carefully in a counter-clockwise direction while applying light, downward pressure on the top of the cap.
  – To avoid being burned, do not spill antifreeze or coolant on the exhaust system or hot engine parts. Under certain conditions, the ethylene glycol in engine coolant can catch fire.
– Antifreeze is poisonous. Always store antifreeze in its original container and well out of the reach of children.

▶

– If you drain the coolant, it must be caught and safely stored in a proper container clearly marked “poison”.

Note

– Coolant pollutes the environment and could cause an engine fire. Excess coolant will be forced out through the pressure relief valve in the cap when the engine becomes hot.
– If, in an emergency, only water can be added, the correct ratio between water and antifreeze ⇨ *page 239* must be restored as soon as possible.

For the sake of the environment

Drained coolant should not be reused. Always dispose of used coolant while observing all environmental regulations.

Radiator fan

The radiator fan switches on automatically by itself.

The radiator fan is driven by the engine via the V-belt. The viscous clutch regulates the speed of the fan according to the temperature of the coolant.

An auxiliary electric radiator fan* switches on and off depending on coolant temperature and other vehicle operating conditions.

After you switch the engine off, the auxiliary fan can continue running for up to 10 minutes - even with the ignition off. It can even switch on again later by itself ⇨ ⚠, if

– the temperature of the engine coolant rises due to the heat build-up from the engine in the engine compartment, or
– the engine compartment heats up because the vehicle is parked in intense sunlight.

WARNING

– To reduce the risk of personal injury never touch the radiator fan.
– The auxiliary electric fan is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly even when the engine is not running.
– The auxiliary radiator fan switches on automatically when the engine coolant reaches a certain temperature and will continue to run until the coolant temperature drops.

Brake fluid

Checking brake fluid level

The brake fluid level can be checked with a quick glance.



Fig. 211 Engine compartment: Brake fluid reservoir

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 232*.

▸ Read the brake fluid level from the brake fluid reservoir ⇨ *fig. 211*. The brake fluid level must be between the “MIN” and “MAX” markings.

The brake fluid reservoir is located at the rear partition of the engine compartment on the left side ⇨ *page 234*.

The fluid level may drop *slightly* after some time due to the automatic adjustment of the brake pads. This is not cause for alarm.

If the brake fluid level falls *considerably* below the “MIN” mark, the brake warning/indicator light (U.S. models: BRAKE, Canadian models: (!)) will come on ⇨ *page 18* and ⇨ *page 30*. Do not continue to operate the vehicle. The complete brake system should be thoroughly checked by an authorized Audi ▶

dealer or qualified workshop and the cause corrected. If the brake fluid level is too low, the brake warning/indicator light will illuminate. Contact an authorized Audi dealer **immediately**.

Changing brake fluid

Have the brake fluid changed by an experienced technician.

Brake fluid absorbs moisture from the air. If the water content in the brake fluid is too high, corrosion in the brake system may result after a period of time. The boiling point of the brake fluid will also decrease considerably and decrease braking performance.

Therefore, the brake fluid must be changed **every two years**. Always use new brake fluid which conforms to Federal Motor Vehicle Standard "FMVSS 116 DOT 4".

The brake fluid reservoir can be difficult to reach, therefore, we recommend that you have the brake fluid changed by your authorized **Audi dealer**. Your dealer has the correct tools, the right brake fluid and the know-how to do this for you.

WARNING

- Brake fluid is poisonous. It must be stored only in the closed original container out of the reach of children!
- Brake failure can result from old or inappropriate brake fluid. Observe these precautions:
  - Use only brake fluid that meets SAE specification J 1703 and conforms to Federal Motor Vehicle Standard 116. Always check with your authorized Audi dealer to make sure you are using the correct brake fluid. The correct type of brake fluid is also indicated on the brake fluid reservoir.
  - The brake fluid must be new. Heavy use of the brakes can cause a vapor lock if the brake fluid is left in the system too long. This can seriously affect the efficiency of the brakes as well as your safety. This could result in an accident.

Note

Brake fluid will damage the paint of your vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Because of the problem of proper disposal of brake fluid as well as the special tools required and the necessary expertise, we recommend that you have the brake fluid changed by your authorized Audi dealer.

Battery

General information

Under **normal** operating conditions, the battery in your Audi does not need any maintenance. With *high* outside temperatures or long daily drives we recommend that you have the electrolyte level checked by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop. The electrolyte level should also be checked each time the battery is charged ⇨ *page 244*.

Have the battery checked when you take your vehicle in for service. You are well advised to replace a battery that is older than 5 years.

With certain types of airbag deployment, the battery is disconnected from the vehicle electrical system for safety reasons ⇨ ⚠ *in Repair, care and disposal of the airbags on page 170*.

Disconnecting the battery terminals

Some vehicle functions (power window regulators, for example) are lost if the battery terminals are disconnected. These functions have to be relearned after the battery terminals are connected again. To prevent this, the battery should only be disconnected from the vehicle electrical system when absolutely necessary for repairs. ▶

Vehicles not driven for long periods

If you do not drive your vehicle over a period of several days or weeks, electrical components are gradually cut back or switched off. This reduces energy consumption and maintains starting capability over a longer period ⇨ *page 203*.

Take into consideration that when you unlock your vehicle, some convenience functions, such as the master key remote function or power seat adjustment, may not be available. The convenience functions will be available again when you turn on the ignition and start the engine.

Winter operation

During the winter months, battery capacity tends to decrease as temperatures drop. This is because more power is also consumed while starting, and the headlights, rear window defogger, etc., are used more often.

Avoid unnecessary power consumption, particularly in city traffic or when traveling only short distances. Let your authorized Audi dealer check the capacity of the vehicle battery before winter sets in ⇨ *page 244*. A well charged battery will not only prevent starting problems when the weather is cold, but will also last longer.

Tips

If your vehicle is left standing for several weeks at extremely low temperatures, the vehicle battery should be removed and stored where it will not freeze. This will prevent it from being damaged and having to be replaced.

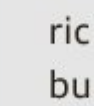
Working on the battery

Be especially careful when working on or near the battery.

The battery is located in the luggage compartment under the floor. Before you check anything in the luggage compartment, **read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ ⚠.

Always heed the **safety warnings**, when working on the vehicle battery or the vehicle electrical system to prevent injury.

The following WARNINGS are very important when working on the battery:

Always heed the following WARNING SYMBOLS and safety precautions when working on the battery.	
	**Always wear eye protection.**
	Battery acid contains sulfuric acid. Always wear gloves and eye protection.
	No - sparks - flames - smoking.
	When a battery is charged, it produces hydrogen gas which is explosive and could cause personal injury.
	**Always keep the battery well out of reach of children.**

WARNING

Whenever working on the battery or on the electrical system, there is the risk of injury, accident and even fire. Read and heed the following WARNINGS:

- Always wear eye protection. Do not let battery acid or any lead particles get on your skin or clothing. Shield your eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness or other injury.
- Battery acid contains sulfuric acid. Sulfuric acid can cause blindness and severe burns.
  - Always wear gloves and eye protection. Do not tilt the battery because acid could leak out of the ventilation openings.
  - If you get battery acid in your eyes or on your skin, immediately rinse with cold water for several minutes and get medical attention.
  - If you should ingest any battery acid, seek medical attention immediately. ▶

- Do not expose the battery to an open flame, electric sparks or an open light.
- Do not smoke.
- Do not interchange the positive and negative cables.
- When working on the battery, be sure not to short-circuit the terminals with tools or other metal objects. This would cause the battery to heat up very quickly, which could lead to damage or explosion and personal injury.
- When a battery is charged, it produces hydrogen gas which is explosive and could cause personal injury.
- Always keep the battery well out of the reach of children.
- Before work is done on the electrical system, disconnect the negative ground cable.
- Before performing any work on the electrical system, switch off the engine and ignition as well as any electrical equipment. The negative cable on the battery must be disconnected. If you are just going to replace a light bulb, then it is enough to switch off the lights.
- Before disconnecting the battery, switch off the anti-theft alarm system! Otherwise you will set off the alarm.
- When disconnecting the battery, first disconnect the negative cable and then the positive cable.
- Before reconnecting the battery, make sure all electrical consumers are switched off. Reconnect the positive cable first and then the negative cable. Never interchange the cables - this could start a fire!
- Never charge a frozen or a thawed-out battery. It could explode! If a battery has frozen, then it must be replaced. A discharged battery can freeze over at 32°F (0°C).
- Make sure the vent hose is always attached to the opening on the side of the battery.
- Never use batteries which are damaged. There is the danger of an explosion! Always replace a damaged battery.

WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning:

- Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive problems. Wash hands after handling.

Note

- Do not disconnect the vehicle battery when the ignition is switched on or when the engine is running, otherwise, you will damage electronic components in the electrical system.
- If your vehicle is going to stand for a long period of time without being driven, protect the battery from “freezing”, otherwise it will be damaged and will then have to be replaced.

Battery charging

Starting the engine requires a well charged battery.

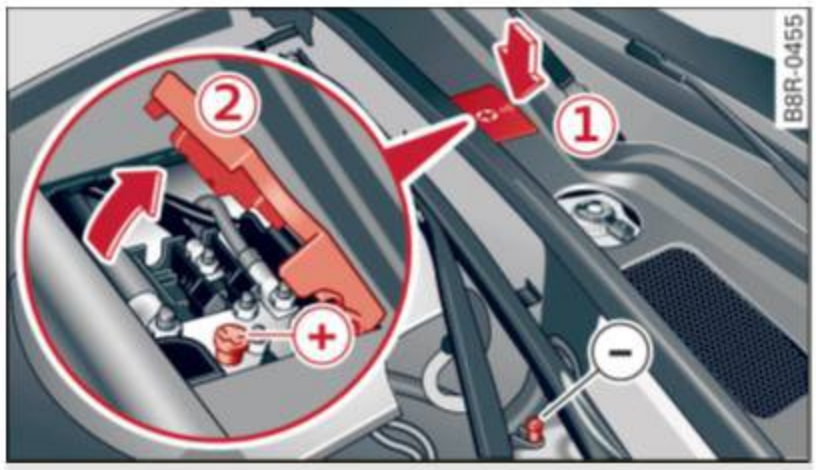


Fig. 212 Engine compartment: Connectors for charger and jumper cables

Always read and heed all WARNINGS below ⇨ ⚠ and ⇨ ⚠ *in Working on the battery on page 243*.

- ▸ Turn off the ignition and all electrical consumers.
- ▸ Make sure the area is well ventilated when you charge the battery.
- ▸ Open the engine hood ⇨ *page 232*.
- ▸ Remove the cover (1) by pressing on the arrow ⇨ *fig. 212*.

▶

- ▸ Open the cover ② on the positive terminal.
- ▸ Connect the charger connectors according to the instructions to the **jump start bolts**. (Bolts under the cover = “positive”, Bolts with hex head = “negative”).
- ▸ Only now plug the mains lead for the charging equipment into the wall outlet and turn it on ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ **Make sure the charging rate is not over 30 amps/14.8 Volt.**
- ▸ When the battery is fully charged: Turn the charging equipment off and remove the mains lead from the wall outlet.
- ▸ Now remove the clamps for the charging equipment.
- ▸ Close the cover ② on the positive terminal and re-install the cover ①.
- ▸ Close the hood ⇨ *page 232*.

A discharged battery can **freeze** at temperatures of only 32 °F (0 °C). Allow a frozen battery to thaw completely before attempting to charge it ⇨ ⚠. However, we recommend not using a thawed battery again because the battery casing can be cracked due to ice formation and can leak battery acid.

Battery charging (Maximum charging rate of 30 amps/14.8 Volt)

When charging at *low* voltages (e.g. with a **trickle charger**), the battery cables do not have to be disconnected first. The battery caps should *not* be opened when charging a battery.

It is not necessary to remove the battery from the luggage compartment.

Fast charging the battery (charging rate above 14.8 Volts)

For technical reasons do not use a battery charger that uses voltage greater than 14.8 Volts to charge your vehicle's battery.

⚠ WARNING

Charging a battery can be dangerous.

– Always follow the operating instructions provided by the battery charger manufacturer when charging your battery.
– Never charge a frozen battery. It may explode because of gas trapped in the ice. Allow a frozen battery to thaw out first.
– Do not reuse batteries which were frozen. The battery housing may have cracked and weakened when the battery froze.
– Charge the battery in a well ventilated area. Keep away from open flame or electrical spark. Do not smoke. Hydrogen gas generated by the battery is explosive.
– To reduce the danger of explosion, never connect or disconnect charger cables while the charger is operating.
– Fast charging a battery is dangerous and should only be attempted by a competent technician with the proper equipment.
– Battery acid that may spill during charging should be washed off with a solution of warm water and baking soda to neutralize the acid.

! Note

Never use a fast charger as a booster to start the engine. This will seriously damage sensitive electronic components, such as control units, relays, radio, etc., as well as the battery charger.

Battery replacement

The new battery must have the same specifications and dimensions as the original equipment battery.

Intelligent energy management in your vehicle is responsible for distributing the electrical energy throughout your vehicle ⇨ *page 203*. The intelligent energy management system will keep the engine battery charged better then vehicles without this system. To make sure the additional electrical energy is available once again after you have changed the battery, we recommend that you install batteries of the same type and manufacture only (the same as those installed at the time your vehicle was delivered). ▶

Specifications are listed on the battery housing. Your authorized dealer must code the battery in the energy management system to enable you to use the energy management functions correctly after replacing the battery.

If it is not possible to use a battery of this type, the new battery must have the same capacity, voltage (12 volts), amperage, construction and plug sealing.

When installing the battery, make sure the ignition and all electrical consumers are turned off.

Note

Make sure the ventilation hose on the side of the battery is connected, otherwise fumes or battery acid can leak out.

For the sake of the environment

Because of the problem of proper disposal of a battery, we recommend your authorized Audi dealer change the battery for you. Batteries contain sulfuric acid and lead and must always be disposed of properly in compliance with all environmental regulations. Disposing of vehicle batteries improperly is very dangerous to the environment.

Windshield/headlight washer container

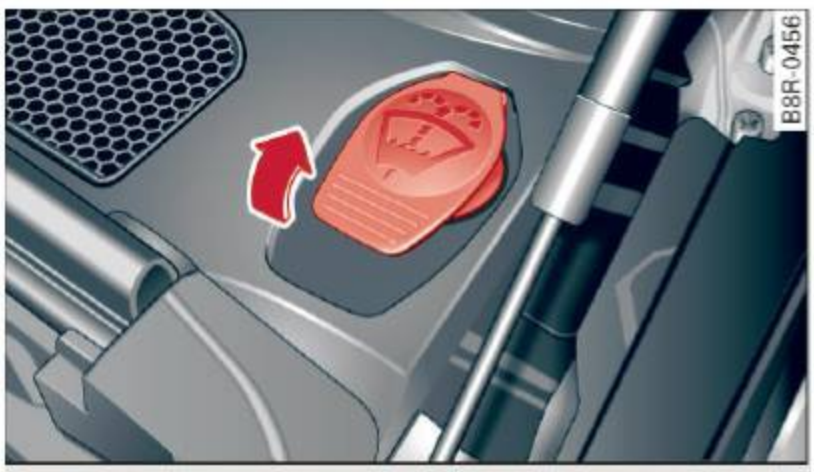


Fig. 213 Engine compartment: Windshield and headlight* washer fluid container

The washer fluid container is marked with the symbol on its cap.

- Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 232*.
- Lift the filler cap tongue to add washer fluid. You can fill the container to the top.
- Press the cap back onto the filler neck after filling the container.

You can find the reservoir **capacity** in the table in ⇨ *page 289*.

Clean water should be used when filling up. If possible, use soft water to prevent scaling on the washer jets. Always add a glass cleaner solution (with frost protection in the winter).

Note

Do not mix engine coolant antifreeze or any other additives to fill up the windshield washer reservoir.

Tires and wheels

Tires

General notes

Tires may be the least appreciated and most abused parts of a motor vehicle.

Tires may be the least appreciated and most abused parts of a motor vehicle. Tires are, however, one of the most important parts of a vehicle, particularly considering the comparatively small patch of rubber on each tire that assures that all-important contact between you, your vehicle and the road.

Maintaining the correct tire pressure, making sure that your vehicle and its tires do not have to carry more weight than they can safely handle, avoiding damage from road hazards and regularly inspecting tires for damage including cuts, slashes irregular wear and overall condition are the most important things that you can do to help avoid sudden tire failure including tread separation and blowouts.

Avoiding damage

If you have to drive over a curb or similar obstacle, drive very slowly and as close as possible at a right angle to the curb.

Always keep chemicals including grease, oil, gasoline and brake fluid off the tires.

Inspect the tires regularly for damage (cuts, cracks or blisters, etc.). Remove any foreign bodies embedded in the treads.

Storing tires

Mark tires when you remove them to indicate the direction of rotation. This ensures you to be able to mount them correctly when you reinstall them.

When removed, the wheels or tires should be stored in a cool, dry and preferably dark place.

Store tires in a vertical position if they are not mounted on rims, in a horizontal position if they are mounted on rims.

New tires

New tires have to be broken in ⇨ ⚠.

The tread depth of new tires may vary, according to the type and make of tire and the tread pattern.

Hidden damage

Damage to tires and rims is often not readily visible. If you notice unusual vibration or the vehicle pulls to one side, this may indicate that one of the tires has been damaged. The tires must be checked immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.

Unidirectional tires

A unidirectional tire can be identified by arrows on the sidewall, that point in the direction the tire is designed to rotate. You must follow the specified direction of rotation. This is necessary so that these tires can develop their optimum characteristics regarding grip, road noise, wear and hydroplaning resistance. For more information ⇨ *page 275*.

⚠ WARNING

New tires or tires that are old, worn or damaged cannot provide maximum control and braking ability.

- New tires tend to be slippery and must also be broken-in. To reduce the risk of losing control, a collision and serious personal injuries, drive with special care for the first 350 miles (560 km).
- Driving with worn or damaged tires can lead to loss of control, sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation, crashes and serious personal injuries. Have worn or damaged tires replaced immediately.
- Tires age even if they are not being used and can fail suddenly, especially at high speeds. Tires that are more than 6 years old can only be used in an emergency and then with special care and at low speed.

▶

– Never mount used tires on your vehicle if you are not sure of their "previous history." Old used tires may have been damaged even though the damage cannot be seen that can lead to sudden tire failure and loss of vehicle control.

– If you notice unusual vibration or if the vehicle pulls to one side when driving, always stop as soon as it is safe to do so and check the wheels and tires for damage.

Glossary of tire and loading terminology

Accessory weight

means the combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio, and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not).

Aspect ratio

means the ratio of the height to the width of the tire in percent. Numbers of 55 or lower indicate a low sidewall for improved steering response and better overall handling on dry pavement.

Bead

means the part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim.

Bead separation

means a breakdown of the bond between components in the bead.

Cord

means the strands forming the plies in the tire.

Cold tire inflation pressure

means the tire pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for a tire of a designated size that has not been driven for more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speeds in the three hour period before the tire pressure is measured or adjusted.

Curb weight

means the weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, air conditioning and additional weight of optional equipment.

Extra load tire

means a tire design to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Extra load tires may be identified as "XL", "xl", "EXTRA LOAD", or "RF" on the sidewall.

Gross Axle Weight Rating ("GAWR")

means the load-carrying capacity of a single axle system, measured at the tire-ground interfaces.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating ("GVWR")

means the maximum total loaded weight of the vehicle.

Groove

means the space between two adjacent tread ribs.

Load rating (code)

means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

Maximum load rating

means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

▶

Maximum loaded vehicle weight

means the sum of:

(a) Curb weight
(b) Accessory weight
(c) Vehicle capacity weight, and
(d) Production options weight

Maximum (permissible) inflation pressure

means the maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated. Also called "maximum inflation pressure."

Normal occupant weight

means 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the number of occupants seated in the vehicle up to the total seating capacity of your vehicle.

Occupant distribution

means distribution of occupants in a vehicle.

Outer diameter

means the overall diameter of an inflated new tire.

Overall width

means the linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including elevations due to labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs.

Ply

means a layer of rubber-coated parallel cords.

Production options weight

means the combined weight of those installed regular production options weighing over 5 lbs. (2.3 kg) in excess of those standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim.

Radial ply tire

means a pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Recommended inflation pressure

see ⇨ *page 248, Cold tire inflation pressure*.

Reinforced tire

means a tire design to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Reinforced tires may be identified as "XL", "xl", "EXTRA LOAD", or "RF" on the sidewall.

Rim

means a metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

Rim diameter

means nominal diameter of the bead seat. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new rim diameter.

Rim size designation

means rim diameter and width.

Rim width

means nominal distance between rim flanges.

Sidewall

means that portion of a tire between the tread and bead.

Speed rating (letter code)

means the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time. The ratings range from 93 mph (150 km/h) to 186 mph (298 km/h) ⇨ *page 259*. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

The speed rating letter code, where applicable, is molded on the tire sidewall and indicates the maximum permissible road speeds ⇨ ⚠ *in Winter tires on page 263*.

Tire pressure monitoring system*

means a system that detects when one or more of a vehicle's tires are underinflated and illuminates a low tire pressure warning telltale. ▶

Tread

means that portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

Tread separation

means pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass.

Treadwear indicators (TWI)

means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread. See ⇨ *page 257, Tread Wear Indicator (TWI)* for more information on measuring tire wear.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

is a tire information system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) that is designed to help buyers make relative comparisons among tires. The UTQG is not a safety rating and not a guarantee that a tire will last for a prescribed number of miles (kilometers) or perform in a certain way. It simply gives tire buyers additional information to combine with other considerations, such as price, brand loyalty and dealer recommendations. Under UTQG, tires are graded by the tire manufacturers in three areas: treadwear, traction, and temperature resistance. The UTQG information on the tires, molded into the sidewalls.

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

This is the tire's "serial number". It begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters indicate the plant where it was manufactured, and the last four numbers represent the week and year of manufacture. For example,

DOT ... 2210 ...

means that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of 2010. The other numbers are marketing codes that may or may not be used by the tire manufacturer. This information is used to contact consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Vehicle capacity weight

means the rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the vehicle's total seating capacity as listed on the label located on the driver's side B-pillar.

Vehicle maximum load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight and dividing by two.

Vehicle normal load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with table below ⇨ *page 250*) and dividing by two.

Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

Designated seating capacity, number of occupants	Vehicle normal load, number of occupants	Occupant distribution in a normally loaded vehicle
5	3	2 in front, 1 in back seat

Cold tire inflation pressure

Tire pressure affects the overall handling, performance and safety of a vehicle.



Fig. 214 Tire pressure label: located on driver's side B-pillar

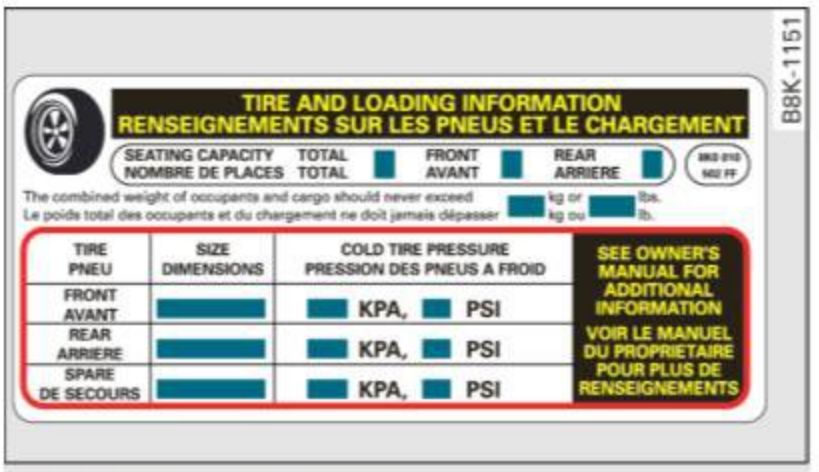


Fig. 215 Tire pressure label

Tire pressure generally refers to the amount of air in a tire that it needs it to do its job and safely carry the combined load of the entire vehicle and its contents. Tire pressure is measured in kilopascals (kPa), the international measuring unit and in pounds per square inch (PSI). Tire pressure is based in part on the vehicle's design and load limit – the greatest amount of weight that the vehicle can carry safely and the tire size. The proper tire pressure is frequently referred to as the "recommended cold tire inflation pressure." Air in the tires expands when the tire heats up because of internal friction when it flexes in use. The tire pressure is higher when the tire has warmed up than when it is "cold." It is the inflation pressure in a "cold" tire that counts. Therefore, you should never let air out of a warm tire to match "cold tire inflation pressure" recommendations. The tires would then be underinflated and could fail suddenly.

Maintaining proper tire pressure is one of the most important things you can do to help avoid sudden tire failure. Underinflated tires are a major cause of sudden tire failure. Keeping tires at the right pressure is also important for safe and responsive vehicle handling, traction, braking and load carrying. **Tire pressures are particularly important when the vehicle is being driven at higher speeds, and then especially when heavily loaded even within the permissible load-carrying capacities approved for your vehicle.**

The recommended tire pressures for your Audi depend on the kind of tires on your vehicle and the number of passengers and/or amount of luggage you will be transporting.

The tire pressure label is located on the driver's side B-pillar. The tire pressure label lists the recommended cold tire inflation pressures for the vehicle at its maximum capacity weight and tires that were on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured.

If you wish to improve comfort when operating the vehicle at normal load (up to 3 occupants), you can adjust tire pressures to those specified for normal vehicle load. Before operating the vehicle at maximum load, you must increase the tire pressures to those specified for maximum vehicle load ⇨ ⚠.

Bear in mind that the tire pressure monitoring system* can only monitor the tire pressures you have stored. The system does not recognize the load condition of your vehicle.

The effectiveness of the tire pressure monitoring system* will be impaired if you store normal load pressures but then operate the vehicle at its maximum load ⇨ ⚠.

See the illustration ⇨ *fig. 214* for the location of the label on driver's side B-pillar (color of the actual label and exact location on the vehicle will vary slightly).

Note that the following table is accurate at the time of going to press and is subject to ▶

change. In the event of discrepancies, the tire pressure label located on the driver's side B-pillar always takes precedence.

The table below lists the recommended cold tire inflation pressures for the Audi model covered by your Owner's Literature at the vehicle's capacity weight and the tire sizes installed on the respective models as original equipment, or as a factory option.

Engine (displacement in liter)	Tire designation	Tire pressure front				Tire pressure rear			
		normal load condition (up to 3 occupants)		full load condition		normal load condition (up to 3 occupants)		full load condition	
		PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA
4-cylinder 2.0 and 6-cylinder 3.2	235/60 R18 103H All Season	29	200	32	220	29	200	32	220
	235/55 R19 101H All Season	30	210	33	230	30	210	33	230
	255/45 R20 101W High Performance	29	200	33	230	29	200	33	230
	255/40 R21 102Y High Performance	35	240	36	250	36	250	39	270
XL = reinforced or extra load tire. It may also appear as xl, EXTRA LOAD, or RF on the tire sidewall.									

The correct tire pressure for the *spare wheel* is located on a label on the driver's side B-pillar.

Because technical changes may be made to vehicle equipment during the model year, always compare the tire size designation on the tire pressure label on your vehicle with the tires on your vehicle. Make sure that the tire size information on the vehicle label is the same as the size of the tires on the vehicle. This is especially important if the vehicle belongs to someone else or you bought the vehicle with different rims/tires or you bought the vehicle as a previously owned vehicle.

Remember, your safety and that of your passengers also depends on making sure that load limits are not exceeded. Vehicle load includes everybody and everything in and on the vehicle. These load limits are technically referred to as the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating ("GVWR"). The Gross Axle Weight Rating ("GAWR") is the maximum load that can be applied at each of the vehicle's two axles. The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and the Gross Axle Weight Rating are listed on the safety compliance sticker label located on the driver's side B-pillar. The tire pressure label on your Audi lists the maximum combined weight of all of the occupants and luggage or other cargo that the vehicle can carry. For the location of the tire pressure label ⇨ *fig. 214*.

WARNING

Overloading a vehicle can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, serious personal injury, and even death.

- Carrying more weight than your vehicle was designed to carry will prevent the vehicle from handling properly and increase the risk of a loss of vehicle control.
- The brakes on a vehicle that has been overloaded may not be able to stop the vehicle within a safe distance.
- Tires on a vehicle that has been overloaded can fail suddenly causing loss of control and a crash.
- Always make sure that the total load being transported – including the weight of ▶

a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of a loaded trailer – does not make the vehicle heavier than the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

WARNING

- Incorrect tire pressures and/or underinflation can lead to a serious or fatal accident.
- Incorrect tire pressures and/or underinflation cause increased tire wear and can affect the handling of the vehicle.
- Incorrect tire pressures and/or underinflation can also lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of vehicle control.

Checking tire pressure

The correct tire pressure for the tires originally installed on your vehicle is listed on the tire pressure label located on driver's side B-pillar.

The recommended tire pressures are on the tire pressure label and in the table ⇨ *page 251, Cold tire inflation pressure*.This means that the pressure must be checked and adjusted when the tire has not been driven for more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speeds during the previous three hours. Air in the tires expands when the tire heats up as a result of internal friction as it flexes in use. The tire pressure is higher when the tire has warmed up than when it is "cold."

It is the inflation pressure in a "cold" tire that counts. Therefore, you should never let air out of a warm tire to match "Cold tire inflation pressure" recommendations ⇨ *page 251*. The tires would then be underinflated and could fail suddenly.

The tire pressure label on your Audi lists the recommended cold tire inflation pressures at maximum capacity for the new, original equipment tires that were on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured. For the location of the label ⇨ *page 251, fig. 214*.

Most tires lose air naturally over time. They can also lose some air if you drive over a pothole or hit a curb while parking. It is usually not possible to see whether the radial tires used today are underinflated just by looking at them.

Therefore, be sure to check tire pressures at least once a month and always before going on a long trip. Make sure to take the number of people and the amount of luggage into account when adjusting tire pressure for a trip – even one that you would not consider to be "long." See ⇨ *page 255, Tires and vehicle load limits* for more important information.

Always use an accurate tire pressure gauge when checking and adjusting inflation pressures. Check all of the tires and be sure not to forget the spare tire. If the pressure in any tire is too high when the tire is "cold," let air out of the tire slowly with the edge of the tire gauge and keep checking the pressure until you reach the pressure that is correct for the load (passengers and luggage) and kind of driving you plan to do.

If the pressure in any tire is too low, note the difference between the pressure in the cold tire and the pressure you need and add the air that you need to reach the correct pressure for the vehicle load (passengers and luggage) for the tires on your vehicle as listed on the on your vehicle and in this manual and the kind of driving you plan to do.

Never exceed the maximum inflation pressure listed on the tire sidewall for any reason.

Remember that the vehicle manufacturer, not the tire manufacturer, determines the correct tire pressure for the tires on your vehicle.

It is important to check the tire pressure when the tires are cold.

- Read the required tire pressure from the tire pressure label. The tire pressure label is located on the driver's side B-pillar. The tire pressure label lists the recommended cold tire inflation pressures for the vehicle at its ▶

maximum capacity weight and the tires that were on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured. For recommended tire pressures for normal load conditions, please see chapter ⇨ *page 251*.

– Turn the valve stem cap counter-clockwise to remove it from the tire valve.
– Place the air pressure gauge on the valve.
– The tire pressures should only be checked and adjusted when the tires are cold. The slightly raised pressures of warm tires must not be reduced.
– Adjust the tire pressure to the load you are carrying.
– Reinstall the valve stem cap on the valve.

When should I check the tire pressure?

The correct tire pressure is especially important at high speeds. The pressure should therefore be checked at least once a month and always before starting a journey. Do not forget to check the tire pressure for the spare wheel.

When should I adjust the tire pressures?

Adjust the tire pressure to the load you are carrying. After changing a wheel **or** replacing wheels you have to adjust the tire pressures on all wheels. In addition, you must then store the new tire pressures in the tire pressure monitoring system* ⇨ *page 267*.

WARNING

Incorrect tire pressures and/or underinflation can lead sudden tire failure, loss of control, collision, serious personal injury or even death.

– When the warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster, stop and inspect the tires.
– Incorrect tire pressure and/or underinflation can cause increased tire wear and can affect the handling of the vehicle and stopping ability.
– Incorrect tire pressures and/or underinflation can also lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of vehicle control.
– The driver is responsible for the correct tire pressures for all tires on the vehicle. The applicable pressure values are located on a sticker on the driver's side B-pillar.
– Only when all tires on the vehicle are filled to the correct pressure, the tire pressure monitoring system* can work correctly.
– The use of incorrect tire pressure values can lead to accidents or other damage. Therefore it is essential that the driver observe the specified tire pressure values for the tires and the correct pressures for the function of the tire pressure monitoring system*.
– Always inflate tires to the recommended and correct tire pressure before driving off.
– Driving with underinflated tires bend more, letting them get too hot resulting in tread separation, sudden tire failure and loss of control.
– Excessive speed and/overloading can cause heat build-up, sudden tire failure and loss of control.
– If the tire pressure is too low or too high, the tires will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well.
– If the tire is not flat and you do not have to change a wheel immediately, drive at reduced speed to the nearest service station to check the tire pressure and add air as required.

Note

Driving without valve stem caps can cause damage to the tire valves. To prevent this, always make sure that factory installed valve stem caps on all wheels are securely mounted on the valve.

For the sake of the environment

Underinflated tires will also increase the fuel consumption.

Tires and vehicle load limits

There are limits to the amount of load or weight that any vehicle and any tire can carry. A vehicle that is overloaded will not handle well and is more difficult to stop. Overloading can not only lead to loss of vehicle control, but can also damage important parts of the vehicle and can lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation that can cause the vehicle to crash.

Your safety and that of your passengers also depends on making sure that load limits are not exceeded. Vehicle load includes everybody and everything in and on the vehicle. These load limits are technically referred to as the vehicle's **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating** ("GVWR").

The "GVWR" includes the weight of the basic vehicle, all factory installed accessories, a full tank of fuel, oil, coolant and other fluids plus maximum load. The maximum load includes the number of passengers that the vehicle is intended to carry ("seating capacity") with an assumed weight of 150 lbs (68 kg) for each passenger at a designated seating position and the total weight of any luggage in the vehicle. If you tow a trailer, the weight of the trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer must be included as part of the vehicle load.

The **Gross Axle Weight Rating** ("GAWR") is the maximum load that can be applied at each of the vehicle's two axles.

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and the Gross Axle Weight Rating are listed on the safety compliance sticker label located on the driver's side B-pillar. Your Audi has 5 seating positions, 2 in the front and 3 in the rear for total seating capacity of 5. Each seating position has a seat belt ⇨ *page 148, Safety belts*.

The fact that there is an upper limit to your vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating means that the total weight of whatever is being carried in the vehicle (including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer) is limited. The more passengers in the vehicle or passengers who are heavier than the standard weights assumed mean that less weight can be carried as luggage.

The tire pressure label on your Audi also lists the maximum combined weight of all of the occupants and luggage or other cargo that the vehicle can carry. For the location of the label ⇨ *page 251, fig. 214*.

WARNING

Overloading a vehicle can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, serious personal injury, and even death.

- Carrying more weight than your vehicle was designed to carry will prevent the vehicle from handling properly and increase the risk of the loss of vehicle control.
- The brakes on a vehicle that has been overloaded may not be able to stop the vehicle within a safe distance.
- Tires on a vehicle that has been overloaded can fail suddenly, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of control and a crash.
- Always make sure that the total load being transported – including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of a loaded trailer – does not make the vehicle heavier than the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

Determining correct load limit

Use the example below to calculate the total weight of the passengers and luggage or other things that you plan to transport so that you can make sure that your vehicle will not be overloaded. ▶

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement "THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX KG OR XXX LBS" on your vehicle's placard (tire inflation pressure label) ⇨ *page 251, fig. 214*.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from "XXX" kilograms or "XXX" pounds shown on the sticker ⇨ *page 251, fig. 214*.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lbs. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

▶Check the tire sidewall (⇨ *page 258, fig. 218*) to determine the designated load rating for a specific tire.

Tire service life

The service life of tires depends on a lot of different things including proper installation and balancing, correct tire pressure and driving style.



Fig. 216 Tire tread: tread wear indicators (TWI)

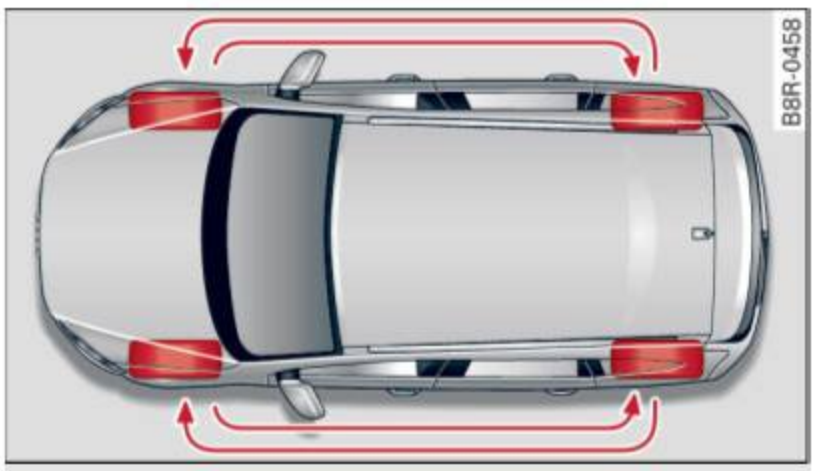


Fig. 217 Rotating tires for more even wear

Tread Wear Indicator (TWI)

The original tires on your vehicle have 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) high “wear indicators” ⇨ *fig. 216* running across the tread. Depending on the make, there will be six to eight of them evenly placed around the tire. Marks on the tire sidewall (for example “TWI” or other symbols) indicate the positions of the tread wear indicators. Worn tires must be replaced. Different figures may apply in other countries ⇨ ⚠.

Tire pressure

Incorrect tire pressure causes premature wear and can cause sudden tire blow-out. For this reason, tire pressure must be checked at least once a month ⇨ *page 253*.

Driving style

Driving fast around curves, heavy acceleration and hard braking increase tire wear.

Rotating tires for more even wear

For all four tires on your vehicle to have the same service life, we recommend that the front and rear tires are rotated according to the tire manufacturer's suggested tire rotation intervals. Please remember the following:

– Tire rotation intervals may differ from the vehicle service intervals outlined in your Maintenance and Warranty Booklet.
– The longer one tire is used in one location on the vehicle, the more it wears at certain points; therefore, we recommend that you follow the tire manufacturer's suggested tire rotation intervals.
– Vehicles with front-wheel drive experience more tread wear on the front wheels compared to all-wheel drive (quattro®).
– Please rotate tires as shown ⇨ *fig. 217*.
– Extra care must be taken when rotating direction-specific tires ⇨ *page 275*.

Wheel balancing

The wheels on new vehicles are balanced. However, various situations during everyday driving can cause them to become unbalanced, resulting in vibrations you can usually feel through the steering wheel.

Unbalanced wheels must be rebalanced to avoid excessive wear on steering, suspension and tires. A wheel must also be rebalanced when a new tire is installed.

Incorrect wheel alignment

Incorrect wheel alignment can cause excessive tire wear, impairing the safety of the vehicle. If tires show excessive wear, have the wheel alignment checked by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.

All wheel drive

Vehicles with quattro® must always have tires of the same size, construction and tread type. For details see ⇨ *page 203*. ▶

WARNING

Sudden tire failure can lead to loss of control, a crash and serious personal injury!

- Never drive a vehicle when the tread on any tire is worn down to the wear indicators.
- Worn tires are a safety hazard, they do not grip well on wet roads and increase your risk of "hydroplaning" and loss of control.
- Always keep chemicals that can cause tire damage, such as grease, oil, gasoline and brake fluid away from tires.
- Tires age even if they are not being used and can fail suddenly, especially at high speeds. Tires that are more than 6 years old can only be used in an emergency and then with special care and at lower speeds.
- Never mount used tires on your vehicle if you are not sure of their "previous history." Old used tires may have been damaged even though the damage cannot be seen that can lead to sudden tire failure and loss of vehicle control.

New tires and replacing tires and wheels

New tires and wheels have to be broken in.

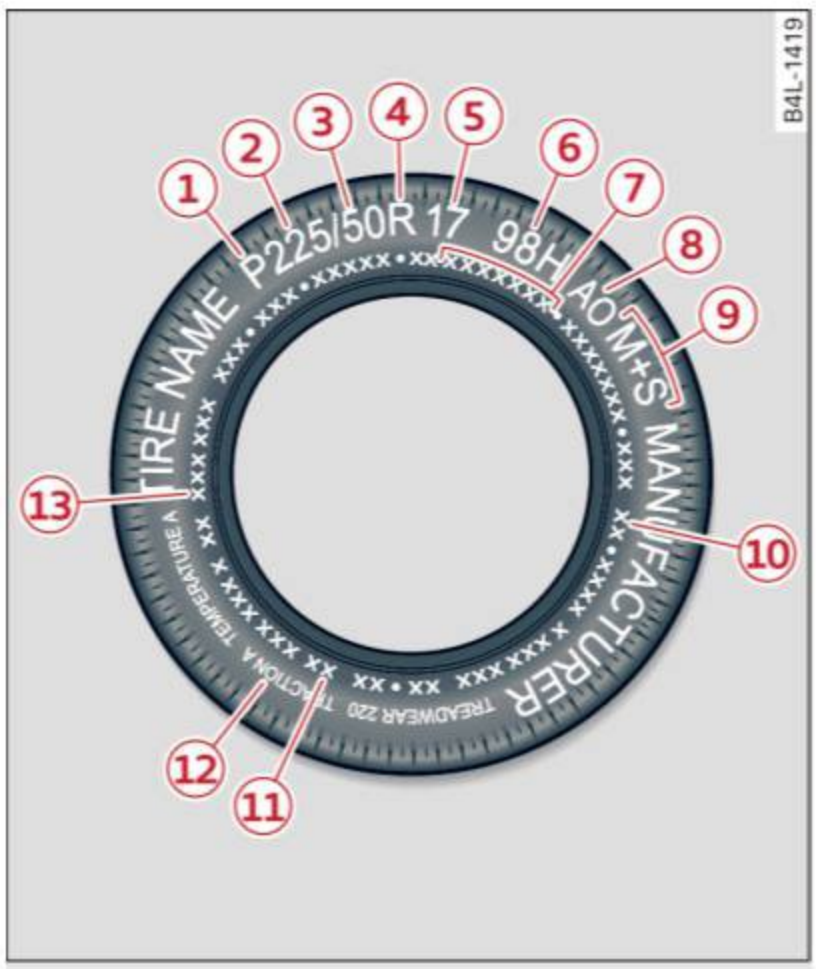


Fig. 218 Tire specification codes on the sidewall of a tire

No.	Description
①	Passenger car tire (where applicable)
②	Nominal width of tire in millimeters
③	Ratio of height to width (aspect ratio)
④	Radial
⑤	Rim diameter code
⑥	Load index and speed rating
⑦	U.S. DOT tire identification number
⑧	Audi Original tire
⑨	Sever snow conditions
⑩	Tire ply composition and materials used
⑪	Maximum load rating
⑫	Treadwear, traction and temperature grades
⑬	Maximum permissible inflation pressure

The tires and rims are essential parts of the vehicle's design. The tires and rims approved by Audi are specially matched to the characteristics of the vehicle and can make a major ▶

contribution to good road holding and safe handling when in good condition and properly inflated ⇨ ⚠.

We recommend that all work on tires and wheels be performed by an authorized Audi dealer. They are familiar with recommended procedures and have the necessary special tools and spare parts as well as the proper facilities for disposing of the old tires.

Authorized Audi dealers have the necessary information about technical requirements for installing or changing tires and rims.

Replacing tires and wheels

Tires should be replaced at least in pairs and not individually (for example both front tires or both rear tires together).

Be sure to read and heed the information to the tire pressure monitoring system* ⇨ *page 265*.

Always buy replacement radial tires that have the same specifications as the tires approved for your vehicle by Audi. Replacement tires must always have the same load rating specification as the original equipment or approved optional tires listed in the table ⇨ *page 251*.

Audi-approved specification tires are specially matched to your vehicle and its load limits, and can contribute to the important roadholding, driving characteristics, and safety of the vehicle. The table (⇨ *page 251*) lists specifications of the tires approved for the Audi models covered by your Owner's Literature.

The tire pressure label located on the driver's side B-pillar ⇨ *page 251, fig. 215* lists the specifications of the original equipment tires installed on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured.

Federal law requires tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires ⇨ *fig. 218*. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics, the quality grade of the tire and also provides a tire identification number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

Tire specifications

Knowledge of tire specifications makes it easier to choose the correct tires. Radial tires have the tire specifications marked on the sidewall, for example:

P235 / 60 R 18 103 H

This contains the following information:

P Indicates the tire is for passenger cars (where applicable)

235 Nominal tire width in mm of the tire from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire

60 Height/width ratio in percent (aspect ratio)

R Tire construction: **R**adial

18 Rim diameter code (in inches)

103 Load rating code

H Speed rating letter code

XL (or "xl", "EXTRA LOAD", or "RF" Indicates that the tire is a "Reinforced" or an "Extra Load" tire

M+S (or "M/S") Indicates that the tire has some mud and snow capability

The tires could also have the information of direction of rotation ⇨ *page 247*.

Tire manufacturing date

The manufacturing date is also indicated on the tire sidewall (possibly only on the *inner* side of the wheel):

"DOT ... 2210..." means, for example, that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of 2010.

Speed rating (letter code)

The speed rating letter code on the wheels indicates the maximum permissible road speeds ⇨ ⚠ *in Winter tires on page 263*.

P up to 93 mph (150 km/h)
Q up to 99 mph (158 km/h)
R up to 106 mph (170 km/h)
S up to 110 mph (180 km/h) ▶

T up to 118 mph (190 km/h)
U up to 124 mph (200 km/h)
H up to 130 mph (210 km/h)
V up to 149 mph (240 km/h)[1)]
Z over 149 mph (240 km/h)[1)]
W up to 168 mph (270 km/h)[1)]
Y up to 186 mph (298 km/h)[1)]

Your vehicle is normally factory equipped with tires, which possess excellent driving characteristics and give your Audi optimum driving comfort. An electronic speed limiter ⇨ *page 26* will normally prevent your vehicle from going faster than the tire speed rating ⇨ ⚠.

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN) and tire manufacture date

This is the tire's "serial number". It begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters indicate the plant where it was manufactured, and the last four numbers represent the week and year of manufacture. For example, the numbers 2210 mean that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of 2010. The other numbers are marketing codes that may or may not be used by the tire manufacturer. This information is used to contact consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Audi Original tire

Tires with the identification "AO" or "RO" have been specially matched with your Audi. We recommend using only these tires because they meet the highest standards regarding safety and driving characteristics when used correctly. Your authorized Audi dealer will gladly provide you with more information.

Tire ply composition and materials used

The number of plies indicates the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire. In general, the greater the number of plies, the more weight a tire can support. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the materials in the tire, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

Maximum Load Rating

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire.

Tire quality grading for treadwear, traction, and temperature resistance

Tread wear, traction and temperature grades ⇨ *page 261*.

Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure

This number is the greatest amount of air pressure that should ever be put in the tire under normal driving conditions.

⚠ WARNING

- Using incorrect or unmatched tires and / or wheels or improper tire and wheel combinations can lead to loss of control, collision and serious personal injury.
- Always use tires, rims and wheel bolts that meet the specifications of original factory-installed tires or other combinations that have been specifically approved by the vehicle manufacturer.
- Tires age even if they are not being used and can fail suddenly, especially at high speeds. Tires that are more than 6 years old can only be used in an emergency and then with special care and at lower speeds.
- Never mount used tires on your vehicle if you are not sure of their "previous history." Old used tires may have been damaged even though the damage cannot be seen that can lead to sudden tire failure and loss of vehicle control.

▶

1) For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters "ZR."

– All four wheels must be fitted with radial tires of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern. Driving with different tires reduces vehicle handling and can lead to a loss of control.
– If the spare tire is not the same as the tires that are mounted on the vehicle - for example with winter tires - only use the spare tire for a short period of time and drive with extra care. Refit the normal road wheel as soon as safely possible.
– Never drive faster than the maximum speed for which the tires on your vehicle are rated because tires that are driven faster than their rated speed can fail suddenly.
– Overloading tires cause heat build-up, sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation and loss of control.
– Temperature grades apply to tires that are properly inflated and not over or underinflated.
– For technical reasons it is not always possible to use wheels from other vehicles – in some cases not even wheels from the same vehicle model.
– If you install wheel trim discs on the vehicle wheels, make sure that the air flow to the brakes is not blocked. Reduced airflow to the brakes can them to overheat, increasing stopping distances and causing a collision.
– Run flat tires may only be used on vehicles that were equipped with them at the factory. The vehicle must have a chassis designed for run flat tires. Incorrect use of run flat tires can lead to vehicle damage or accidents. Check with an authorized Audi dealer or tire specialist to see if your vehicle can be equipped with run flat tires. If run flat tires are used, they must be installed on all four wheels. Mixing tire types is not permitted.

Note

– For technical reasons, it is not generally possible to use the wheel rims from other vehicles. This can hold true for wheels of the same vehicle type.
– If the spare tire is different from the tires that you have mounted on your vehicle (for example winter tires or wide profile tires), then use the spare tire for a short period of time only and drive with extra care. Replace the flat tire with the tire matching the others on your vehicle as soon as possible.
– Never drive without the valve stem cap. The valves could get damaged.

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of old tires in accordance with the local requirements.

Uniform tire quality grading

– Tread wear
– Traction AA A B C
– Temperature A B C

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire side wall between tread shoulder and maximum section width ⇨ *page 258, fig. 218*.

For example: Tread wear **200**, Traction **AA**, Temperature **A**.

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Tread wear

The *tread wear* grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. ▶

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The *traction* grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance ⇨ ⚠.

Temperature

The *temperature* grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure ⇨ ⚠.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

⚠ WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

⚠ WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Winter tires

Winter tires can improve vehicle handling on snow and ice. At temperatures below 45 °F (7 °C) we recommend changing to winter tires.

In some heavy snow areas, local governments may require true winter or “snow” tires, those with very deeply cut tread. These tires should only be used in pairs and be installed on all four wheels. Make sure you purchase snow tires that are the same size and construction type as the other tires on your vehicle.

Your vehicle is equipped with all-wheel drive, this will improve traction during winter driving, even with the standard tires. However, we strongly recommend that you always equip all four wheels on your vehicle with correctly fitted winter tires or all-season tires, when winter road conditions are expected. This also improves the vehicle's braking performance and reduces stopping distances.

Summer tires provide less grip on ice and snow.

Winter tires (snow tires) must always be fitted on all four wheels.

Ask your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop for permitted **winter tire sizes**. Use only radial winter tires.

Winter tires lose their effectiveness when the tread is worn down to a depth of 0.157 inch (4 mm).

Only drive with winter tires under winter conditions. Summer tires handle better when there is no snow or ice on the roads and the temperature is above 45 °F (7 °C).

If you have a flat tire, see notes on spare wheel ⇨ *page 258*.

Please always remember that winter tires may have a lower speed rating than the tires originally installed on your vehicle at the time it ▶

was manufactured. Please see ⇨ *page 259, Speed rating (letter code)* for a listing of the speed rating letter codes and the maximum speed at which the tires can be driven.

The speed rating letter code (⇨ *page 249*) is on the side wall of the tire ⇨ *page 258*.

WARNING

Winter tires have maximum speed limits that may be lower than your vehicle's maximum speed. Always know the maximum speed before driving off. Never drive faster than the speed permitted for your specific winter tires. This will cause damage to the tires leading to an accident and serious personal injury to you and your passengers.

WARNING

Driving faster than the maximum speed for which the winter tires on your vehicle were designed can cause tire failure including a blowout and sudden deflation, loss of control, crashes and serious personal injuries. Have worn or damaged tires replaced immediately.

– Winter tires have maximum speed rating that may be lower than your vehicle's maximum speed.
– Never drive faster than the speed for which the winter or other tires installed on your vehicle are rated.

WARNING

Always adjust your driving to the road and traffic conditions. Never let the good acceleration of the winter tires and all-wheel drive tempt you into taking extra risks. Always remember:

– When braking, an all-wheel drive vehicle handles in the same way as a front drive vehicle.
– Drive carefully and reduce your speed on icy and slippery roads, even winter tires cannot help under black ice conditions.

For the sake of the environment

Use summer tires when weather conditions permit. They are quieter, do not wear as quickly and reduce fuel consumption.

Snow chains

Snow chains may be fitted only to the rear wheels, and only to certain tire sizes. Ask your authorized Audi dealer on which tire sizes snow chains can be used.

The snow chains must have low-profile links and must not be thicker than 0.53 inch (13.5 mm), including the lock.

Remove wheel center covers and trim discs before putting snow chains on your vehicle ⇨ ⓘ. For safety reasons cover caps must then be fitted over the wheel bolts. These are available from authorized Audi dealers.

WARNING

Using the wrong snow chains for your vehicle or installing them incorrectly can increase the risk of loss of control leading to serious personal injury.

– Snow chains are available in different sizes. Always make sure to follow the instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer.
– When driving with snow chains never drive faster than the speed permitted for your specific snow chains.
– Always observe local regulations.

Note

– Remove snow chains before driving on roads not covered with snow to avoid damaging tires and wearing the snow chains down unnecessarily.
– Snow chains, which come into direct contact with the wheel rim, can scratch or damage it. Therefore, make sure that the snow chains are suitably covered. Check the position of the snow chains after ▶

driving a few yards and correct if necessary. Follow the instructions from the snow chain manufacturer when doing so.

Tips

Where snow chains are mandatory on certain roads, this normally also applies to vehicles with all wheel drive .

Wheel bolts

Wheel bolts must always be tightened to the correct torque.

The design of wheel bolts is matched to the factory installed rims. If different rims are fitted, the correct wheel bolts with the right length and correctly shaped bolt heads must be used. This ensures that wheels are fitted securely and that the brake system functions correctly.

In certain circumstances, you may not use wheel bolts from a different vehicle – even if it is the same model ⇨ *page 293*.

WARNING

Improperly tightened or maintained wheel bolts can become loose causing loss of control, a collision and serious personal injury.

– Always keep the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hubs clean so the wheel bolts can turn easily and be properly tightened.
– Never grease or oil the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hubs. They can become loose while driving if greased or oiled, even if tightened to the specified torque.
– Only use wheel bolts that belong to the rim being installed.
– Never use different wheels bolts on your vehicle.
– Always maintain the correct tightening torque for the wheel bolts to reduce the risk of a wheel loss. If the tightening torque of the wheel bolts is too low, they can loosen and come out when the vehicle is moving. If the tightening torque is too high, the wheel bolts and threads can be damaged and the wheel can become loose.

Note

The specified torque for the wheel bolts is 105 ft lb (140 Nm) with a tolerance of ± 7,4 ft lb (± 10 Nm). Torque wheel bolts diagonally. After changing a wheel, the torque must be checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench – preferably by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.

Low aspect ratio tires

Your Audi is factory-equipped with low aspect ratio tires. These tires have been thoroughly tested and been selected specifically for your model for their superb performance, road feel and handling under a variety of driving conditions. Ask your authorized Audi dealer for more details.

The low aspect ratio of these tires is indicated by a numeral of **55 or less** in the tire's size designation. The numeral represents the ratio of the tire’s sidewall height in relation to its tread width expressed in percentage. Conventional tires have a height/width ratio of 60 or more.

The performance of low-aspect-ratio tires is particularly sensitive to improper inflation pressure. It is therefore important that low aspect ratio tires are inflated to the specified pressure and that the inflation pressure is regularly checked and maintained. Tire pressures should be checked at least once a month and always before a long trip ⇨ *page 253, Checking tire pressure*.

What you can do to avoid tire and rim damage

Low aspect ratio tires can be damaged more easily by impact with potholes, curbs, gullies or ridges on the road, particularly if the tire is underinflated. ▶

In order to minimize the occurrence of impact damage to the tires of your vehicle, we recommend that you observe the following precautions:

– Always maintain recommended inflation pressures. Check your tire pressure every 2,000 miles (3,000 km) and add air if necessary.
– Drive carefully on roads with potholes, deep gullies or ridges. The impact from driving through or over such obstacles can damage your tires. Impact with a curb may also cause damage to your tires.
– After any impact, immediately inspect your tires or have them inspected by the nearest authorized Audi dealer. Replace a damaged tire as soon as possible.
– Inspect your tires every 2,000 miles (3,000 km) for damage and wear. Damage is not always easy to see. Damage can lead to loss of air and underinflation, which could eventually cause tire failure. If you believe that a tire may have been damaged, replace the tire as soon as possible.
– These tires may wear more quickly than others.
– Please also remember that, while these tires deliver responsive handling, they may ride less comfortably and make more noise than other choices.

Reduced performance in winter/cold season conditions

All tires are designed for certain purposes. The low aspect ratio, ultra high performance tires originally installed on your vehicle are intended for maximum dry and wet road performance and handling. They are not suitable for cold, snowy or icy weather conditions. If you drive under those circumstances, you should equip your vehicle with all-season or winter tires, which offer better traction under those conditions. We suggest you use the recommended snow or all-season tires specified for your vehicle, or their equivalent.

Refer to ⇨ *page 262* for more detailed information regarding winter tires.

Tire pressure monitoring system

General notes (!)

Applies to vehicles: with tire pressure monitoring system

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. ▶

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Tire pressure indicator appears

Applies to vehicles: with tire pressure monitoring system

The tire pressure indicator in the instrument cluster informs you if the tire pressure is too low or if there is a system malfunction.

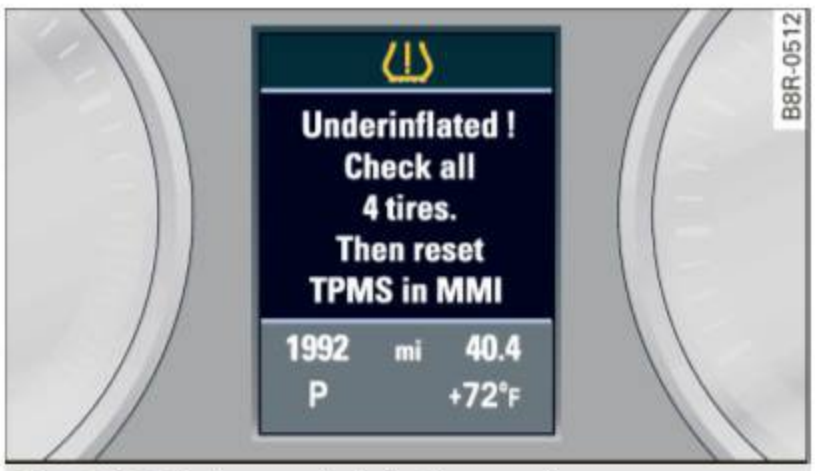


Fig. 219 Display: underinflation warning

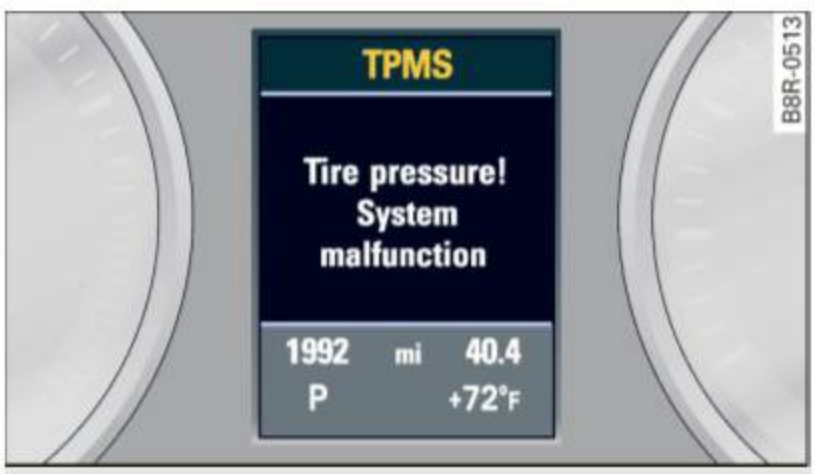


Fig. 220 Display: System malfunction

Using the ABS sensors, the tire pressure monitoring system compares the tire tread circumference and vibration characteristics of the individual tires. If the pressure decreases in one or more tires, this is indicated in the instrument cluster with a warning symbol and a message ⇨ *fig. 219*. The driver message in the display goes out after 5 seconds. The driver message can be displayed again by pressing the SET button. If only one tire is affected, the display will indicate its position.

The tire pressure monitoring must be reset via radio or MMI* each time the pressures are adjusted (e. g. when switching between partial and full load pressure) or after changing or replacing a tire on your vehicle ⇨ *page 267*. You can find the recommended tire pressures for your vehicle on the label on driver's side B-pillar ⇨ *page 251*.

Tire tread circumference and vibration characteristics can change and cause a tire pressure warning if:

– the tire pressure in one or more tires is too low,
– the tire has structural damage,
– the tire pressure was changed, wheels rotated or replaced but the TPMS was not reset ⇨ *page 267*.

Warning symbols

Loss of pressure in at least one tire ⇨ ⚠. Check the tire or tires and replace or repair if necessary. The indicator light in the instrument cluster also illuminates ⇨ *page 14*. Check/correct the pressures of all four tires and reset TPMS via radio or MMI*.

TPMS (**T**ire **P**ressure **M**onitoring **S**ystem) **Tire pressure! System malfunction**. If TPMS appears after switching the ignition on or while driving ⇨ *fig. 220* and the indicator light in the instrument cluster blinks for approximately one minute and then stays on, there is a system malfunction. See your authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible.

WARNING

– If the tire pressure indicator appears in the instrument cluster display, one or more of your tires is significantly underinflated. Reduce your speed immediately and avoid any hard steering or braking maneuvers. Stop as soon as possible and check the tires and their pressures. Inflate the tire pressure to the proper pressure as indicated on the vehicle's tire ▶

pressure label ⇨ *page 251*. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also is likely to impair the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

– The driver is responsible for maintaining the correct tire pressures. You must check the tire pressures regularly.
– Under certain conditions (such as a sporty driving style, winter conditions or unpaved roads), the pressure monitor indicator may be delayed.
– Ask your authorized Audi dealer if run-flat tires may be used on your vehicle. Your vehicle registration becomes invalid if you use these tires when not permitted. Damage to your vehicle or accidents could also result.

Tips

– The tire pressure monitoring system stops working when there is an ESP/ABS malfunction.
– Using snow chains may result in a system malfunction.
– The tire pressure monitoring system on your Audi was calibrated using tires with the “AO” or “RO” identification. We recommend using these tires.

Reset tire pressure monitoring system

Applies to vehicles: with tire pressure monitoring system

If the tire pressure is adjusted, wheels are rotated or changed, the TPMS must be reset via radio or MMI.*

▸ Turn on the ignition.
▸ Select: Function button CAR > **Tire pressure monitoring** > **Store now**.

Tips

Before resetting the TPMS, the current pressures of all four tires must correspond to the specified values. Adjust the tire pressure and reset the pressure in the tire pressure monitoring system according to the load you are carrying ⇨ *page 251*.

What do I do now?

Jack, tools and inflatable spare tire

Onboard tool kit and vehicle jack

The vehicle tools and vehicle jack are stored in the luggage compartment under the floor cover.



Fig. 221 Luggage compartment: onboard tool kit and vehicle jack

The vehicle jack is stored under the onboard tool kit ⇨ *fig. 221*.

The onboard tool kit includes:

– Hook for removing wheel covers*
– Plastic hook to remove wheel bolt covers*
– Alignment pin for changing wheels
– Wheel bolt wrench
– Folding chocks
– Screwdriver with reversible blade
– Socket (removable Torx socket)*
– 10 x 13 open ended wrench (for disconnecting the battery cables)
– Towing eye

Before storing the jack, make sure it is wound back down as far as it will go.

WARNING

Improper use of the vehicle jack can cause serious personal injuries.

– Never use the jack supplied with your Audi on another vehicle, particularly on a heavier one. The jack is only suitable for use on the vehicle it came with.
– Using a bumper jack to raise the vehicle will damage the bumper system. The jack may slip, causing injury.
– Never support your vehicle on cinder blocks, bricks or other objects. These may not be able to support the load and could cause injury when they fail.
– Never start or run the engine while the vehicle is supported by the jack.
– If you must work under the vehicle, always use safety stands specifically designed for this purpose.
– Never use the hexagonal socket in the handle of the screwdriver to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts.
– Always make sure the inflatable spare tire and even a flat tire are secured in place and not loose, otherwise they could fly forward, causing personal injury to passengers in the vehicle in an accident or sudden maneuver.

Tips

Some of the onboard items listed above are provided on certain models only or are optional extras.

Folding chocks

The folding chocks are part of the onboard tool kit.

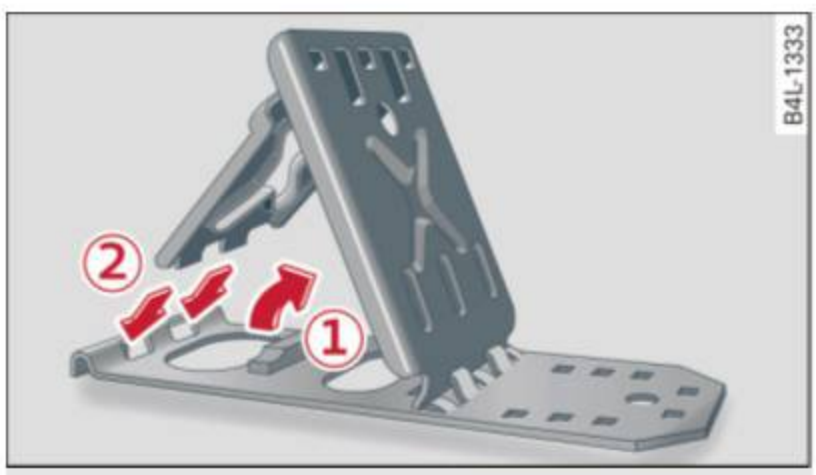


Fig. 222 Opening folding chocks

To use the chocks, you first have to raise the support plate ⇨ *fig. 222* (1) and then insert the locking plate with the two “tabs” into the elongated holes in the base plate (2) ⇨ ⚠. ▶

WARNING

- The chock cannot fulfil its function and may lose its stability if the “tabs” on the support plate are not inserted correctly into the elongated holes in the base plate. If this happens, the vehicle may start to move while a wheel is being changed.
- Never use the folding chocks if they are damaged or if they have not been assembled correctly.

Removing bass box

Applies to vehicles: with bass box

Before the inflatable spare tire can be taken out, the bass box must be removed.

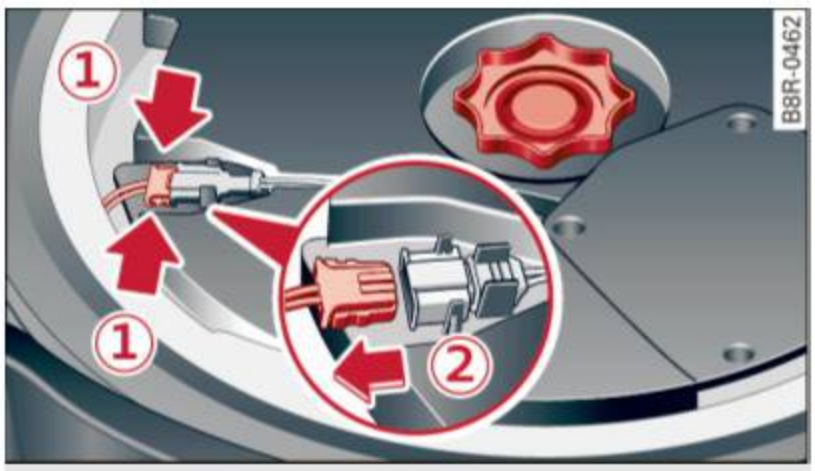


Fig. 223 Spare wheel well: Bass box

Removing bass box

- Lift up the cargo floor using the handle.
- Squeeze the locking tabs ⇨ *fig. 223* ① of the connector.
- Disconnect the connector ② and place the lead to one side.
- Turn the large screw counter-clockwise.
- Carefully remove the bass box.

Installing bass box

- Carefully place the bass box in the wheel. The inscription “FRONT” on the bass box must face forward.
- Reconnect the connector that was removed.
- Secure the bass box with the large screw.
- Fold the cargo floor back down.

Inflatable spare tire

The inflatable spare tire expands to its full diameter when it is inflated.



Fig. 224 Inflatable spare tire with compressor

Removing inflatable spare tire

- Lift up the cargo floor using the handle.
- Remove the dirt tray.
- Turn the large screw ⇨ *fig. 224* counter-clockwise.
- Remove the bass box as required ⇨ *page 269*.
- Take out the inflatable spare tire.

Stowing the inflatable spare tire

- Release the air by unscrewing the valve stem.
- Screw the valve stem back in afterwards.
- Wait a few hours before placing the wheel in the spare wheel well ⇨ ⚠.
- Install the bass box as required ⇨ *page 269*.
- Secure the wheel with the large screw.
- Place the dirt tray back in.
- Fold the cargo floor back down.

After using the inflatable spare wheel

The inflatable spare tire can be re-used as long as it is not damaged and is not worn down to the tread wear indicators ⇨ ⚠.

When you let the air out of the inflatable spare tire, it does not assume its folded shape again for several hours. Until then, it cannot be placed back in the spare wheel well and stowed securely. ▶

WARNING

- Never use the spare tire if it is damaged or if it is worn down to the tread wear indicators.
- If the inflatable spare tire is more than 6 years old, use it only in an emergency and with extreme caution and careful driving.
- The inflatable spare tire is intended only for temporary and short-term use. It should be replaced as soon as possible with the normal wheel and tire.
- The tire pressure value for the inflatable spare tire is located on the driver's side B-pillar ⇨ *page 251, fig. 215*.
- Maximum permissible speed is 50 mph (80 km/h).
- Avoid full-throttle acceleration, heavy braking, and fast cornering.
- When the air is let out of the inflatable spare wheel, it does not assume its folded shape for several hours. Until then, it cannot be placed back in the spare wheel well and stowed securely.
- Never drive with more than one inflatable spare tire.
- For technical reasons, the use of tire chains on the inflatable spare tire is not permitted. If it is necessary to drive with tire chains, the inflatable spare wheel must be mounted on the front axle in the event of a flat in a rear tire. The newly available front wheel must then be installed in place of the rear wheel with the flat tire. Installing the tire chain before mounting the wheel and tire is recommended.
- Loose items in the passenger compartment can cause serious personal injury during hard braking or in an accident.
  - Never store the inflatable spare tire or jack and tools in the passenger compartment.
  - Always store all jacking equipment, tools, and the inflatable spare tire in the luggage compartment.
  - Tighten the knurled retaining screw for the inflatable spare tire securely.

Note

- The inflatable spare tire has been developed specifically for this vehicle model. It must not be exchanged or used for other vehicle models. Similarly, inflatable tires from other vehicle models must not be used.
- Normal summer or winter tires must not be installed on the inflatable tire rim.

Inflating inflatable spare tire



Fig. 225 Luggage compartment left side: compressor

- ▸ Remove the left trim panel in the luggage compartment.
- ▸ Open the Velcro strap and remove the compressor ⇨ *fig. 225*.
- ▸ Unscrew the valve stem from the spare tire.
- ▸ Screw the tire filler hose from the compressor firmly onto the valve of the spare tire.
- ▸ Insert the plug from the compressor into a socket of the vehicle ⇨ *page 79*.
- ▸ Switch the compressor on.
- ▸ Let the compressor run until the value specified on the tire pressure label is reached ⇨ *page 251, fig. 215*. Switch the compressor off after running for 12 minutes at the most - danger of overheating!

WARNING

The compressor and the tire filler hose can become extremely hot while they are running - danger of burns!

▶

Note

Switch the compressor off after running for 12 minutes at the most - danger of overheating! Allow the compressor to cool down for a few minutes before you use it again.

Changing a wheel

Before changing a wheel

Observe the following precautions for your own and your passenger's safety when changing a wheel.

- ▸ After you experience a tire failure, pull the car well away from moving traffic and try to reach **level** ground before you stop ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ All passengers should **leave the car** and move to a safe location (for instance, behind the guardrail) ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Engage the **parking brake** to prevent your vehicle from rolling unintentionally ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Move **selector lever to position P** ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ If you are towing a trailer: unhitch the trailer from your vehicle.
- ▸ Block the diagonally opposite wheel with the folding chocks or other objects.
- ▸ Take the **jack** and the **inflatable spare tire** out of the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 268*.

WARNING

You or your passengers could be injured while changing a wheel if you do not follow these safety precautions:

– If you have a flat tire, move a safe distance off the road. Turn off the engine, turn the emergency flashers on and use other warning devices to alert other motorists.
– Make sure that passengers wait in a safe place away from the vehicle and well away from the road and traffic.
– To help prevent the vehicle from moving suddenly and possibly slipping off the jack, always fully set the parking brake and block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed with the folding chocks or other objects. When one front wheel is lifted off the ground, placing the Automatic Transmission in “P” (Park) will *not* prevent the vehicle from moving.
– Before you change a wheel, be sure the ground is level and firm. If necessary, use a sturdy board under the jack.
– After installing the inflatable spare tire, make sure that you replace the flat tire/wheel in its storage area properly and tighten the knurled retaining screw securely.

Changing a wheel

When you change a wheel, follow the sequence described below step-by-step and in exactly that order.

1. Remove the **decorative wheel cover*** . For more details see also ⇨ *page 272, Decorative wheel covers* or ⇨ *page 272, Wheels with wheel bolt caps*.
2. Loosen the **wheel bolts** ⇨ *page 272*.
3. Locate the proper mounting point for the jack and align the jack below that point ⇨ *page 273*.
4. **Lift** the car with the jack ⇨ *page 273*.
5. Remove the **wheel with the flat tire** and then install the **inflatable spare tire** ⇨ *page 274*.
6. Tighten all wheel bolts lightly.
7. **Lower** the vehicle with the jack.
8. Use the wheel bolt wrench and **firmly** tighten all wheel bolts ⇨ *page 272*.
9. Replace the decorative **wheel cover*** .

WARNING

Always read and follow all WARNINGS and information ⇨ ⚠ *in Raising the vehicle on page 274* and ⇨ *page 275*.

After changing a wheel

A wheel change is not complete without the doing the following.

- ▸ **Store and secure** the wheel you replaced in the spare wheel well.
- ▸ Replace the tools and the jack in their proper location.
- ▸ As soon as possible, have the **tightening torques** on all wheel bolts checked with a torque wrench. The correct tightening torque is 105 ft lb (140 Nm).
- ▸ Have the flat tire **replaced** as soon as possible.

Tips

– If you notice that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn while changing a tire, they should be replaced before you check the tightening torque.
– Drive at reduced speed until you have the tightening torques checked.

Decorative wheel covers

Applies to vehicles: with decorative wheel covers

The decorative wheel covers must be removed first to access the wheel bolts.



Fig. 226 Changing a wheel: Removing the wheel cover

Removing

- ▸ Insert the **hook** provided with the vehicle tool kit in the hole in the hub.
- ▸ Pull off the **decorative wheel cover** ⇨ *fig. 226*.

Wheels with wheel bolt caps

Applies to vehicles: with wheel bolts with caps

The caps must be removed first from the wheel bolts before the bolts can be unscrewed.



Fig. 227 Changing a wheel: removing the wheel bolt caps

Removing

- ▸ Push the **plastic clip** provided with the vehicle tool kit over the wheel bolt cap until it engages.
- ▸ Pull on the **plastic clip** to remove the cap ⇨ *fig. 227*.

Refitting

- ▸ Place the caps over the wheel bolts and push them back on.

The caps are to protect and keep the wheel bolts clean.

Loosening and tightening the wheel bolts

The wheel bolts must be loosened before raising the vehicle.



Fig. 228 Changing a wheel: loosening the wheel bolts ▶

Loosening

- ▸ Install the **wheel bolt wrench** over the wheel bolt and push it down as far as it will go.
- ▸ Take tight hold of the *end* of the wrench handle and turn the wheel bolts **counter-clockwise** about *one single* turn in the direction of arrow ⇨ *fig. 228*.

Tightening

- ▸ Install the **wheel bolt wrench** over the wheel bolt and push it down as far as it will go.
- ▸ Take tight hold of the *end* of the wrench handle and turn each wheel bolt **clockwise** until it is seated.

⚠ WARNING

– Do not use force or hurry when changing a wheel - you can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack and cause serious personal injuries.

– *Do not* loosen the wheel bolts *more than one turn* before you raise the vehicle with the jack. - You risk an injury.

ⓘ Tips

If a wheel bolt is very tight, you may find it easier to loosen by carefully pushing down on the end of the wheel bolt wrench with *one foot only*. As you do so, hold on to the car to keep your balance and take care not to slip.

Raising the vehicle

The vehicle must be lifted with the jack first before the wheel can be removed.

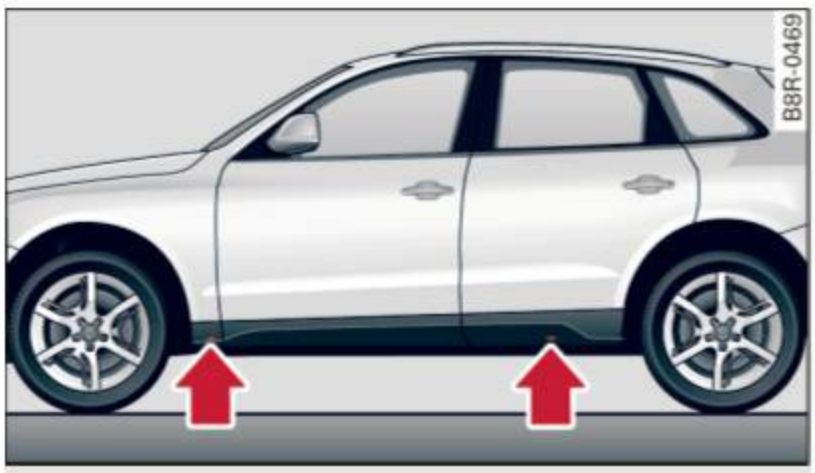


Fig. 229 Changing a wheel: mounting points for the jack

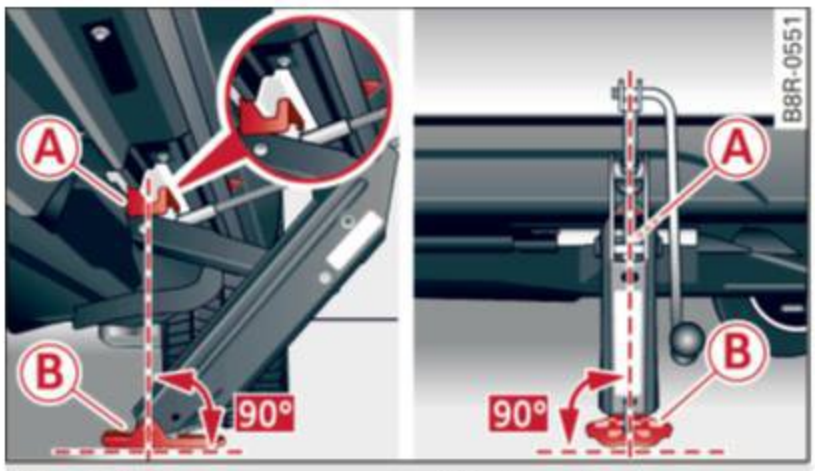


Fig. 230 Close-up: proper positioning of jack

- ▸ Engage the **parking brake** to prevent your vehicle from rolling unintentionally
- ▸ Move the **selector lever to position P**.
- ▸ Position the jack below the door sill under the **mounting point** that is closest to the wheel to be changed ⇨ *fig. 229*.
- ▸ Extend the **jack** under the lifting point on the door sill until its arm is positioned directly under the lifting point ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Align the jack so that its arm Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 230* engages in the designated lifting point in the door sill and the movable base Ⓑ lies flat on the ground. The base Ⓑ must be *vertical* under the lifting point Ⓐ.
- ▸ Wind the jack up further until the flat tire comes off the ground ⇨ ⚠.

The jack must be installed **only** at the places indicated ⇨ *fig. 229*. There is exactly *one* location for each wheel. The jack must not be positioned at any other location ⇨ ⚠.

An **unstable surface** under the jack can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. Always provide ▶

a firm base for the jack on the ground. If necessary place a sturdy board or similar support under the jack. On **hard, slippery surfaces** (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

– You or your passengers could be injured while changing a wheel if you do not follow these safety precautions:
  – Positioning the jack under the vehicle at any other place than those indicated above may damage the vehicle or may result in personal injuries.
  – A soft or unstable surface under the jack may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. Always provide a firm base for the jack on the ground. If necessary, use a sturdy board under the jack.
  – On hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping.
– To help prevent injury to yourself and your passengers:
  – Do not raise the vehicle until you are sure the jack is securely engaged.
  – Passengers must not remain in the vehicle when it is jacked up.
  – Make sure that passengers wait in a safe place away from the vehicle and well away from the road and traffic.
  – Make sure jack position is correct, adjust as necessary and then continue to raise the jack.

Taking the wheel off/installing the inflatable spare tire

Follow these instructions step-by-step for changing the wheel



Fig. 231 Changing a wheel: using the screwdriver handle (with the blade removed) to turn the bolts



Fig. 232 Changing a wheel: alignment pin inside the top hole

After you have loosened all wheel bolts and raised the vehicle off the ground, remove and replace the wheel as follows:

Removing the wheel

- Use the **hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle** to completely remove the topmost wheel bolt and set it aside on a *clean* surface ⇨ *fig. 231*.
- Screw the threaded end of the **alignment pin** from the tool kit hand-tight into the empty bolt hole ⇨ *fig. 232*.
- Then remove the other wheel bolts as described above.
- Take off the wheel leaving the alignment pin in the bolt hole ⇨ (!).

Putting on the inflatable spare tire

- Inflate the inflatable spare tire ⇨ *page 270* and push the wheel over the alignment pin. ▶

- ▸ Use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle to screw in and tighten all wheel bolts *slightly*.
- ▸ Remove the alignment pin and insert and tighten the remaining wheel bolt slightly like the rest.
- ▸ Turn the jack handle counter-clockwise to lower the vehicle until the jack is fully released.
- ▸ Use the wheel bolt wrench to tighten all wheel bolts firmly ⇨ *page 272*. Tighten them *crosswise*, from one bolt to the (approximately) opposite one, to keep the wheel centered.

Note

When removing or installing the wheel, the rim could hit the brake rotor and damage the rotor. Work carefully and have a second person help you.

Tips

Never use the hexagonal socket in the handle of the screwdriver to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts.

– Pull the reversible blade from the screwdriver before you use the hexagonal socket in the handle to turn the wheel bolts.
– When mounting tires with **unidirectional tread design** make sure the tread pattern is pointed the right way ⇨ *page 275*.
– The wheel bolts should be clean and easy to turn. Check for dirt and corrosion on the mating surfaces of both the wheel and the hub. Remove all dirt from these surfaces before remounting the wheel.

Tires with unidirectional tread design

Tires with unidirectional tread design must be mounted with their tread pattern pointed in the right direction.

Using a spare tire with a tread pattern intended for use in a specific direction

When using a spare tire with a tread pattern intended for use in a specific direction, please note the following:

– The direction of rotation is marked by an arrow on the side of the tire.
– If the spare tire has to be installed in the incorrect direction, use the spare tire only temporarily since the tire will not be able to achieve its optimum performance characteristics with regard to aquaplaning, noise and wear.
– We recommend that you pay particular attention to this fact during wet weather and that you adjust your speed to match road conditions.
– Replace the flat tire with a new one and have it installed on your vehicle as soon as possible to restore the handling advantages of a unidirectional tire.

Notes on wheel changing

Please read the information ⇨ *page 258, New tires and replacing tires and wheels* if you are going to use a spare tire which is different from the tires on your vehicle.

After you change a tire:

– **Check the tire pressure on the spare immediately after installation.**
– **Have the wheel bolt tightening torque checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible by your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified workshop.**
– **With steel and alloy wheel rims, the wheel bolts are correctly tightened at a torque of 105 ft lb (140 Nm).**
– **If you notice that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn while changing a tire, they should be replaced before you check the tightening torque.** ▶

– **Replace the flat tire with a new one and have it installed on your vehicle as soon as possible. Remount the wheel cover.**

Until then, drive with extra care and at reduced speeds.

WARNING

– If you are going to equip your vehicle with tires or rims which differ from those which were factory installed, then be sure to read the information ⇨ *page 258, New tires and replacing tires and wheels*.
– Always make sure the damaged wheel or even a flat tire and the jack and tool kit are properly secured in the luggage compartment and are not loose in the passenger compartment.
– In an accident or sudden maneuver they could fly forward, injuring anyone in the vehicle.
– Always store damaged wheel, jack and tools securely in the luggage compartment. Otherwise, in an accident or sudden maneuver they could fly forward, causing injury to passengers in the vehicle.

Fuses and bulbs

Electrical fuses

Replacing fuses

Fuses that have blown will have metal strips that have burned through.

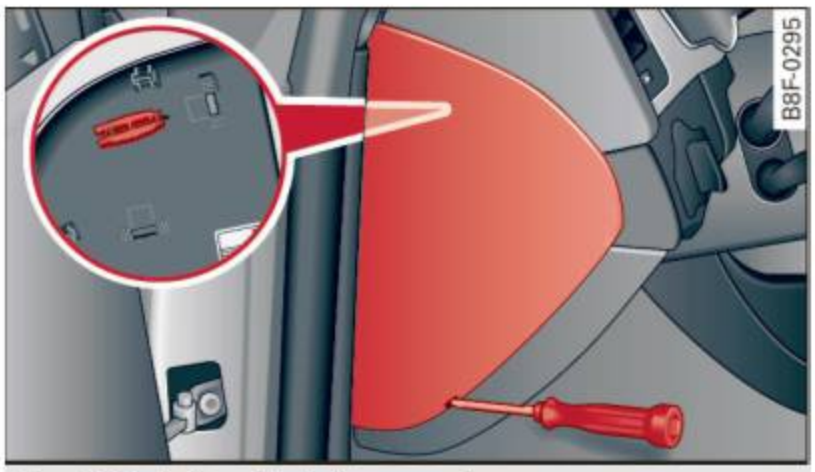


Fig. 233 Left cockpit: fuse panel cover

The fuses are located at the front left and right of the cockpit and behind the trim on the right side of the luggage compartment.

- ▸ Turn off the ignition and the affected electrical consumers.
- ▸ Check the following table to see which fuse belongs to the consumer.
- ▸ Remove the appropriate cover.
- ▸ To remove the purple plastic clip if necessary [1], hold onto it at the small side and pull it out of the fuse panel ⇨ *page 277, fig. 234*.
- ▸ Remove the clamp from the rear side of the fuse cover ⇨ *fig. 233*.
- ▸ Remove the fuse using the clamp and replace the blown fuse with an identical new one.

WARNING

Do not repair fuses and never replace a blown fuse with one that has a higher amp rating. This can cause damage to the electrical system and a fire.

Note

If a new fuse burns out again after shortly have you have installed it, have the electrical system checked by your authorized Audi dealer.

Tips

- The following table does not list fuse locations that are not used.
- Some of the equipment items listed are optional or only available on certain model configurations.

Left cockpit fuse assignment

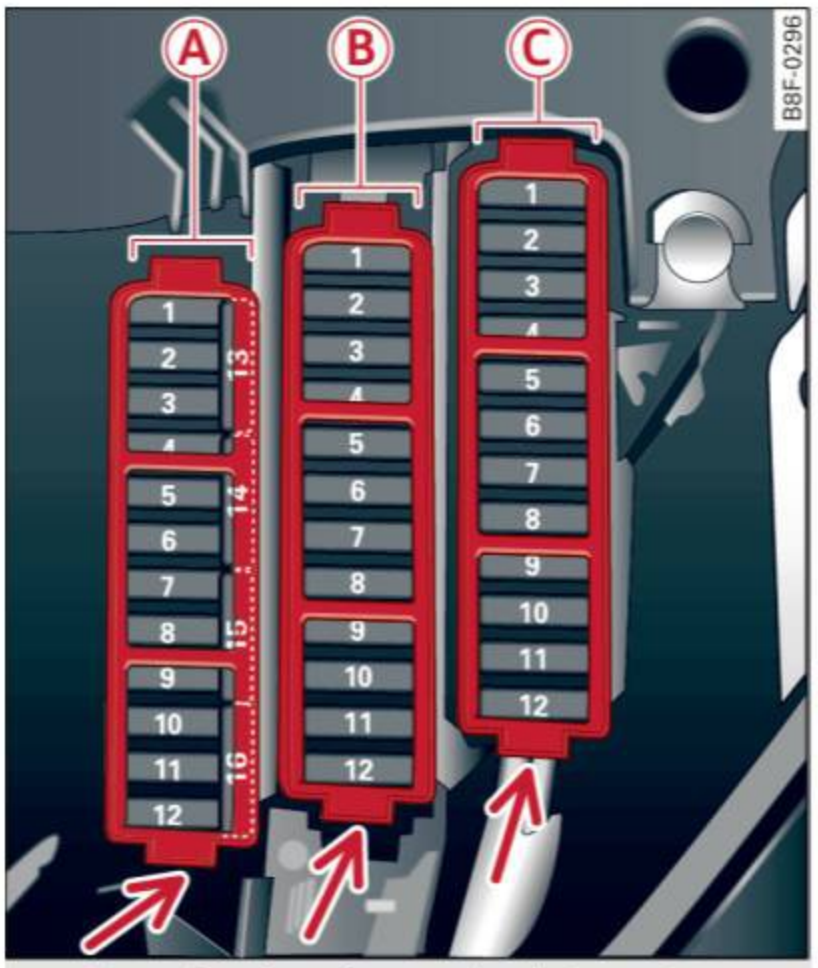


Fig. 234 Left cockpit: fuse panel with plastic clip

No.	Consumer	Amps
Fuse panel Ⓐ (black)		
1	Dynamic steering	5
3	HomeLink	5
5	Climate control	5
6	Right headlight range adjustment	5
7	Left headlight range adjustment	5
8	Vehicle electrical system control module 1	5
9	Adaptive cruise control	5

▶

[1] You can dispose of the plastic clip after removing it.

No.	Consumer	Amps
10	Shift gate	5
11	Heater washer fluid nozzles	5
12	Climate control	5
13	Cell phone prep	5
14	Airbag	5
15	Terminal 15	25
16	Terminal 15 engine	40
Fuse panel Ⓑ (brown)		
1	Automatic dimming interior rearview mirror	5
2	Clutch sensor	5
3	Fuel pump	25
5	Left seat heating	30
6	Electronic Stabilization Program	10
7	Horn	25
8	Left door window regulator motor	30
9	Wiper motor	30
10	Electronic Stabilization Program	25
11	Left doors	15
12	Rain and light sensor	5
Fuse panel Ⓒ (red)		
3	Lumbar support	10
4	Dynamic steering	35
5	Climatized cupholder	10
6	Vehicle electrical system control module 1	35
7	Vehicle electrical system control module 1	20
8	Vehicle electrical system control module 1	30
9	Panorama sunroof	20
10	Vehicle electrical system control module 1	30
11	Panorama sunroof shade	20
12	Convenience electronics	5

Right cockpit fuse assignment

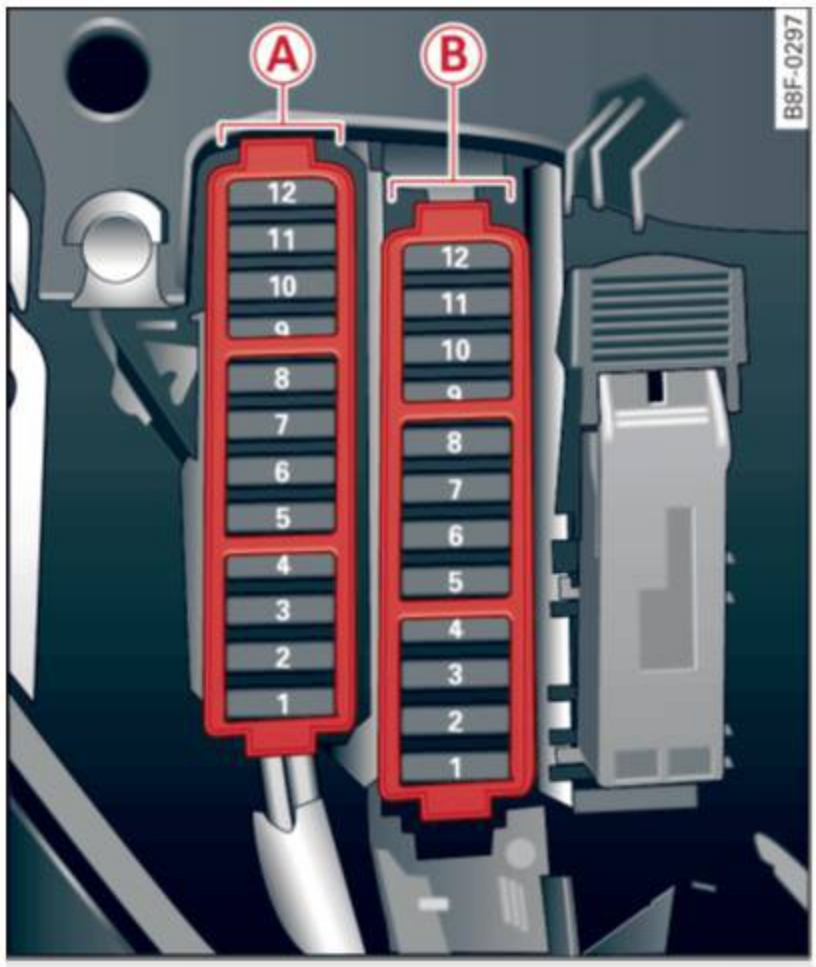


Fig. 235 Right cockpit: fuse panel with plastic clip

No.	Consumer	Amps
Fuse panel Ⓐ (black)		
5	Steering column switch module	5
6	Electronic Stabilization Program	5
7	Terminal 15 diagnostic connector	5
8	Gateway	5
Fuse panel Ⓑ (brown)		
1	CD /DVD player	5
2	Audi drive select switch module	5
3	MMI/Radio	5/20
4	Instrument cluster	5
5	Gateway	5
6	Ignition lock	5
7	Rotary light switch	5
8	Climate control system blower	40
9	Steering column lock	5
10	Climate control	10
11	Terminal 30 diagnostic connector	10
12	Steering column switch module	5

Right luggage compartment fuse assignment

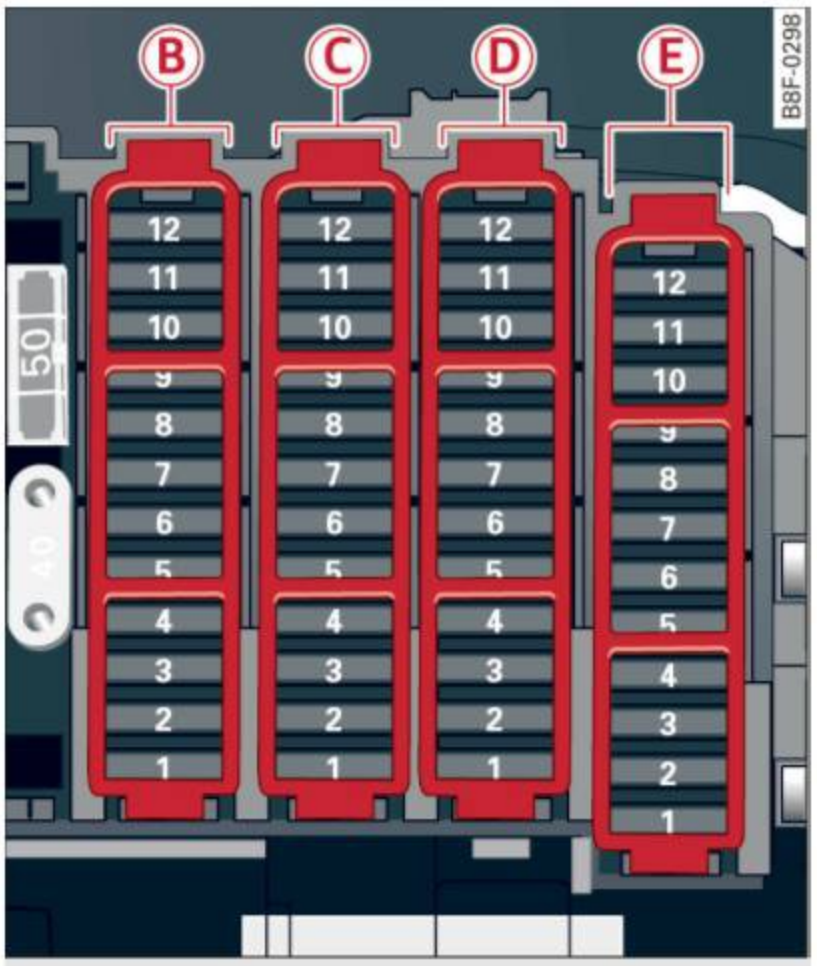


Fig. 236 Right luggage compartment: fuse panel with plastic clip

No.	Consumer	Amps
Fuse panel Ⓑ (black)		
1	Luggage compartment lid control module	30
5	Electromechanical parking brake	5
6	Electronic damping control	15
7	Electromechanical parking brake	30
8	Vehicle electrical system control module 2	30
10	Vehicle electrical system control module 2	30
11	Vehicle electrical system control module	20
12	Terminal 30	5
Fuse panel Ⓒ (brown)		
1	Luggage compartment lid control module	30
2	Right front seat heating	15
3	DCDC converter path 1	40
4	DCDC converter path 2	40

No.	Consumer	Amps
7	Electromechanical parking brake	30
9	Right door control module	30
11	Right door control module	15
Fuse panel Ⓓ (red)		
1	Rear center console outlet	15
2	Center console front outlet/ climatized cupholder	15
3	Luggage compartment outlet	15
4	Cigarette lighter	15
7	Parking system	7,5
8	Rear wiper	15
9	Electromechanical parking brake switch	5
10	Audi side assist	5
12	Terminal 15 control modules	5
Fuse panel Ⓔ (black)		
3	DSP amplifier, radio	30
4	MMI	7,5
5	Radio/navigation/cell phone prep	5
6	Rearview camera	5
7	cell phone prep	5

Bulbs

Replacing light bulbs

For your safety, we recommend that you have your authorized Audi dealer replace burned out bulbs for you.

It is becoming increasingly more and more difficult to replace vehicle light bulbs since in many cases, other parts of the car must first be removed before you are able to get to the bulb. This applies especially to the light bulbs in the front of your car which you can only reach through the engine compartment.

Sheet metal and bulb holders can have sharp edges that can cause serious cuts, and parts ▶

must be correctly taken apart and then properly put back together to help prevent breakage of parts and long term damage from water that can enter housings that have not been properly resealed.

For your safety, we recommend that you have your authorized Audi dealer replace any bulbs for you, since your dealer has the proper tools, the correct bulbs and the expertise.

Gas discharge lamps (Xenon lights)*:

Due to the high electrical voltage, have the bulbs replaced by a qualified technician. Headlights with Xenon light can be identified by the high voltage sticker.

WARNING

Contact with high-voltage components of the electrical system and improper replacement of gas discharge (Xenon) headlight bulbs can cause serious personal injury and death.

- Xenon bulbs are pressurized and can explode when being changed.
- Changing Xenon lamps requires the special training, instructions and equipment.
- Only an authorized Audi dealer or other qualified workshop should change the bulbs in gas discharge lamps.

WARNING

There are parts with sharp edges on the openings and on the bulb holders that can cause serious cuts.

- If you are uncertain about what to do, have the work performed by an authorized Audi dealer or other qualified workshop. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.

Tips

- If you must replace the light bulbs yourself, always remember that the engine compartment of any vehicle is a hazardous area to work in. Always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 226, Engine compartment* ⇨ ⚠.
- It is best to ask your authorized Audi dealer whenever you need to change a bulb.

Emergency situations

General

This chapter is intended for trained emergency crews and working personnel who have the necessary tools and equipment to perform these operations.

Starting by pushing or towing

Note

Vehicles with an automatic transmission cannot be started by pushing or towing.

Starting with jumper cables

If necessary, the engine can be started by connecting it to the battery of another vehicle.

If the engine should fail to start because of a discharged or weak battery, the battery can be connected to the battery of *another* vehicle, using a **pair of jumper cables** to start the engine.

Jumper cables

Use *only* jumper cables of sufficiently large **cross section** to carry the starter current safely. Refer to the manufacturer's specifications.

Use only jumper cables with *insulated* terminal clamps which are distinctly marked:

plus (+) cable in most cases colored **red**

minus (-) cable in most cases colored **black**.

WARNING

Batteries contain electricity, acid, and gas. Any of these can cause very serious or fatal injury. Follow the instructions below for safe handling of your vehicle's battery.

– Always shield your eyes and avoid leaning over the battery whenever possible.
– A discharged battery can freeze at temperatures just below 32 °F (0 °C). Before connecting a jumper cable, you must thaw the frozen battery completely, otherwise it could explode.
– Do not allow battery acid to contact eyes or skin. Flush any contacted area with water immediately.
– Improper use of a booster battery to start a vehicle may cause an explosion.
– Vehicle batteries generate explosive gases. Keep sparks, flame and lighted cigarettes away from batteries.
– Do not try to jump start any vehicle with a low acid level in the battery.
– The voltage of the booster battery must also have a 12-Volt rating. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be lower than that of the discharged battery. Use of batteries of different voltage or substantially different "Ah" rating may cause an explosion and personal injury.
– Never charge a frozen battery. Gas trapped in the ice may cause an explosion.
– Never charge or use a battery that has been frozen. The battery case may have be weakened.
– Use of batteries of different voltage or substantially different capacity (Ah) rating may cause an explosion and injury. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be lower than that of the discharged battery.
– Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 226, Engine compartment*.

Note

– Applying a higher voltage booster battery will cause expensive damage to sensitive electronic components, such as control units, relays, radio, etc.
– There must be no electrical contact between the vehicles as otherwise current could already start to flow as soon as the positive (+) terminals are connected. ▶

Tips

– The discharged battery must be properly connected to the vehicle's electrical system. When jump starting or charging the battery, never connect the negative ground cable to the battery negative post because the battery manager system must be able to detect the battery's state of charge. Always connect the negative ground cable to the negative ground post of the battery manager control unit.

Use of jumper cables

Make sure to connect the jumper cable clamps in exactly the order described below!

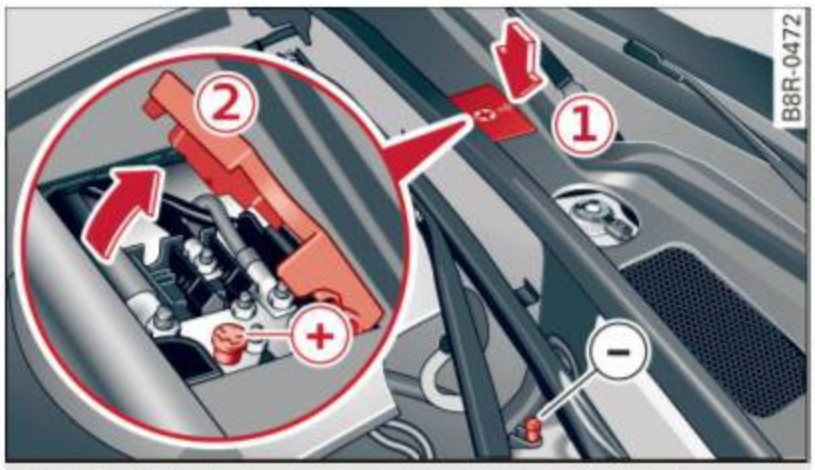


Fig. 237 Engine compartment: Connectors for jumper cables and charger

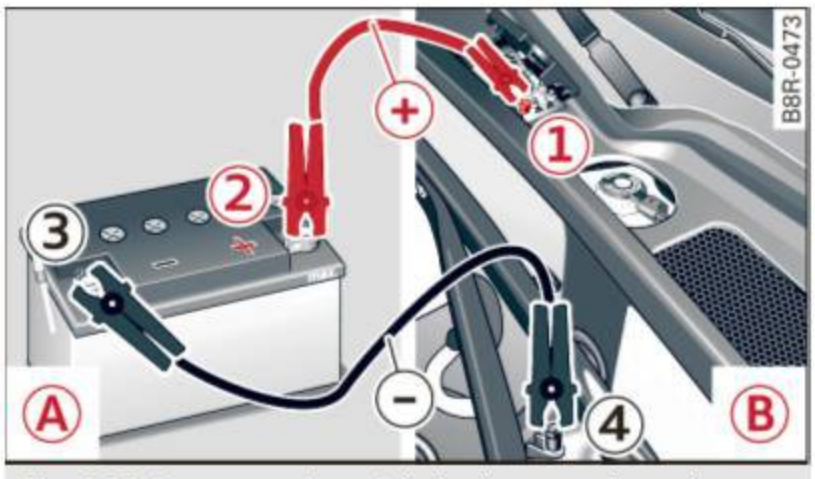


Fig. 238 Jump starting with the battery of another vehicle: Ⓐ booster battery, Ⓑ discharged vehicle battery

The procedure described below for connecting jumper cables is intended to provide a jump start for your vehicle.

Vehicle with discharged battery:

▸ Turn off lights and accessories, move lever of automatic transmission to **N** (Neutral) or **P** (Park) and set parking brake.

Connect POSITIVE (+) to POSITIVE (+) (red)

▸ Remove the cover ① by pressing on the arrow ⇨ *fig. 237*.

▸ Open the cover ② on the positive terminal.

1. Connect one end of the red positive cable on the **jump start bolt** ⇨ *fig. 238* ① (Bolts under cover = "positive") of the vehicle to be started Ⓑ.
2. Connect the other end to the positive terminal ② of the booster battery Ⓐ.

Connect NEGATIVE (–) to NEGATIVE (–) (black)

3. Connect one end of the black negative cable to the negative terminal ③ of the booster battery Ⓐ.
4. Connect the other end of the black negative cable to the **jump start bolt** ④ (Bolts with hex head = "negative") of the vehicle to be started Ⓑ.

Starting the engine

▸ Start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery Ⓐ. Run the engine at a moderate speed.

▸ Start engine with discharged vehicle battery Ⓑ in the usual manner.

▸ If the engine fails to start: do not keep the starter cranking for longer than 10 seconds. Wait for about 30 seconds and then try again.

▸ With engine running, remove jumper cables from both vehicles in the exact *reverse* order.

▸ Close the cover ② on the positive terminal and re-install the cover ① ⇨ *fig. 237*.

The battery is vented to the outside to prevent gases from entering the vehicle interior. Make sure that the jumper clamps are well connected with their *metal parts in full contact* with the battery terminals.

WARNING

To avoid serious personal injury and damage to the vehicle, heed all warnings and instructions of the jumper cable ▸

manufacturer. If in doubt, call for road service.

– Jumper cables must be long enough so that the vehicles do not touch.
– When connecting jumper cables, make sure that they cannot get caught in any moving parts in the engine compartment.
– Do not bend over the batteries - danger of chemical burns!
– The battery cell locking screws must be tightened securely.
– Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 226, Engine compartment*.

Note

Improper hook-up of jumper cables can ruin the generator.

– Always connect POSITIVE (+) to POSITIVE (+), and NEGATIVE (–) to NEGATIVE (–) ground post of the battery manager control unit.
– Check that all screw plugs on the battery cells are screwed in firmly. If not, tighten plugs prior to connecting clamp on negative battery terminal.
– Please note that the procedure for connecting a jumper cable as described above applies specifically to the case of your vehicle being jump started. When you are giving a jump start to another vehicle, do *not* connect the negative **(–)** cable to the negative **(–)** terminal on the discharged battery ④ ⇨ *fig. 238*. Instead, securely connect the negative **(–)** cable to either a solid metal component that is firmly bolted to the engine block or to the engine block itself. If the battery that is being charged does not vent to the outside, escaping battery gas could ignite and explode!

Emergency towing with commercial tow truck

General hints

Your Audi requires special handling for towing.

The following information is to be used by commercial tow truck operators who know how to operate their equipment safely.

– **Never tow your Audi, towing will cause damage to the engine and transmission.**
– **Never wrap the safety chains or winch cables around the brake lines.**
– **To prevent unnecessary damage, your Audi must be transported with a flat bed truck.**
– **To load the vehicle on to the flat bed, use the towing loop found in the vehicle tools and attach to the front or rear anchorage** ⇨ *page 284* and ⇨ *page 284*.

WARNING

A vehicle being towed is not safe for passengers. Never allow anyone to ride in a vehicle being towed, for any reason.

Front towing loop

Do not install the front towing loop until it is needed.



Fig. 239 Front bumper: removing the cover cap

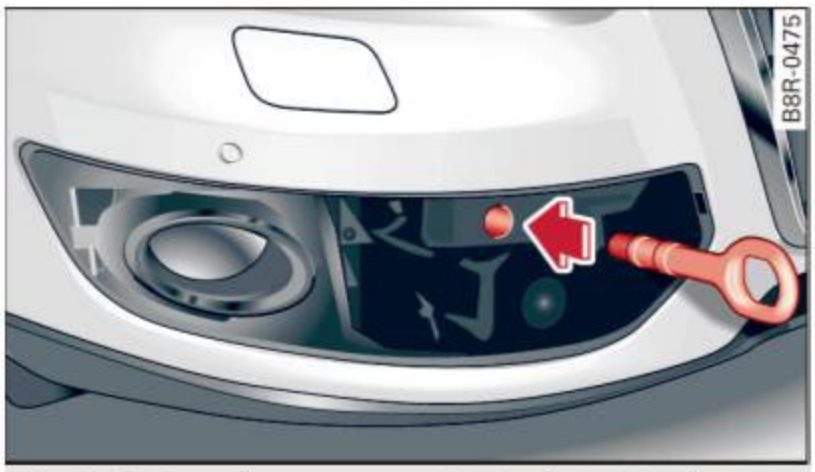


Fig. 240 Front bumper: screwing in the towing loop

The threaded opening for the towing loop is located behind a cover on the right side of the front bumper.

- ▸ Remove the towing loop from the vehicle toolkit ⇨ *page 268*.
- ▸ Carefully remove the cover ⇨ *fig. 239*.
- ▸ Screw the towing loop tightly into the threaded hole as far as it will go ⇨ *fig. 240*.

When it is no longer needed, unscrew the towing loop and put it back into the vehicle toolkit. Be sure to have the towing loop stored in the vehicle at all times.

When re-installing the cover be sure to first insert the tabs on the cover into the retainers near the radiator grille. Then install the other side of the cover and push it into the retainers ⇨ *fig. 239*.

WARNING

If the towing loop is not screwed in as far as it will go, the thread can pull out when the vehicle is towed - potential risk of an accident.

Rear towing loop

On vehicles without a factory-installed trailer hitch, the rear towing loop is located at the right of bumper.*

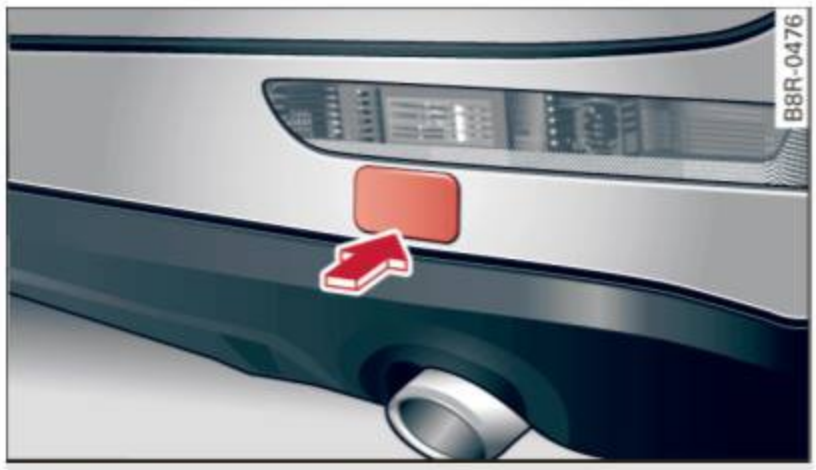


Fig. 241 Rear bumper: Cover

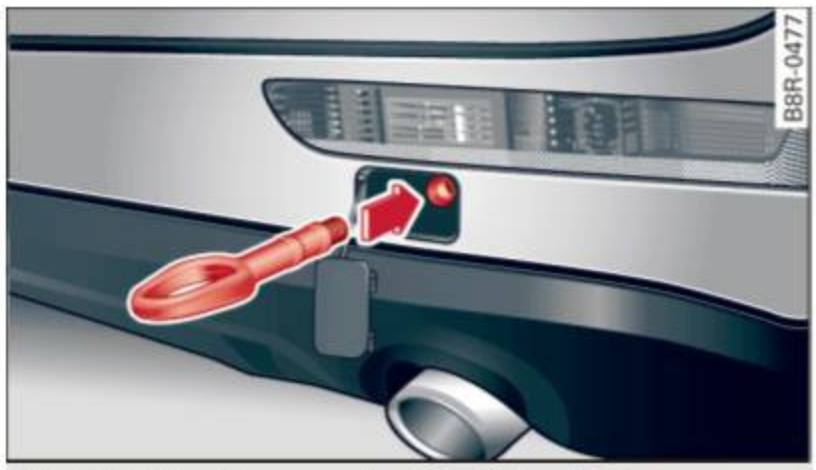


Fig. 242 Rear bumper: Screwing in towing loop

Vehicles with a towing loop

- ▸ Remove the towing loop from the vehicle toolkit ⇨ *page 268*.
- ▸ Press the cover in by applying short strong pressure to the bottom part to release it from the bumper ⇨ *fig. 241*.
- ▸ Screw the towing loop tightly into the threaded hole as far as it will go ⇨ *fig. 242*.

Vehicles with a trailer hitch*

- ▸ Install the trailer hitch.
- ▸ Attach the towing bar or the towing cable to the trailer hitch.

Unscrew the towing loop again after use and install the cover in the bumper. Return the towing loop to the vehicle toolkit. Be sure to have the towing loop stored in the vehicle at all times. ▶

WARNING

- If the towing loop is not screwed in as far as it will go, the thread can pull out when the vehicle is towed - potential risk of an accident.
- If your vehicle has a **trailer hitch*** only use a special towing bar to prevent damaging the ball hitch. These towing bars have been specially designed for trailer towing hitches.
- If your vehicle has a **trailer hitch*** use only special towing cables.

Loading the vehicle onto a flat bed truck



Fig. 243 Vehicle on flat bed truck

Front hook up

- ▸ Align the vehicle with the centerline of the car carrier ramp.
- ▸ Attach the winch hook to the front towline eye previously installed.

Rear hook up

- ▸ Align the vehicle with the centerline of the car carrier ramp.
- ▸ Attach the winch hook to the rear towline eye previously installed.

Tips

Check carefully to make sure the hook-up is secure before moving the car up the flat-bed truck ramp.

Lifting vehicle

Lifting with workshop hoist and with floor jack

The vehicle may only be lifted at the lifting points illustrated.

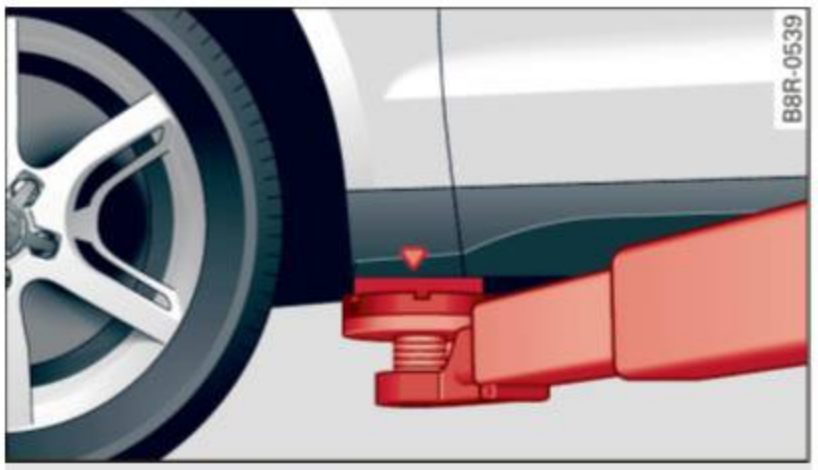


Fig. 244 Front lifting point

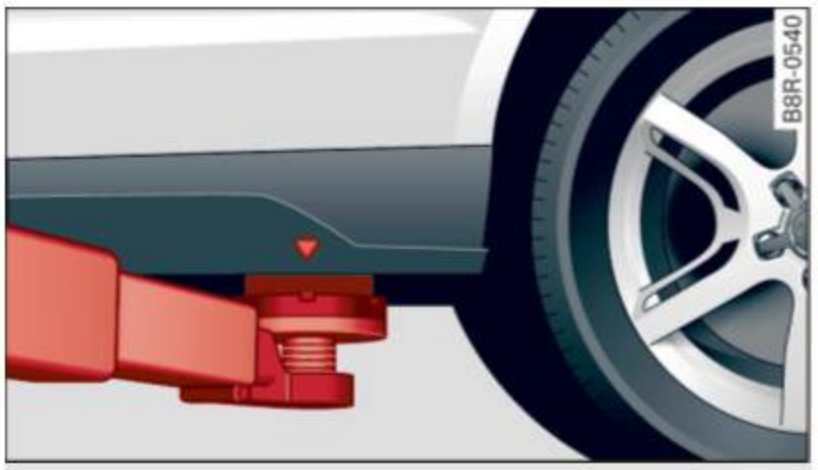


Fig. 245 Rear lifting point

- ▸ Read and heed WARNING ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Locate lifting points ⇨ *fig. 244* and ⇨ *fig. 245*.
- ▸ Adjust lifting arms of workshop hoist or floor jack to match vehicle lifting points.
- ▸ Insert a rubber pad between the floor jack/ workshop hoist and the lifting points.

If you must lift your vehicle with a floor jack to work underneath, be sure the vehicle is safely supported on stands intended for this purpose.

Front lifting point

The lifting point is located on the floor pan reinforcement about at the same level as the jack mounting point ⇨ *fig. 244*. **Do not lift the vehicle at the vertical sill reinforcement.** ▶

Rear lifting point

The lifting point is located on the vertical reinforcement of the lower sill for the onboard jack ⇨ *fig. 245*.

Lifting with vehicle jack

Refer to ⇨ *page 273*.

WARNING

– To reduce the risk of serious injury and vehicle damage.
  – Always lift the vehicle only at the special workshop hoist and floor jack lift points illustrated ⇨ *fig. 244* and ⇨ *fig. 245*.
  – Failure to lift the vehicle at these points could cause the vehicle to tilt or fall from a lift if there is a change in vehicle weight distribution and balance. This might happen, for example, when heavy components such as the engine block or transmission are removed.
– When removing heavy components like these, anchor vehicle to hoist or add corresponding weights to maintain the center of gravity. Otherwise, the vehicle might tilt or slip off the hoist, causing serious personal injury.

Note

– Be aware of the following points before lifting the vehicle:
  – **The vehicle should never be lifted or jacked up from underneath the engine oil pan, the transmission housing, the front or rear axle or the body side members. This could lead to serious damage.**
  – **To avoid damage to the underbody or chassis frame, a rubber pad must be inserted between the floor jack and the lift points.**
  – **Before driving over a workshop hoist, check that the vehicle weight does not exceed the permissible lifting capacity of the hoist.**
  – **Before driving over a workshop hoist, ensure that there is sufficient clearance between the hoist and low parts of the vehicle.**

General information

Explanation of technical data

Some of the technical data listed in this manual requires further explanation.

The technical data for your vehicle is listed in the charts starting on ⇨ *page 289*. This section provides general information, notes and restrictions which apply to this data.

Vehicle identification

The key data is given on the vehicle identification number (VIN) plate and the vehicle data sticker.



Fig. 246 Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) plate: location on driver's side dash panel

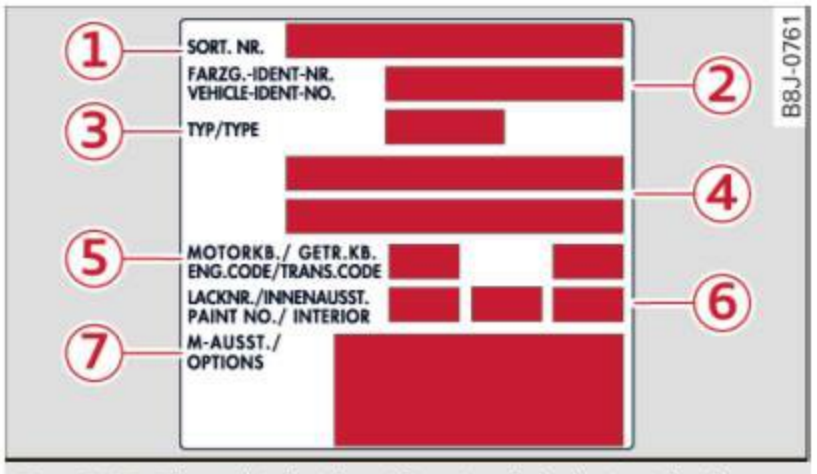


Fig. 247 The vehicle identification label – inside the luggage compartment

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

is located on the driver's side so that it is visible from the outside through the windshield ⇨ *fig. 246*. You can also display the Vehicle Identification Number of your vehicle in the radio or in the MMI*. Select function button CAR > **Vehicle ID number (VIN)**.

The vehicle identification label

is located in the luggage compartment above the compartment for the vehicle tools.

The label ⇨ *fig. 247* shows the following vehicle data:

1. Production control No.
2. Vehicle identification No.
3. Type code number
4. Type designation/engine output in Kilowatts
5. Engine and transmission code letter
6. Paint No./Interior
7. Optional equipment No.'s

Vehicle data 2 to 7 are also found in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

The safety compliance sticker

is your assurance that your new vehicle complies with all applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards which were in effect at the time the vehicle was manufactured. You can find this sticker on the left door jamb. It shows the month and year of production and the vehicle identification number of your vehicle (perforation) as well as the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR).

The high voltage warning label

is located on the lock carrier.

The spark ignition system complies with the Canadian standard ICES-002.

Weights

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for front and rear are listed on a sticker on the left door jamb.

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating includes the weight of the basic vehicle plus full fuel tank, oil and coolant, plus maximum load, which includes passenger weight (150 lbs/68 kg per ▶

designated seating position) and luggage weight ⇨ ⚠.

Gross Axle Weight Rating

The Gross Axle Weight Rating is the maximum load that can be applied at each axle of the vehicle ⇨ ⚠.

Vehicle capacity weight

The vehicle capacity weight (max. load) is listed on the driver's side B-pillar.

Roof weight

The maximum permissible roof weight is **220 lb (100 kg)**. The roof weight is made up of the weight of the roof rack system and the weight of the object being transported ⇨ *page 75, Roof load*.

⚠ WARNING

– The actual Gross Axle Weight Rating at the front and rear axles should not exceed the permissible weights, and their combination must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.
– Exceeding permissible weight ratings can result in vehicle damage, accidents and personal injury.

Note

– The vehicle capacity weight figures apply when the load is distributed evenly in the vehicle (passengers and luggage). When transporting a heavy load in the luggage compartment, carry the load as near to the rear axle as possible so that the vehicle's handling is not impaired.
– Do not exceed the maximum permissible axle Ioads or the maximum gross vehicle weight. Always remember that the vehicle's handling will be affected by the extra load. Therefore, adjust your speed accordingly.
– Always observe local regulations.

Dimensions

The specifications refer to the basic model. Differences may occur depending on the model type and options ordered, for example, tire sizes.

Note

When driving up steep ramps, on rough roads, over curbs, etc. it is important to remember that some parts of your vehicle, such as spoilers or exhaust system components, may be close to the ground. Be careful not to damage them.

Data

211 hp, 4-cylinder engine, with all wheel drive

Engine data

Maximum output SAE net	hp @ rpm	211 @ 4300 - 6000
Maximum torque SAE net	lb-ft @ rpm	258 @ 1500 - 4200
No. of cylinders		4 cylinder
Displacement	CID (cm^3)	121.1 (1984)
Stroke	in (mm)	3.65 (92.8)
Bore	in (mm)	3.25 (82.5)
Compression ratio		9.6 : 1
Fuel	**Premium unleaded (91 AKI)** Recommended for maximum engine performance. Further details ⇨ *page 228, Gasoline*	

Dimensions (approx.)

Length (with license plate bracket)	in (mm)	182.2 (4629)
Width (with outside mirrors folded)	in (mm)	74.7 (1898)
Height (unloaded)	in (mm)	65.1 (1653)
Turning circle diameter (curb to curb)	ft (m)	38.1 (11.6)

Capacities (approx.)

Fuel tank		
- Total capacity	gal (liters)	19.8 (75)
- Reserve (of total capacity)	gal (liters)	2.6 (10)
Windshield and headlight* washer fluid container	quarts (liters)	4.9 (4.6)
Engine oil with filter change	quarts (liters)	4.9 (4.6)

270 hp, 6-cylinder engine, with all wheel drive

Engine data

Maximum output SAE net	hp @ rpm	270 @ 6500
Maximum torque SAE net	lb-ft @ rpm	243 @ 3000 - 5000
No. of cylinders		6 cylinder
Displacement	CID (cm^3)	195.1 (3197)
Stroke	in (mm)	3.65 (92.8)
Bore	in (mm)	3.37 (85.5)
Compression ratio		12.5 : 1
Fuel	**Premium unleaded (91 AKI)** Recommended for maximum engine performance. Further details ⇨ *page 228, Gasoline*	

Dimensions (approx.)

Length (with license plate bracket)	in (mm)	182.2 (4629)
Width (with outside mirrors folded)	in (mm)	74.7 (1898)
Height (unloaded)	in (mm)	65.1 (1653)
Turning circle diameter (curb to curb)	ft (m)	38.1 (11.6)

Capacities (approx.)

Fuel tank		
- Total capacity	gal (liters)	19.8 (75)
- Reserve (of total capacity)	gal (liters)	2.6 (10)
Windshield and headlight* washer fluid container	quarts (liters)	4.9 (4.6)
Engine oil with filter change	quarts (liters)	6.6 (6.2)

Consumer Information

Warranty coverages

Your Audi is covered by the following warranties:

– *New Vehicle Limited Warranty*
– *Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation*
– *Emissions Control System Warranty*
– *Emissions Performance Warranty*
– *California Emissions Control Warranty (USA vehicles only)*
– *California Emissions Performance Warranty (USA vehicles only)*

Detailed information regarding your warranties can be found in your **Warranty & Maintenance booklet**.

Operating your vehicle outside the U.S.A. or Canada

Government regulations in the United States and Canada require that automobiles meet specific emission regulations and safety standards. Therefore, vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada differ from vehicles sold in other countries.

If you plan to take your vehicle outside the continental limits of the United States or Canada, there is the possibility that

– unleaded fuels for vehicles with catalytic converter may not be available;
– fuel may have a considerably lower octane rating. Improper fuel may cause engine damage;
– service may be inadequate due to lack of proper service facilities, tools or testing equipment;
– replacement parts may not be readily available.
– Navigation systems for vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada will not necessarily work in Europe, and may not work in other countries outside of North America.

Note

Audi cannot be responsible for mechanical damage that could result from inadequate fuel, service or parts availability.

Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature

Audi Official Factory Service Manuals and Literature are published as soon as possible after model introduction. Service Manuals and literature are available to order from the Audi Technical Literature Ordering Center at:

www.audi.techliterature.com

Maintenance

General

Your vehicle has been designed to help keep maintenance requirements to a minimum. However, a certain amount of regular maintenance is still necessary to assure your vehicle's safety, economy and reliability. For detailed vehicle maintenance consult your Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

Under difficult operating conditions, for example at extremely low outside temperatures, in very dusty regions, when towing a trailer very frequently, etc., some service work should be performed between the intervals specified. This applies particularly to:

– oil changes, and
– cleaning or replacing the air filter.

For the sake of the environment

By regularly maintaining your vehicle, you help make sure that emission standards are maintained, thus minimizing adverse effects on the environment.

Important considerations for you and your vehicle

The increasing use of electronics, sophisticated fuel injection and emission control systems, and the generally increasing technical ▶

complexity of today's automobiles, have steadily reduced the scope of maintenance and repairs which can be carried out by vehicle owners. **Also, safety and environmental** concerns place very strict limits on the nature of repairs and adjustments to engine and transmission parts which an owner can perform.

Maintenance, adjustments and repairs usually require special tools, testing devices and other equipment available to specially trained workshop personnel in order to assure proper performance, reliability and safety of the vehicle and its many systems.

Improper maintenance, adjustments and repairs can impair the operation and reliability of your vehicle and even void your vehicle warranty. Therefore, proof of servicing in accordance with the maintenance schedule may be a condition for upholding a possible warranty claim made within the warranty period.

Above all, operational safety can be adversely affected, creating unnecessary risks for you and your passengers.

If in doubt about any servicing, have it done by your authorized Audi dealer or any other properly equipped and qualified workshop. We strongly urge you to give your authorized Audi dealer the opportunity to perform all scheduled maintenance and necessary repairs. Your dealer has the facilities, original parts and trained specialists to keep your vehicle running properly.

Performing limited maintenance yourself

The following pages describe a limited number of procedures which can be performed on your vehicle with ordinary tools, should the need arise and trained personnel be unavailable. Before performing any of these procedures, always thoroughly read all of the applicable text and carefully follow the instructions given. Always rigorously observe the **WARNINGS** provided.

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ and ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 232*.

⚠ WARNING

- Serious personal injury may occur as a result of improperly performed maintenance, adjustments or repairs.
- Always be extremely careful when working on the vehicle. Always follow commonly accepted safety practices and general common sense. Never risk personal injury.
- Do not attempt any of the maintenance, checks or repairs described on the following pages if you are not fully familiar with these or other procedures with respect to the vehicle, or are uncertain how to proceed.
- Do not do any work without the proper tools and equipment. Have the necessary work done by your authorized Audi dealer or another properly equipped and qualified workshop.
- The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. Never reach into the area around or touch the radiator fan. It is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly - even when the engine is off and the ignition key has been removed. The radiator fan switches on automatically when the coolant reaches a certain temperature and will continue to run until the coolant temperature drops.
- Always remove the ignition key before anyone gets under the vehicle.
- Always support your vehicle with safety stands if it is necessary to work underneath the vehicle. The jack supplied with the vehicle is not adequate for this purpose and could collapse causing serious personal injury.
- If you must work underneath the vehicle with the wheels on the ground, always make sure the vehicle is on level ground, that the wheels are always securely blocked and that the engine cannot be started.

▶

– Always make sure the transmission selector lever (automatic transmission) is in “P” (Park position) and the park brake is firmly applied.

For the sake of the environment

– Changing the engine settings will adversely affect emission levels. This is detrimental to the environment and increases fuel consumption.
– Always observe environmental regulations when disposing of old engine oil, used brake fluid, dirty engine coolant, spent batteries or worn out tires.
– Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material -special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardous-waste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

Additional accessories, modifications and parts replacement

Additional accessories and parts replacement

Always consult an authorized Audi dealer before purchasing accessories.

Your vehicle incorporates the latest safety design features ensuring a high standard of active and passive safety.

This safety could be compromised by non-approved changes to the vehicle. For this reason, if parts have to be replaced, please observe the following points when installing additional accessories:

Approved Audi accessories and genuine Audi parts are available from authorized Audi dealers.

These dealers also have the necessary facilities, tools and trained specialists to install the parts and accessories properly.

WARNING

Using the wrong spare parts or using non-approved accessories can cause damage to the vehicle and serious personal injury.
– Use only accessories expressly approved by Audi and genuine Audi spare parts
– These parts and accessories have been specially designed to be used on your vehicle.
– Never install accessories such as telephone cradles or beverage holders on airbag covers or within the airbag deployment zones. Doing so will increase the risk of injury if airbags are triggered in an accident!
– Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 226*.

Note

– If items other than genuine Audi spare parts, add-on equipment and accessory items are used or if repair work is not performed according to specified methods, this can result in severe damage to your vehicle’s engine and body (such as corrosion) and adversely affect your vehicle's warranty.
– If emergency repairs must be performed elsewhere, have the vehicle examined by an authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible.
– The manufacturer cannot be held liable for damage which occurs due to failure to comply with these stipulations.

Technical Modifications

Our guidelines must be complied with when technical modifications are made.

Always consult an authorized Audi dealer **before** starting work on any modifications.

This will help ensure that vehicle function, performance and safety are not impaired ⇨ ⚠.

Attempting to work on electronic components and the software used with them can cause malfunctions. Because of the way electronic components are interconnected with each other, such malfunctions can also have an adverse affect on other systems that are not directly involved. This means that you risk both a substantial reduction in the operational safety of your vehicle and an increased wear of vehicle parts ⇨ ⚠.

Authorized Audi dealers will perform this work in a professional and competent manner or, in special cases, refer you to a professional company that specializes in such modifications.

WARNING

Improper repairs and modifications can change the way vehicle systems work and cause damage to the vehicle and serious personal injury.

Note

If emergency repairs must be performed elsewhere, have the vehicle examined by an authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible.

Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunications and Electronic Systems

Radio Frequency Devices and Radiocommunication Equipment User Manual Notice.

The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment.

Devices

The following devices each comply with FCC Part 15.19, FCC Part 15.21 and RSS-Gen Issue 1:

– Adaptive cruise control*
– Convenience key*
– Audi side assist*
– Cell phone package*
– Electronic immobilizer
– HomeLink® universal remote control*
– Remote control key

FCC Part 15.19

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC Part 15.21

CAUTION:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

RSS-Gen Issue 1

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) this device may not cause interference, and ▶

(2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

A

A/C mode 86
Accessories 293
Adaptive cruise control 99
  Changing speed 102
  Driver information 104
  Driver intervention prompt 108
  Driving in traffic 100
  Driving program 108
  Error messages 106
  Open road 100
  Override 100
  Request for driver to assume control . . 100
  Save speed 101
  Setting distance 103
  Settings 108
  Setting time interval 103
  Special driving situations 108
  Status messages 106
  Switching on and off 101
  System limits 108
  Temporarily turning off 102
  Warning/indicator lights 105
Adaptive dampers 121
Adaptive light 54
  defective 35
Adding
  Engine coolant 240
  Engine oil 237
  Windshield washer fluid 246
Additional accessories 293
Additives
  Engine oil 237
Adjusting
  Steering column manually 90
Adjusting front seats 64
Airbag
  Warning/indicator lights 16
Airbag system 156, 173
  Advanced Airbag System 160
  Advanced Airbag System components . 163
  Care 169
  Children 179
  Child restraints 180
  Components (front airbags) 163
  Danger of fitting a child safety seat on the front passenger seat 157
  Disposal 169
  Front airbags 160, 161
  How do the front airbags work? 165
  How many airbags does my vehicle have? 163
  How the Advanced Airbag System components work together 164
  Important things to know 156
  Indicator light 167
  Monitoring 167
  PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light 167
  Repairs 169
  Safety instructions 169
  Side airbags 172
  Side curtain airbags 174
  Weight-sensing mat 179
  When must the system be inspected? . 167
All-wheel drive
  Winter tires 262
Alloy wheels 222
All wheel drive 203
Alternator
  Malfunction 29
Anti-freeze
  refer to Engine coolant system 239
Anti-glare inside day-night mirror 59
Anti-lock brake system
  How the ABS system works 201
  Warning/indicator lights 17
Anti-Slip Regulation System (ASR)
  How the system works 199
Anti-theft alarm warning system 40
Anti-theft systems
  Electronic immobilizer 39
Approach/departure angle 210
Ashtray 78
ASR
  How the Anti-Slip Regulation System works 199
Asterisk
  What does it mean when something is marked with an asterisk? 6
Audi braking guard 110
  Error messages 112
  Settings 111
  Status messages 112
  Switching on and off 111

Audi drive select 121
Adaptive dampers 121
Dynamic steering 121
Audi parking system plus with rearview camera 129
Adjusting the display 133
Adjusting the warning tones 133
Rearview camera - parking mode 1 132
Rearview camera - parking mode 2 132
Safety precautions 129
Switching on and off 131
Trailer hitch 134
Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature 291
Auto-Check Control 28
Auto locking 40
Automatic belt retractor 151
Automatic car wash
refer to Washing 218
Automatic driving light control 51
Automatic Shift Lock (ASL) 125
Automatic transmission 123
Automatic Shift Lock (ASL) 125
Driving 123
Dynamic shift program 126
Emergency mode 128
Emergency release 128
Kick-down 126
Manual shift program 127
Selector lever 124
Shift buttons 127
Steering wheel with tiptronic® 127
Automatic wipe/wash system 56
Auto Safety Hotline 146
Average speed 22
Avoid damaging the vehicle 207

B

Bass box 269
Battery 242
Battery location inside the luggage compartment 243
Charging 244
Important warnings when working on the battery 243
Jump starting 281
Low 203
Replacing the battery 245
State of charge 203
Winter operation 242
Working on the battery 243
Battery voltage 35
Before driving 139
Blended gasoline 228
Body cavity sealing 222
Booster seats 186
Brake assist 202
Brake booster 201
Brake fluid
Changing the brake fluid 242
Checking the brake fluid level 241
Reservoir 241
What is the correct brake fluid level? . . 241
What should I do if the brake fluid warning light comes on? 241
Brake system 241
Anti-lock brake system 17
Brake fluid 241
Brake fluid specifications for refill and replacement 242
Brake light defective 34
Brake pads 206
Electromechanical parking brake 94
General information 200
How does moisture or road salt affect the brakes? 200
Malfunction 30
Warning/indicator lights 18
Worn brake pads symbol 34
Braking guard
refer to Audi braking guard 110
Break-in period 206
Brake pads 206
Tires 206
Breakover angle 210
Bulbs 279

C

California Proposition 65 Warning 233
Battery specific 244
Capacities 289

Car care 217
Interior 223
Plastic and vinyl 220
Weatherstrips 222
Care of exterior 217
Cargo area
refer to Loading the luggage compartment 145
Cargo floor 73
Catalytic converter 207
Center armrest
Adjusting 69
Storage compartment 69
Certification 294
Changing a flat tire 271
Changing a wheel 271
Changing engine oil 238
Chassis
Undercoating 222
Checking
Engine coolant level 239
Checking tire pressure 253
Child restraints
Danger of using child restraints in the front seat 157
Where can I get additional information about child restraints and their use? . . 195
Child restraint system anchors 190
Child safety 178
Convertible locking retractor 187
Important safety instructions for using child safety seats 181
Important things to know when driving with children 178
Installing a child restraint using the LATCH system 192
Mounting and releasing the anchorage hook 192
Tether anchors 193
Tether straps 193
Child safety locks
Rear doors 47
Child safety seats 183
Booster seats 186
Convertible child seats 184
Convertible locking retractor 187
Danger of using child restraints in the front seat 157
How do I properly install a child safety seat in my vehicle? 181
Infant seats 183
Installing 187
LATCH system 192
Safety instructions 181
Child seats
Lower anchorages 191
Cigarette lighter 78
Cleaning
Engine compartment 226
Exhaust tail pipes 223
Fabrics and fabric coverings 223
Instrument panel 224
Interior 223
Leather 225
MMI control console 223
MMI display 223
Plastic and vinyl 220
Plastic parts 224
Radio display 223
Safety belts 226
trim strips 220
Trim strips 220
Cleaning and protection 217
Climatized cupholder 77
Clock 12
Closing
Panoramic sliding sunroof 49
Coat hooks 81
Cold tire inflation pressure 251
Compass mirror 62
Compliance 294
Consumer Information 146, 291
Contacting NHTSA 146
Convenience closed 48
Convenience key 42
Locking and unlocking vehicle 42
START ENGINE STOP button 92, 93
Starting engine 92
Switching engine off 93
Switching on ignition 92
Convenience opening 48
Convertible child safety seats 184

Convertible locking retractor
Activating 189
Deactivating 190
Using to secure a child safety seat 187, 189
Coolant system 239
Cooled cupholder 77
Cooling box in glove compartment 80
Cooling System
Expansion tank 239
Cornering light 54
Cruise control
Changing speed 98
Preselect speed 98
Switching off 98
Switching on 97
Warning/indicator lights 17
also refer to Adaptive cruise control 99
Cruising range 22
Cupholder 77
Cup holders 76
Cupholders
Heated and cooled 77

D

Data 289
Data recorder 196
Date display 12
Daytime running lights 52, 53
Declaration of compliance
Adaptive cruise control 294
Audi side assist 294
Cell phone package 294
Convenience key 294
Electronic immobilizer 294
HomeLink® universal remote control . . 294
Remote control key 294
Defective light bulb warning 34
Defrosting windows 86
Determining correct load limit 255
Digital clock 12
Digital compass 62
Digital speedometer 21
Dimensions 288
Distance control system
refer to Adaptive cruise control 99
Doors
Child safety locks 47
Emergency locking 44
Driver information system 20
Defective light bulb warning 34
Digital speedometer 21
Driver information messages 28
Open door or rear lid warning 21
Outside temperature display 21
Sound system display 20
Driver seat
refer to Seating position 140
Driver's seat memory
Activating remote control key 67
Driving lights 51
Driving messages 28
Driving offroad
Driving through water 211
Driving tips 210
Rules of behavior 210
Sand and mud 211
Snow-covered ground 211
Unpaved roads 211
Driving safely 139
Driving through water 211
Driving time 22
Duplicate key 37
Dust and pollen filter
Three-zone automatic climate control . . 82
Dust filter
Three-zone automatic climate control . . 82
Dynamic steering 15, 33, 121

E

Efficiency program 24
Fuel economy messages 25
Memory levels 23
Other equipment 25
Electrical accessories
refer to Socket 79
Electrical seat adjustment
refer to Seat adjustment 65
Electromechanical parking brake
Emergency braking 96
Malfunction 96
Operation 94

Parking 95
Releasing and closing 94
Starting assist 95
Starting from rest 95
Starting off with a trailer 96
Warning/indicator lights 18
Electronic differential lock (EDL)
How the system works 199
Warning/indicator lights 17
Electronic immobilizer 39
Electronic power control
(EPC) warning/indicator light 15
Electronic stabilization program (ESP)
ESP Offroad mode 196
Hill descent assist 198
How the system works 196
Warning/indicator lights 15
Emergency braking 96
Emergency flasher 54
Warning/indicator lights 16
Emergency key 37
Starting engine 39
Emergency locking of the doors 44
Emergency operation
Luggage compartment lid 47
Emergency release
Selector lever 128
Emergency starting 281
Emergency towing 283
Emergency unlocking
Ignition key 39
Energy management 203
Battery power 205
Driver notification 205
Engine
Compartment 234
Coolant 239
Hood 232
Starting 90
Starting with jumper cables 281
Stopping 92
Engine compartment
Safety instructions 232
Working the engine compartment 232
Engine coolant system 239
Adding coolant 240
Checking coolant level 239
Checking the engine coolant level 239
Malfunction 30
Radiator fan 241
Engine coolant temperature
Temperature gauge 10
Engine data 289
Engine hood
Closing 232
How to release the hood 232
Engine oil 234
Adding 237
Additives 237
Changing 238
Check oil level 237
Consumption 237
Oil consumption 236
Oil grades 234
Specification and viscosity 234
Engine oil level 35
Engine oil pressure
Malfunction 31
Engine oil sensor defective 35
Engine speed limitation 35
Environment
Break-in period 206
Catalytic converter 207
Disposing of your vehicle battery 245
Driving at high speeds 208
Driving to minimize pollution and noise 208
Fuel 230
Fuel economy 208
Leaks under your vehicle 232
Letting the vehicle stand and warm up . 208
Proper disposal of drained brake fluid . 242
Proper disposal of drained engine coolant 240
Proper disposal of drained engine oil 237, 238
Recycling used engine oil 237
Unleaded fuel 228
What should I do with an old battery? . 245
Environmental note
Rear window defogger 86
Roof rack 75, 76
EPC
refer to Electronic power control 15

ESP
refer to Electronic stabilization program (ESP) 15
ESP Offroad mode 196
Event Data Recorder (EDR) 196
Exhaust tail pipes
Cleaning 223
Expansion tank 239
Explanation of some technical terms . . . 210
Eyeglasses compartment 80

F

Fall line 210
Fan
Radiator 241
Three-zone automatic climate control . . 85
Fastening
Booster seats 186
Convertible child safety seats 184
Infant seats 183
Flat tire
Changing 271
Floor mats 144
Fog lights 52
Folding chocks 268
Folding the rear seat forward 70, 71
Folding the seats forward 70, 71
Foot pedals 144
For the sake of the environment
Gasoline fumes and the environment . . 230
Reducing engine noise by early upshifting 11
Refueling 230
Saving fuel by early upshifting 11
Front airbags
Description 160
How they work 165
Frontal collisions and the laws of physics 149
Front ashtray 78
Front seats 64
Adjusting 141
Child restraints in the front seat 157
Fuel
Additives 228
Blended gasoline 228
Consumption 22
Filler neck 229
Fuel gauge 12
Gasoline 228
Gasoline additives 229
Octane rating 228
Recommendation 228
Refuelling 230
Reserve 12
Tank capacity 289
Unlocking the fuel filler flap by hand . . 231
Fuel economy messages (efficiency program) 25
Fuel filler flap
Unlocking the fuel filler flap by hand . . 231
Fuel supply too low 34
Fuse arrangement 277

G

Garage door opener (HomeLink®) 135
Gas discharge lamps 279
Gauges
Engine coolant temperature 10
Fuel gauge 12
Tachometer 11
General illustration
Instruments and controls 8
General rules and driving tips 210
Before driving offroad 210
Driving offroad 210
Glossary of tire and loading terminology 248
Glove compartment 80
Cooling box 80
Gradient angle 210
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) . . . 287
Ground clearance 210

H

Headlight
Washer system 56
Headlights
Adaptive light 54
Head lights
Fog lights 52
Headlights
Headlight range control defective 35

Head lights
Rear fog lights 52
Headlight washer reservoir 246
Head restraints 142
Adjusting 142
Front seats 68
Rear seats 68
Heated
Front seats 88
Rear window 86
Washer fluid nozzles 56
Heated cupholder 77
Heated outside mirrors 60
Heating
Three-zone automatic climate control . . 82
Heavy clothing and safety belts 151
High beam 54
Warning/indicator lights 17
High voltage warning label 287
Hill descent assist 198
HomeLink® universal remote control . . . 135
Hood
Opening 232
Release lever 232
Horn 8
How are child restraint system anchors related to child safety 190
How many airbags does my vehicle have? 163
How often should I check my tire pressures? 254
How safety belt pretensioners work 154
Hydroplaning 258

I

Ignition key 90
Emergency unlocking 39
Ignition lock 90
Malfunction 32, 35
Important things to do before driving . . 139
Improperly worn safety belts 154
Indicator light
Dynamic steering 15, 33
Indicator lights 14
Airbag system 167
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF 167
Infant seats 183
Inflatable spare tire 269
Inflating 270
Inside rear view mirror 59
Installing child safety seats
Safety belts 187
Installing the upper tether strap on the anchorage 194
Instrument lighting 53
Instruments and controls 10
General illustration 8
Interior lights
Dimming 55
Front 55
Rear 56
Interval wiping 56
Rain sensor 56

J

Jump-starting 281
Jumper cables 282

K

Key 37
Battery replacement 38
Key replacement 37
Master key with remote control 37
Mechanical key 39
Kick-down
tiptronic® 126

L

LATCH 190
Description 191
Installing a child restraint 192
Location 191
Mounting and releasing the anchorage hook 192
Lateral angle 210
Leather 224
Cleaning 225
Lifting jack 273
Lifting vehicle 285
Light
Coming home 52
Daytime running lights 52

Driving light control 51
Exterior lighting 52
Leaving home 52
Switching on and off 51
Lighting 51
Lights
Emergency flashers 54
High beam 54
High beam warning/indicator light 17
Turn signals 54
Light sensor 51
Light sensor defective 34
Loading the luggage compartment 145
Locking
Power locking switch 43
Rear lid/trunk lid 44
Remote control key 41
Using the mechanical key 43
Low-beam headlight
Defective 34
Low beams 51
Lower universal anchorage bars (Canada) 190
Lower universal anchorages (Canada) . . . 190
Luggage
Stowing 145
luggage compartment
Tie-down rings 71
Luggage compartment 70
Cargo net 73
Cover 72
Expanding 70, 71
Storage hooks 73
also refer to Loading the luggage compartment 145
Luggage compartment lid
Emergency unlocking 47

M

Maintenance 291
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) . . 17, 25
Master key
Battery replacement 38
Check light 38
Master key with remote control 37
Mechanical key 39
Memory for driver's seat 66
Recalling settings 66
Storing settings 66
Mileage
Average 22
Instantaneous 22
Mirrors
Activating the digital compass 62
Adjusting the anti-glare 59
Automatically dimming inside mirror . . . 59
Automatic dimming for the outside mirrors 61
Inside rearview mirror 59
Interior mirror 59
Manual glare dimming 59
Outside mirrors 60
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System 167
Multi-use attachment 81

N

Natural leather 224
New tires and wheels 258
NHTSA
Contacting 146
Number of seats 148

O

Occupant seating positions 140
Octane rating 228
Odometer 13
Offroad mode
refer to ESP Offroad mode 196
Oil
refer to Engine oil 234, 237
Oil consumption 237
On-Board Diagnostic System (OBD)
Data Link Connector (DLC) 26
Electronic speed limiter 26
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) 25
Onboard tool kit 268
Open door or rear lid warning 21
Opening
Panoramic sliding sunroof 49
Operate your vehicle economically and minimize pollution 208

Optional equipment
Marked with an asterisk 6
Other equipment (efficiency program) . . . 25
Outside mirrors 60
Outside temperature display 21
Owner's manual
How the Owner's Manual is organized . . . 6

P

Paint
Touch-up 220
Paint No. 287
Panoramic sliding sunroof
Convenience opening/closing 48
Emergency closing 50
Opening and closing 49
Parking 95
Automatic transmission 123
Parking brake 94
also refer to Electromechanical parking brake 94
Parking system
refer to Audi parking system plus with rearview camera 129
Parts replacement 293
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light 167
Passive safety system 139
Pedals 144
Physical principles of a frontal collision . 149
Polishing 220
Power locking switch 43
Power locking system 40
Emergency locking 44
Locking and unlocking the vehicle from inside 43
Rear lid/trunk lid 44
Selective unlock feature 41
Power lockingsystem
Settings 41
Power locking system
Unlocking and locking vehicle 41
Power locks
Windows open and closed 48
Power steering 15, 33, 202
Power window regulators
Convenience opening/closing 48
Malfunctions 49
Power window switches 47
Pregnant women
Special considerations when wearing a safety belt 153
Programming the HomeLink® universal remote control 135
Proper occupant seating positions 140
Proper safety belt position 152
Proper seating position
Front passenger 141
Occupants 140
Rear passengers 142
Protective tray 73

Q

Quartz clock 12
Question
What happens to unbelted occupants? 149
Why safety belts? 148

R

Radiator fan 241
Rain sensor 56
Rain sensor defective 34
Reading lights
Front 55
Rear 56
Rear fog lights 52
Rear lid
Automatic operation 45
Opening and closing 44
Rear light
Defective 34
Rear seats
Adjusting seat 67
Rearview camera
Parking mode 1 132
Parking mode 2 132
Rear view mirror
Inside rear view mirror 59
Rearview mirror
refer to Mirrors 59

Rear window defogger 86
Recirculation mode
Three-zone automatic climate control . . 85
Red symbols 29
Refill engine oil 31
Refuelling 230
Release lever for hood 232
Remote control garage door opener (HomeLink®) 135
Remote control key
Unlocking and locking 41
Remote rear lid release 44
Repair manuals 291
Repairs
Airbag system 169
Replacing a fuse 277
Replacing light bulbs 279
Replacing tires and wheels 259
Reporting Safety Defects 146, 147
Reset button 13
Retractor 151
Rims
Cast alloy 222
Roof rack 73
Roof load 75
Roof railing
Attachment points 74
Installing the attachments 75
Installing the roof rack 74
Rule of behavior offroad 210

S

Safe driving habits 139
Safety belt position 152
Safety belt height adjustment 154
Safety belts worn by pregnant women . 153
Safety belt pretensioner 154
Service and disposal 155
Safety belts 151
cleaning 226
Danger to passengers who do not wear a safety belt 149
Fastening 151
height adjustment 154
Improperly worn 154
Not worn 149
Safety belt position 152
Safety instructions 151
Securing child safety seats 187
Special considerations for pregnant women 153
Unfastening 153
Warning/indicator light 148
Why YOU MUST wear them 148
Worn properly 150
Safety belt warning light 17, 148
Safety compliance sticker 287
Safety equipment 139
Safety features for occupant restraint and protection 139
Safety guidelines
Seat adjustment 64
Safety instructions
Engine compartment 232
for side curtain airbags 176
for using child safety seats 181
for using safety belts 151
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System 169
Safety systems
Warning/indicator lights 16
Seat adjustment
Driver's seat 64
Front passenger's seat 65
Front seats 64
Head restraints 142
Power 65
Seat belts
refer to Safety belts 148
Seat heating 88
Seating capacity 148
Seating position
Driver 140
Front passenger 141
How to adjust the front seats 141
Incorrect seat position 143
Occupants 140
Rear passengers 142
Seat memory 66
Seats
Number of seats 148
Selective unlock feature 41

Selector lever 124
Emergency release 128
Service and disposal
Safety belt pretensioner 155
Service interval display 22
Service position for windshield wipers . . . 57
Servotronic
Power steering 202
SET button 11
Shift buttons 127
Side airbags
Description 172
How they work 173
Side assist
Activating and deactivating 113
Description 113
Informational and alert stage signals . 115
Messages in instrument cluster display 119
Operation 115
Safety tips 120
Sensor detection area 114
Settings 118
Side curtain airbags 174
Description 174
How they work 176
Safety instructions 176
Side marker lights 51
Snow chains 263
Socket 79
Sockets 78
Sound system display
Driver information display 20
Sources of information about child restraints and their use 195
Speed control system
refer to Adaptive cruise control 99
Speedometer 13
Speed rating letter code 259
Speed warning system 26
Starting engine
Emergency key 39
Starting from rest 95
Starting off with a trailer 96
Starting the engine 90
Steering 15, 33
Locking the steering 90
Malfunction 32
Manually adjusting the steering wheel . . 90
Steering wheel column
Adjusting manually 90
Steps for determining correct load limit . 255
Stopping the engine 92
Storage 79
Cupholder door pockets 77
Glove compartment 80
Sun visors 56
Switches
Emergency flashers 54
Symbols
Red 29
Yellow 32

T

Tachometer 11
Technical modifications 294
Tether anchors 193
Tether strap 193
The first 1,000 miles (1,500 km) and afterwards 206
Three-zone automatic climate control . . . 82
A/C mode 86
Air distribution 85
Air vents 87
Air vents (rear) 87
Automatic mode 84
Automatic recirculation 88
Basic settings 88
Controls 83
Defrost 86
Description 82
Economical use 87
Fan 85
Front seat heating 88
Rear window defogger 86
Recirculation mode 85
Synchronization 88
Temperature 84
Turning on and off 84
Tie-down rings 71
Tie-downs 146

tiptronic® 123
Automatic Shift Lock (ASL) 125
Driving 123
Dynamic shift program 126
Emergency mode 128
Kick-down 126
Manual shift program 127
Selector lever 124
Tire pressure 253
Tire pressure monitoring system 265
Loss of air pressure 16, 266
Malfunction 266
Resetting tire pressures 267
Tires 247
Service life 257
speed rating letter code 259
Tire manufacturing date 259
Tire specifications 259
Tread depth 257
Uniform tire quality grading 261
Winter tires 262
Tires/Wheels
Low aspect ratio tires 264
Tire pressure monitoring system . 16, 265
Tires and vehicle load limits 255
Tires and wheels
Checking tire pressure 253
Cold tire inflation pressure 251
Dimensions 258
General notes 247
Glossary of tire and loading terminology 248
New tires and wheels 258
Replacing 259
Snow chains 263
Tires and vehicle load limits 255
Wheel bolts 264
Winter tires 262
Tire service life 257
Tool kit 268
Torn or frayed safety belts 151
Touch-up paint 220
Towing
Front eyelet 284
Rear eyelet 284
Tow truck procedures 283
Towing a trailer
Parking system 134
TPMS
Tire pressure monitoring system 266
Trailer towing 213
Operating instructions 214
Technical requirements 213, 214
Tongue load 214
Trailer towing tips 215
Trailer turn signal assembly
Warning/indicator lights 16
Transmission
tiptronic® 123
Transmission malfunction (indicator light) 128
Transport Canada 147
Tread Wear Indicator (TWI) 257
Trip computer
Fuel consumption 22
Mileage 22
Single-trip memory 23
Total-trip memory 23
Trip odometer 13
Trunk
refer to Rear lid 45
Turn signals 54
Warning/indicator lights 16

U

Undercoating 222
Unfastening safety belts 153
Unidirectional tires 247
Uniform tire quality grading 261
Unlocking
Power locking switch 43
Rear lid/trunk lid 44
Remote control key 41
Using the mechanical key 43
Use of jumper cables 282

V

Vanity mirror 56
Vehicle-care products 217
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 287
Vehicle jack 268, 273

Vehicle literature 5
Ventilation
Three-zone automatic climate control . . 82

W

Warning/indicator lights 10
Adaptive cruise control 105
Airbag system 16
Anti-lock brake system (ABS) 17
Brake system 18
Cruise control 17
Electromechanical parking brake 18
Electronic power control 15
Electronic stabilization program (ESP) . . 15
High beam 17
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) 17
Safety belt 17
Tire pressure monitoring system 16
Trailer turn signal assembly 16
Turn signals 16
Warning lights 14
Warranty coverages 291
Washer reservoir 246
Washing 217
Automatic car wash 218
by hand 218
General information 217
with a power washer 219
Waxing 219
Wear indicator 257
Weatherstrips 222
Weights 287
What happens if you wear your safety belt too loose? 152
What happens to unbelted occupants? . . 149
What impairs driving safety? 140
What should I do after changing a wheel? 254
What should I do after replacing wheels? 254
Wheel bolts
Torque 264
Wheels 247
Cast alloy 222
Checking tire pressure 253
Cold tire inflation pressure 251
General notes 247
Glossary of tire and loading terminology 248
New tires and wheels 258
Tires and vehicle load limits 255
When must a safety belt be replaced? . . 151
When must the airbag system be inspected? 167
When should I adjust the tire pressures? 254
When should I check the tire pressures? . 254
Where are lower anchorages located? . . . 191
Where can I find the tire pressures for my car? 253
Why safety belts? 148, 149
Window regulators
Malfunctions 49
Power locks 48
Windows
Cleaning 221
Windshield defogging/defrosting 86
Windshield washer fluid
Low level 34
Windshield wiper
Installing new wiper blades 58
Replacing the rear wiper blade 58
Windshield wipers 56
Faulty 36
Service position 57
Washer reservoir 246
Winter operation
Battery 242
Coolant system 239
Defrosting windows 86
Seat heating 88
Tires 203
Windows 221
Winter tires 262
All-wheel drive 262
Wiper blades
Installing new wiper blades 58
also refer to Windshield wiper 58

X

Xenon-Lights 279

Y

Yellow symbols 32

It has always been Audi's policy to continuously improve its products. Audi, therefore, reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and to make additions or improvements in its products, without incurring any obligation to install them on products previously manufactured.

Text, illustrations and specifications in this manual are based on the most up-to-date information available at the time of printing.

All rights reserved. May not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without the written consent of AUDI AG. Specifications are subject to change without notice.

"Audi", "quattro" and the four rings emblem are registered trademarks of AUDI AG. "Q5" is trademark of AUDI AG.

Editorial deadline: 09/17/2010

For the sake of the environment

Printed on environmentally friendly paper (bleached without chlorine, recyclable).

Printed in Germany

© 2010 AUDI AG

2011 Audi Q5
Owner's Manual
Englisch USA 11.2010
112.561.8RB.23

www.audi.com